UNIVERSITY SERIES

NEW HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

HOLMES

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING Co

NEW

SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

BY

GEORGE F. HOLMES, LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF HISTORY AND LITERATURE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA

"We do not pretend to pass any judgment on the merits of the several sides. * * * We relate opinions as well as facts, historically."—BURKE

NEW YORK
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY
1891

COPYRIGHT,
1870, 1882, 1885,
BY UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY.

***1322

Press of J. J. Little & Co.
Astor Place, New York

PREFACE.

ELEVEN years and more have elapsed since the first publication of this text-book. This period has witnessed a series of grave transactions, and a surprising increase of the population, productions, and wealth of the country. It seemed indispensable to extend the narrative to the completion of the century since the surrender of the British at Yorktown assured American Independence.

To do this, it was necessary to contract the story throughout, so that the volume might be kept within suitable limits. Matters of secondary importance have been omitted, and greater brevity of statement has been introduced where practicable, particularly in the earlier periods and the War of Secession. There is no longer necessity or propriety in treating the late mournful struggle with the same fulness as before. Moreover, the wondrous perspective of time has already diminished the prominence of many events, and has suffered minor details to melt into the haze of the receding landscape.

Advantage has been taken of the necessity for abridgment, to remodel the narrative in many ways, so as to adapt it more thoroughly to its purpose, without adding to its size. It has thus been rendered virtually a new work, while retaining much of its former appearance. The changes of disposition will be at once apparent, and will, it is hoped, be approved. Other changes have been made. The paragraphs have been shortened, the structure of the sentences simplified, the expression adapted to the ready comprehension of young pupils. The multiplication of dates and their introduction into the text, however needful for accurate knowledge, are apt to confuse the reader. Only the most important dates have been retained, and they have been transferred to the margin.

Pronunciations of the more difficult proper names are given in parentheses, as most convenient for the pupil. The questions for recitation and for review (in the former volume) have been omitted. Heavy-faced paragraph headings and numerous short catch lines readily suggest the subjects for recitation; and the Summary of Topics which follows each Part will be found practically serviceable in study, recitation, and review.

Synchronal Charts of the chief periods are substituted for the full Chronological Tables formerly given. The number of maps has been increased, and maps illustrating the War of 1812, the War of Secession, and Territorial Growth have been introduced.

Numerous foot-notes have been added. They do not belong to the History, but they quicken its appreciation, and they heighten its interest, by supplying explanations, personal details, and various anecdotes.

Thanks are due and are tendered to the many correspondents who have pointed out errors, or made valuable suggestions. Such communications have been received with respect, and weighed with care. It is gratifying to know, after more than ten years' experience, that so few errors have been discovered, and that no charge of partiality or prejudice, of sectional or political discoloration, has been brought from any quarter. The purpose expressed in the Preface to the original work has been faithfully pursued:

"A just and impartial text-book was required; and this is an endeavor to supply one not consciously partisan or sectional. It may not be free from errors or blemishes, but it observes the precept, 'Nothing extenuate, nor set down aught in malice.'"

CONTENTS.

PART I.—INTRODUCTION. PAGE

The New World and its Native Inhabitants ... 7
The Discovery of America ... 15
Spanish Colonization ... 20
French Exploration and Settlement ... 22
Dutch and Swedish Settlement ... 24
Summary of Topics—Part I ... 27

PART II.—THE ENGLISH COLONIES.

First English Attempts at Colonization ... 28
The Virginia Colony ... 31
The New England Colonies ... 41
The Maryland Colony ... 51
Virginia from 1660 to 1750 ... 53
The New England Colonies after the Restoration ... 58
New York ... 63
New Jersey and Delaware ... 65
Settlement of Pennsylvania ... 66
North and South Carolina ... 68
Georgia ... 71
The Great French and Indian War ... 74
Condition of the English Colonies before the Revolution ... 81
Summary of Topics—Part II ... 88

PART III.—THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

The Approach of Revolution ... 92
The Revolution.—First Year ... 104
Second Year of the Revolution ... 110
Third Year of the Revolution ... 119
Fourth Year of the Revolution ... 128
Fifth Year of the Revolution ... 134
Sixth Year of the Revolution ... 139
Seventh Year of the Revolution ... 148
The Establishment of the United States ... 156
Summary of Topics—Part III ... 161

PART IV.—THE REPUBLIC ESTABLISHED.

Washington's Administration ... 163
Administration of John Adams ... 168
Administration of Thomas Jefferson ... 171
Administration of James Madison ... 177
The War of 1812 with Great Britain ... 178
First Administration of James Monroe ... 191
Summary of Topics—Part IV ... 195

PAGE

PART V.—PROGRESS OF THE REPUBLIC.

Monroe's Second Administration 197
Administration of John Quincy Adams 198
Administration of Andrew Jackson 199
Administration of Martin Van Buren 203
Administration of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler 204
Administration of James K. Polk.—The Mexican War 208
Administration of Zachary Taylor 215
Administration of Millard Fillmore 216
Administration of Franklin Pierce 217
Administration of James Buchanan 220
Summary of Topics—Part V 227

PART VI.—WAR OF SECESSION.—RECONSTRUCTION AND GROWTH.

Administration of Abraham Lincoln.—First Year of the War 229
Second Year of the War 236
Third Year of the War 243
Fourth Year of the War 249
Close of Lincoln's Administration.—End of the War 257
Reconstruction.—Administration of Andrew Johnson 263
Administration of General Grant 268
Second Term of Grant's Administration 274
Administration of Rutherford B. Hayes 280
Administration of James A. Garfield 286
A Century of Independence 288
Administration of Chester A. Arthur 297
Administration of Grover Cleveland 302
Summary of Topics—Part VI 308

The Declaration of Independence 314
The Constitution of the United States of America, 318; Index 337

LIST OF MAPS.

AT PAGE

I. Discoveries, Explorations, and Ethnographic Map of the Indian Tribes of the United States A.D. 1600 14
II. French Claims in 1750, and the United States at the close of the Revolution 92
III. War of 1812 178
IV. The United States in 1820 194
V. The War of Secession 229
VI. The United States in 1880 286
VII. Territorial Growth of the United States 289

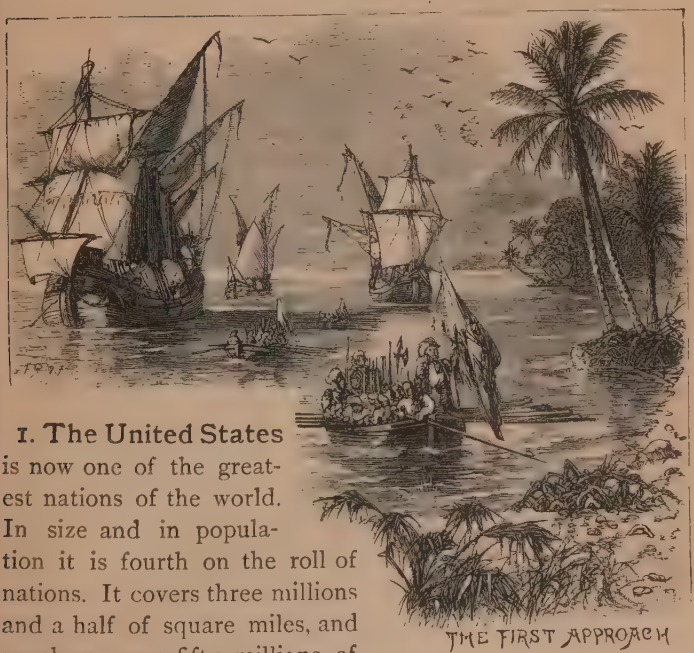
LIST OF CHARTS, ETC.

I. Synchronal Chart of American Discovery and Colonization 27
II. Synchronal Chart of the American Revolution 157
III. Synchronal Chart of the War of 1812 189
IV. Synchronal Chart of the War of Secession 257
V. Settlement and Admission of the States 312
VI. The Territories of the United States 313
VII. Presidents and Vice-Presidents of the United States 313

HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

PART I.—INTRODUCTORY.

THE NEW WORLD.



THE FIRST APPROACH

1. **The United States** is now one of the greatest nations of the world. In size and in population it is fourth on the roll of nations. It covers three millions and a half of square miles, and numbers over fifty millions of inhabitants. It stretches across the continent of North America, and occupies the middle and most favored regions. By the purchase of Alaska from Russia its frontier was carried to Behring's Strait and the Arctic Sea. The extent of the

territory; the fertility of the soil; the variety and abundance of the productions; the number, freedom, and industry of the people, have rendered its inhabitants rich and powerful.* "There are none to make them afraid."

This vast domain has been won and occupied only by degrees. The process of settlement is still going on. The chief advancement has been made in little more than a hundred years. The youth of the United States should learn how their country has been acquired; and by what means it has grown great, and populous, and thriving. The story will be told in The History of the United States.

2. **The Western Hemisphere, or New World,** which includes North and South America, was for thousands of years unknown to the nations of the Old World. Ages had passed away before it was clearly found out that another half of the globe lay beyond the Atlantic. Less than four hundred years have elapsed since the existence of America was revealed to the people of Europe.

THE NATIVE INHABITANTS OF THE NEW WORLD.

3. **Native Tribes, called Indians,**† had been, during the previous centuries, in possession of America. Their origin has not been ascertained. Some of their legends, and other indications, point to North-eastern Asia as the region whence they came. Yet this is only conjecture. Their earliest civilization has been referred to Egypt, to the Lost Tribes of the Jews, and to Phœnician traders. They have been supposed to be descendants of the people of Atlantis, a large island in the ocean spoken of by Plato. Strange stories have been received among themselves: that they swarmed up, like locusts, from

* The term "United States" may be correctly used either as a singular or as a plural noun. When it designates the country, or the territory, it is appropriately treated as a compound designation, and as singular. When it applies to the political system, as a federation of States, it is better to use it as a plural, and it is so employed in the strict language of diplomacy, as in Art. IX. of the Treaty of Ghent.

† It was supposed that India had been reached when the New World was discovered.

the ground; that they came out of a hole; that they crawled up by the roots of a grape-vine; that they fell from the moon. All is dark and uncertain.

4. **Most of these tribes were rude savages** when first visited by Europeans. But in Mexico, Central America, and Peru a remarkable degree of civilization had been reached. There the native population had regular government, orderly society and law, vast temples, great roads, the habit of cultivating the soil, and various arts of usefulness or luxury.

5. **Traces of early and half-civilized races** are scattered over the continent, and especially in the valleys of the Mississippi and its tributary streams. These monuments are of various kinds: pyramids, altars, temples, fortifications, mounds, tombs, earth figures of animals, crosses and crescents, furrowed

GRAVE CREEK MOUND, WEST VIRGINIA.*

land, pottery, implements of stone and of copper, and rude sculptures. The "great serpent" on the Miami is 1,000 feet long, and is raised five feet above the level of the ground. It cannot be ascertained when these "Mound Builders" occu-

* This mound is 70 feet in height by 900 feet in circumference. Excavations and explorations have been made, disclosing vaults, human skeletons, and ornaments.

pied the country. It is equally unknown whence they derived their arts. They must have existed at a very remote period, as old forests have grown over the buried remains.

THE NORTH AMERICAN INDIANS.

6. The Indians, within the original limits of the United States, *were all savages,* but savage in different degrees. They surrounded with constant dangers the new-comers who crossed the Atlantic to seize upon their lands. They engaged in frequent and bloody wars with them. In peace there was always reason to fear stealthy attack and midnight murder.

7. The complexion of the Indians is usually reddish-brown or copper-colored. Hence they have been called Red Men. They are of moderate height, straight and active. Their features are generally regular. Their cheek-bones are high, like those of the Tartars. Their hair is long, coarse, and black. They have little beard, or none at all. They are capable of much exertion, and of great endurance, without being able to undergo the fatigue of steady labor.

INDIANS AND WIGWAM.

8. The senses of the Indian are keen, and are sharpened by the habit of their lives. Their observation of outward things is quick and accurate. They

discern signs on the grass and in the woods which escape the notice of more cultivated races. They are daring and self-possessed; treacherous, vindictive, and cruel. They are stern and dignified in bearing, and are always cautious and reserved before strangers.

9. They had no houses and no regular occupation. They dwelt in huts made of branches of trees, or in tents covered with bark, or with the skins of wild animals. These they set up where grass and water, game or fish, invited them to bide for a time. They removed to other, and often distant places, whenever the failure of provisions, or other motives rendered a change of abode desirable. They got their main support by hunting and fishing. They cultivated only small patches of ground, on which they raised Indian-corn, or maize, melons of various kinds, tobacco, and a few other plants, for food or for indulgence. They were a rude, a lazy, and a roving people, scarcely thinking of the morrow, and seldom providing sufficient maintenance for the winter or even for the next day

AN INDIAN CHIEF.

10. War was the Indian's joy. He fought for his hunting grounds; he fought for revenge; he fought for glory. He fought for the admiration of his tribe and of his women. He fought for the sake of fighting, and to become expert in the use of his arms. He decked himself for battle, with paint and feathers and other ornaments. His weapons were spear and bow, and tomahawk and scalping-knife. He was blood-thirsty, and full of trick and cunning. He tore the scalp from his wounded or slaughtered foe, to hang it as a trophy in his wigwam or hut. He put his prisoners to death with slow and varied tortures. He danced round them and reviled them in their agony, while they sang their death-song and chanted their own praises in the midst of their sufferings.

11. Hunting was his chief employment. By this he procured his sustenance, his clothing, his ornaments, and the covering for his wigwam and his bed. Buffalo and other animals furnished him with food and dress, and shelter and warmth. He had neither flocks nor herds; neither horse nor cow. He had no tame animal but his dog. He had no plough, no harrow, no spade, no cart. He had few tools or utensils. What he had were of stone, or earthenware, or wood. If his boat was made out of a log, not of bark or hides, he hollowed it out with a flint axe and with fire. He was ignorant of the use of iron, and tipped his arrows with stone flakes. He had some knowledge of copper, which had been employed by the Mound Builders.

> His arms were axe and spear, and shield and bow,
> But naught of iron did he seem to know;
> For all his cutting tools were edged with flint,
> Or with soft copper, that soon turned and bent.

12. The women performed the harsh labors of daily life. They were bought as brides, and sold as daughters. They carried home the game, skinned it, and cut it up. They dressed the skins. They gathered the fuel, made the fire, and cooked the meat. They planted and hoed the ground, and harvested

the crop. On the journeys they were burdened with the babies, the cooking pots, and the tents. They did all the drudgery of the camp, and experienced constant neglect. Little attention was paid to the children after their infancy. They were only taught to imitate in play the serious actions of their parents.

13. The Indians had little religion and less government. They sacrificed to the Powers of Evil, and had only a dim notion of a good and supreme God. They had some superstitious rites and ceremonies and charms. They expected, after death, to join their ancestors in "The Happy Land," and to renew beyond the grave the warfare and the chase which had occupied them on earth. To fit them for the long and lonely journey, their bow, their quiver, their tomahawk, their bowl and pipe, with corn, venison, and tobacco, were entombed with them. The life of the other world was deemed a continuation of the life in this. They had no political constitution. They were bound together in families and tribes by a supposed relationship of blood. They knew no law, and were restrained by a few customs. They had no courts, no judges, no rulers. The Chief, the Sachem,* and the Medicine Man, were the only authorities. Obedience was not enforced. It was yielded purely of free-will.

INDIAN BOW, ARROW, ETC.

14. Letters and the art of writing were entirely unknown. Symbols and

* All leaders in war were called chiefs, and were elected. The Sachem was a

signs, and strings of shells,* and rough paintings on rocks or skins, were employed, to some extent, as means of communication or commemoration. The Cherokee, Sequoy'ah, called also George Guess, was the first to invent, about sixty years ago, signs for his people's language. The Indians, however, possess a Gesture Language, by which different tribes are enabled to hold intercourse with each other.

15. **Four great stocks,** or families, embrace nearly all the Indians that were found east of the Mississippi. These are the Algon'quin, the Ir'oquois, the Appal'achee, and the Cher'okee. The Chico'ras, the Catawbas, the Yem'assees, the Uchees', and the Natchez, are not included in the four stocks. West of the Mississippi were the Daco'tahs, the Shoshonees', the Ap'aches, the Coman'ches, and the numerous indistinct tribes of the Rocky Mountains and of the Pacific slope. Of the Eastern Indians, the Iroquois had advanced furthest in social order and the arts of life. They formed a regular confederation, named, first, the Five, and afterwards, the Six Nations.

16. **The Indians are supposed to be all of one race,**† with the single exception of the Esquimaux. Great differences of appearance, of disposition, of culture, and of language separate the several groups. The hair is always of the same peculiar character, and a like structure prevails through the numerous languages and dialects.

17. **The first English settlers came in contact** with various branches of the Algonquin stock along the Atlantic coast.‡ The descendants of these settlers now cover the continent from the eastern to the western ocean. Their native antagonists have disappeared like dew from the prairie, and

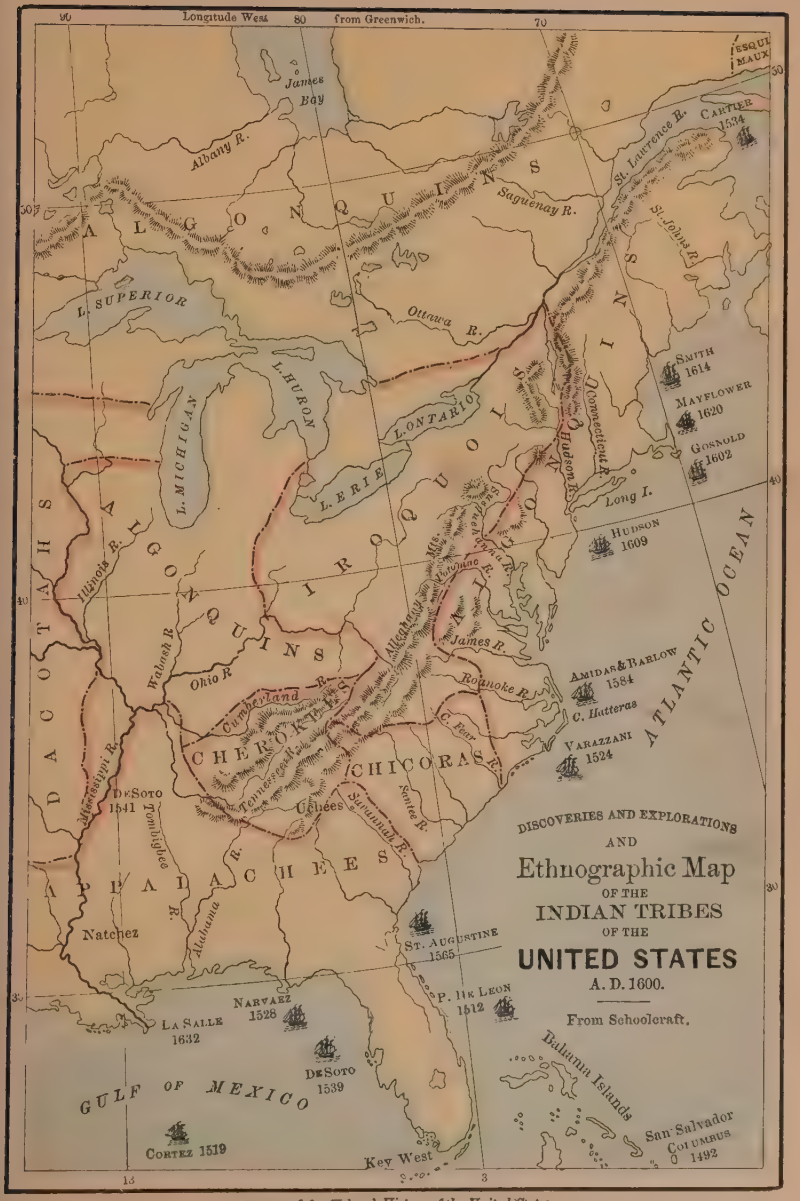
---

permanent chief of the tribe. His office was usually hereditary; but he might be set aside.

* Seawan, or Wampum, is the name of such strings.

† This has been questioned in recent years.

‡ Powhatans', Delawares, Manhattans, Mohicans, Pequods, Narragansetts, etc.



Engraved for Holmes' History of the United States

have dwindled away to less than half a million in the whole wide territory of the United States.*

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

18. Early visits to America are reported in numerous traditions. They are, for the most part, wild dreams. Plato's fable of Atlantis has been already mentioned. Other fables are equally vain. The expedition of the Welsh prince, Madoc, in the latter half of the twelfth century, is as visionary as the story of St. Brandan's Isle.† More respect may, perhaps, be paid to the statement that Buddhists, from Central Asia, visited America in the fifth century. The tale of Icelandic and Norwegian explorations and settlements on the coasts of Greenland and the shores of New England, in the tenth and eleventh centuries,‡ is better founded. They did not come to the knowledge of the rest of Europe. The history of America begins only in the last years of the fifteenth century.

19 The beautiful city of Genoa fronts the northern shore of the Mediterranean Sea. It is sheltered from bleak winds by the chain of the Apennines. Its commerce, its wealth, and its power obtained for it the designation of Genoa the Proud. The epithet was justified by the splendor of its palaces and by the daring of its citizens. Much of its greatness had been lost in the middle of the fifteenth century. Yet

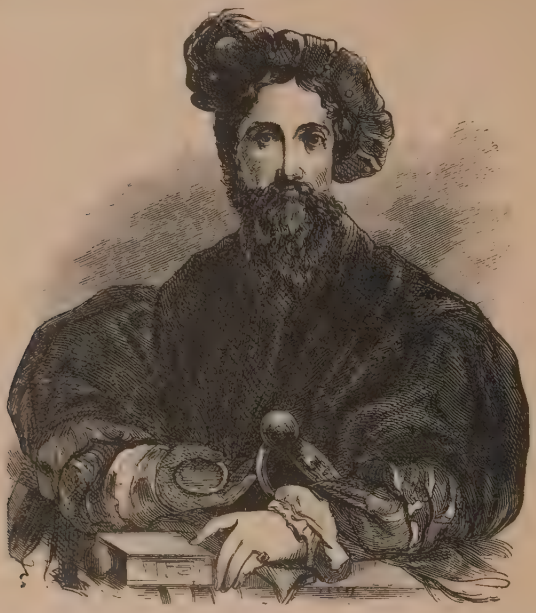
* The number reported to the Commissioners of Indian Affairs in 1881 was 246,417, exclusive of Alaska.

† St. Brandan's Isle was that appearance of clouds or haze on the horizon, resembling land, which is now familiar to seamen as Cape Fly-Away. It often deceived the navigators of the Atlantic, who mistook it for a new country in the West, which they pursued, but could not reach, as it retained its distance or vanished from them.

‡ These Scandinavian discoveries are now extensively believed. It has been supposed that the communication with Greenland was interrupted by a great change of climate and by vast icebergs, about 1350.

it still had many vessels at sea. It still traded with the East and with the West. It still waged war with the Sultans of Constantinople, with the Caliphs of Egypt, and with the pirates who plundered the shores of Italy, and captured Christians to sell them as slaves to the Turks.

20. **In this city a boy was born,** about the year 1440,



COLUMBUS.

who lived to do greater things than had ever been achieved in his native State in the days of its highest renown.* He was named **Christopher Columbus.** He was brought up in

* The Genoese are credited with an early attempt to discover land beyond the Atlantic; but the authority for the statement is not given.

"The Genoese * * made an effort in the year 1291 to obtain that discovery of a new world westward which their countryman Columbus effected two centuries later. * * They sent out two galleys for this important purpose, under Theodosius Doria and Ugolin Vivaldo, who were directed to sail far westward, without the Straits of Gibraltar, in quest of new countries; but they were never heard of more."

poverty ; in the midst of political strife and change and adventure. While very young he became a sailor, and was engaged in the naval warfare with the corsairs of Barbary, and with the Ottoman Turks, who had recently conquered Constantinople, and subdued the last remnant of the old Empire of Rome.

21. In one of his voyages Columbus was wrecked off the southern coast of Portugal. He saved his life by swimming, and reached Lisbon, the capital of the kingdom, where his brother was employed as a maker of maps and dealer in charts. A great demand for these had sprung up in consequence of the geographical discoveries and exploring voyages of the Portuguese. Christopher Columbus joined his brother in his occupations, and devoted himself to the study of geographical explorations, especially of those connected with the Atlantic Ocean.

22. Columbus became convinced **that India and the eastern shores of Asia could be most readily reached by sailing West across the Atlantic.** He applied to different States and sovereigns for the means of undertaking such a voyage, and thus determining the truth of his conclusions. He wrote, he travelled, he sent messengers to entreat public support for his enterprise, as he was too poor to make the experiment without aid. He is said to have first applied to the city of his birth ; he applied to the King of Portugal ; he applied to the sovereigns of Aragon and Castile, but was treated with ridicule. He sent his brother to England to seek the assistance of Henry VII. His brother was captured on his way by pirates. Columbus was leaving the Spanish court to beg help from the King of France, when he was recalled by Queen Isabella of Castile, who promised to assist and befriend him. She and her husband, Ferdinand of Aragon, had just completed the conquest of the last Moorish kingdom in Spain.

23. **The favor of the Queen led others to promote**

the undertaking. She gave less than ten thousand dollars to the great enterprise, but this small sum secured the experiment.* A few friends and hopeful adventurers supplied the further means requisite for fitting out a small expedition to attempt the passage of the Atlantic and a western voyage to the coast of Asia.

Three small vessels, scarcely larger than modern pilot-boats,† were made ready at Palos, a small port in the south-east of Spain. With these Columbus set out, in August, 1492. Week after week passed drearily by. Calms delayed progress. Winds came from the wrong quarter, and drove the ships out of their course. No land appeared. The hearts of the sailors sank within them. They feared that they would never return to their homes—would never see any shore again; but would drift on the measureless waters till their provisions were consumed, or would go down in the midst of the ocean and be heard of no more. Columbus with difficulty persuaded them to continue the voyage. Soon his persuasions lost their power.

24. **Columbus noticed green branches** floating on the waters, and land birds flying about. He hoped that a few days might bring him in sight of some shore. Before the appointed time had expired, a distant light was seen; next morning land was discovered. The weary voyagers landed on the 12th of October, on an island named Guanahani (*gwah-nah-hah'nee*). It is a small island among the Bahamas.

Possession of the new country was solemnly taken in the name of the Queen of Castile. Columbus received presents of gold from the natives, and sailed in search of the regions whence the gold came. He discovered Cuba, which he took to be Japan, and St. Domingo, named by him Hispaniola

* The actual amount contributed by the Queen, or, according to the official entry, only lent, is variously stated by different authors. By some it is put as high as $17,000 or $18,000; by others, as low as $3,500. Its value in present purchasing power has been estimated at as much as $50,000.

† The Santa Maria (*mah-ree'ah*), of about one hundred tons burden, the Pinta (*peen'tah*) and Mina (*nee'nah*), both smaller.

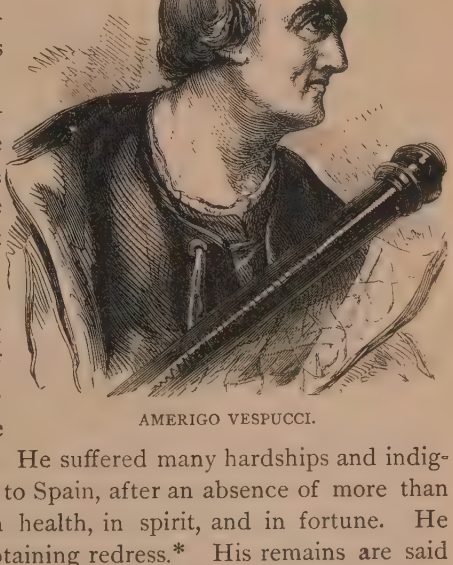
(Little Spain), where he built a fort. He then returned to Spain. He was welcomed by the King and Queen with high honors. He was appointed Admiral and Governor-General of the countries which he had discovered, or might afterwards discover.

25. Columbus made three other voyages with the hope of reaching the main land of Asia. He thought Cuba, St. Domingo, and the islands around them belonged to that continent. Hence they were called the West Indies, and the native inhabitants were named Indians.

From his second expedition Columbus was recalled by calumnies at home occasioned by disturbances in the colony.

On the third voyage he discovered the mainland of South America and the mouth of the great river Orinoco.

On the fourth voyage he coasted along the shores of the Gulf of Mexico, still seeking a passage to the spice regions of Asia. He suffered many hardships and indignities, and came back to Spain, after an absence of more than two years, broken in health, in spirit, and in fortune. He soon died, without obtaining redress.* His remains are said to be buried in the Cathedral of Havana.



AMERIGO VESPUCCI.

---

* In 1500, Columbus had been sent home in chains. When the captain of the vessel conveying him wished to remove them, he replied: "I will wear them as a memento of the gratitude of princes."

26. The Continent of North America was discovered by the Cabots, sailing under the English flag, a year before South America was reached by Columbus. In 1499, Amerigo Vespucci (*ves-poot'chee*), a Florentine, voyaging in company with Ojeda (*o-hā'tha*), coasted along the Southern Continent. **From him America received its name.**

SPANISH COLONIZATION.

27. The gold brought home by Columbus, and the larger quantities afterwards sent to Spain by Spanish explorers, **excited the greed and quickened the spirit of adventure among the Spanish people.** Multitudes followed the course of the setting sun, in the hope of sudden wealth. New islands and new tracts of the continent were discovered. The natives were made to work in the mines, where they perished under the hard tasks and severe labor imposed upon them by unmerciful masters. A benevolent priest, Las Casas, desirous of saving them from destruction, recommended the employment of captured Africans in their stead. This was the beginning of negro slavery and of the slave-trade in America.

28. The discovery of North America by Sebastian Cabot led to no immediate result, for all lands discovered in the West had been granted to Spain by the Pope.*

Brazil was acquired accidentally by Portugal, notwithstanding this grant.

In half a century the Spanish dominions embraced the shores of the Gulf of Mexico, the islands of the Caribbean Sea, the lower valley of the Mississippi, the great Empire of Mexico, and the extensive tract, rich in gold and silver and

* A bull had been issued in favor of Portugal, by Pope Nicholas V., in January, 1434. The grant was designed to cover all discoveries along the coast of Africa. Similar grants had been made to that crown twice before by Martin V. The bull to Spain was given by Alexander VI., in May, 1493, and conceded to it "the new world discovered by Columbus."

other wealth, between the Andes and the Pacific. The islands of Cuba and Porto Rico alone remain now in the possession of Spain.

29. **Great energy, daring, endurance, and skill** were shown in gaining these vast territories. The cruelty, brutality, and greed of the adventurers surpassed even their courage. The story of the conquest is full of surprising events, and is as wonderful as the wonders of romance.

Balboa, an outlaw, was the first European who saw the great South Sea, or Pacific Ocean.

Fernando Cortez overthrew the Empire of Mexico, and took possession of its wide and rich domains.

Francisco Pizarro dethroned the Incas, or native monarchs, of Peru, and conquered the regions subject to their sceptre.

Ponce de Leon (*pōn'thā-dā-lā'ōn*) sought in Florida the Fountain of Youth, to relieve him from old age.*

Ferdinand de Soto advanced from the shores of Florida, through Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, fighting his way with disastrous loss through successive Indian tribes. He discovered and crossed the mighty river Mississippi, and was buried beneath its waters.

Coronado started from the City of Mexico to discover the Seven Golden Cities of Quivara (*kee-vah'rah*), which he never found. He reached the Canadian and Red Rivers, which flowed into the Mississippi. He heard of the Great River, but never saw it. He recrossed the Rocky Mountains, and returned to Mexico.

30. The value of these large possessions was greatly enhanced by the discovery of **rich and apparently exhaustless mines of gold and silver** in Mexico and Peru. The treasure derived from them was so abundant that industry and trade of all kinds were greatly increased in the countries of the Old World, and the value of the precious metals was

* The legend of the "Fountain of Youth" has been associated with the Wakulla Spring, 16 miles from Tallahassee.

much reduced. These mines continued to supply, for more than three hundred years, the main part of the gold and silver used for business or for ornament. Their productiveness has only been surpassed by the recent mines of the Rocky Mountains and of Australasia.

FRENCH EXPLORATION AND SETTLEMENT.

31. The Spaniards had secured their conquests before any other nation had gained a foothold in America, except the Portuguese in Brazil. John Verazzani (*-zah'nee*) a Florentine, sent out by Francis I., of France, had explored, in a single vessel, the coast of North Carolina and the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay. He had sailed along the shores of New England and Nova Scotia.

1524.

32. Ten years later, while Cortez was ruling Mexico and Pizarro overrunning Peru, Jacques Cartier (*zhak cart'ya*) started from the French harbor of St. Malo's, sailed to Newfoundland, and ascended the broad river of Canada. On a second voyage, next year, he reached the great basin between Newfoundland and New Brunswick on the day of St. Lawrence, and gave the name of that saint to both the Gulf and the noble stream which pours into it the waters of the great lakes in the interior of the continent. He passed up the St. Lawrence River nearly 500 miles, to the Isle of Orleans (Hochelaque), below the heights of Quebec, and took possession of the country for the crown of France.

33. At the opening of the French War of Religion, Admiral Coligny (*co-leen'ye*), the great and good leader of the Huguenots, sought a safe retreat in America for his fellow-Protestants. John Ribault (*re-bō'*) was put in command of the emigrants. He settled a colony on Port Royal harbor, and called it Fort Charles, or Carolina, after Charles

1562.

IX., the reigning king. The post was abandoned on Ribault's return to France soon after.

34. **A second attempt was made.** Laudonnière (*lō-don-yāre*) carried the exiles in three ships, and built a second Fort Carolina at the mouth of the River of May—the St. John's—in Florida. The settlers became discontented, and longed to

THE OLD GATEWAY AT ST. AUGUSTINE, FLORIDA.

return home. Ribault arrived with fresh colonists, bringing their families, farm implements, and stock. Fort Carolina was within the dominions claimed by Spain.

1565. 28 Aug. Philip II. had granted a commission to Melendez de Avila (*mā-len'deth dā av'e-lah*) to settle and govern Florida. Reaching the coast on the day of St. Augustine, he gave that name to the fine harbor and the river which he discovered, and to the town which he built there.

This is now the oldest town in the United States. About three weeks after his arrival, he surprised Fort Carolina in the absence of Ribault, and massacred all who fell into his hands—"*not as Frenchmen, but as Huguenots.*"

35. **This butchery was soon avenged.** Dominic de Gourgues (*goorg*), a Gascon gentleman, fitted out three ships, sailed to Florida, recaptured the fort, and hanged his prisoners. He placed over them the inscription: "*Not as Spaniards, but as traitors, robbers, and murderers.*" The Civil Wars in France prevented the restoration of the French colony, and the prosecution of French adventure.

1568.

36. When the wars were over, **Henry IV. renewed the effort** to secure French settlements in America. The first attempts failed. At length Samuel Champlain was sent by the merchants of Rouen to establish a colony. He founded Quebec, high up on the St. Lawrence. He was the father of French settlements in America. He devoted the last thirty years of his life to extending them along the valley of the St. Lawrence, and creating the dominion of New France or Canada.

1608.

37. **The missionary zeal of the Jesuits** greatly aided the efforts of Champlain. In fifty years from his death, they had discovered the Great Lakes, had reached the Mississippi, had descended that long and noble stream, and had gained for France the unbounded territory of Louisiana. In the reign of Louis XIV. the French claimed the whole valley of the St. Lawrence, and that of the Mississippi, besides the unknown region round Lake Superior.

DUTCH AND SWEDISH SETTLEMENTS.

38. **The Dutch began their trading voyages to North America** the year after the foundation of Quebec, but as soon as their independence of Spain was assured

Henry Hudson, an English captain, was employed by the Dutch East India Company, to search for a north-west passage to the Indies. He was driven back by ice, and followed the American coast down to the capes of the Chesapeake. He would not enter that splendid bay, as he knew that its waters were already occupied by England. He turned back,
1609. entered the bay of New York, discovered the North, or Hudson River, and ascended it to the neighborhood of Albany. Next year he perished in the great northern gulf, called after him Hudson's Bay.

39. **Hudson's report of "the goodly land"** which he had visited, induced the merchants of Amsterdam to send vessels to trade with the Indians of that country, for skins and furs, and other wild commodities. A fort was erected on Manhattan Island. The town which spread around the fort was called New Amsterdam. It has grown into the populous, busy, and wealthy city of New York. A settlement was begun just below the site of what is now Albany. Trading posts were established on the Connecticut River. For ten years, trade with the Indians was all that was thought of, as the Hudson River and its banks were included in the claims and in the grants of England. These claims were, however, disregarded by the Dutch West India Company, who took possession of the country from the mouth of the Delaware to Cape Cod, and gave it the name of New Netherlands.

40. To secure their settlements along the Delaware and the Hudson, **the Dutch granted extensive tracts, or manors,** to those who transported settlers and established plantations. These large estates did not encourage population, and they caused enduring discontent. The thinly inhabited and scattered settlements were exposed to Indian attack; and the Indians were provoked by harshness and injustice. Other dangers arose from the conflicting claims to the country.

41. **Gustavus Adolphus, the great Protestant King of Sweden,** recommended colonization in America, in order

to strengthen Protestantism, and to further Swedish trade. He was too deeply engaged in war to carry his recommendations into effect. After his death, Swedish emigrants established themselves on Delaware Bay. They were left undisturbed for some years. The Dutch, however, became jealous of them; and the West India Company ordered their officers in the New Netherlands "to drive the Swedes into the river, or to compel them to submission."

42. **Peter Stuyvesant, the Dutch Governor,** called out the colonial troops, and, in a single campaign, forced all the Swedish forts to surrender. Resistance was vain. The army of the assailants was neither numerous nor formidable. The Swedes were only a few hundred, and were too much scattered to offer any combined opposition.*

43. **The Dutch did not long enjoy their unjust triumph** over the Swedes. England had always claimed the country occupied by both. The Dutch had given frequent provocations to the English in Europe, in America, and in the East Indies. On the restoration of Charles II. to the British throne, he granted to his brother, the Duke of York, afterwards James II., the country between the Delaware and the Connecticut rivers.

1664. An expedition was sent against the Dutch colony on the Hudson. New Amsterdam surrendered at once, and received the name of New York, from the title of the Duke. The dominion of Holland in North America was closed after an existence of fifty years. Descendants of the early Dutch settlers are prominent citizens of the States of New York and New Jersey to the present day. Names of places also perpetuate the memory of the Dutch rule.

* This mean and petty war has been humorously related by Washington Irving, in Knickerbocker's History of New York.

NORSE
970. Greenland discovered by Gu
982. The East Coast of Greenla of Iceland.
1001. The Icelanders Leif Eriks Massachusetts, etc

SPANISH AND PORTUGUESE.	FRENCH.
1492. Oct. 12, America, by Christopher Columbus.	
1498. South America, by Columbus.	
1499. Voyage of Amerigo Vespucci.	
1500. Brazil, by the Portuguese Cortereal.	
1512. Florida, by Ponce de Leon.	
1513. The Pacific, by Balboa.	
1519. Conquest of Mexico, by Cortez.	
	1524. Verazzani on the eastern shor of North America.
1526–32. Conquest of Peru, by Pizarro.	
1528. Cabeza de Vaca crosses the New Continent.	
1532. California, by Grijalva.	
	1534. The St. Lawrence and Canad by Jacques Cartier.
1539–42. The Mississippi, by De Soto.	
	1562. Port Royal, in South Carolin settled by Ribault.
	1564. Fort Carolina, in Florida, se tled by Ribault.
1565. St. Augustine, in Florida, founded by Melendez de Avila.	
	1608. Quebec founded by Champlai

VERIES.
, from Iceland. covered by Erik Rauda (the Red),
d Biörn explore Vinland, Canada,

DUTCH AND SWEDISH.	ENGLISH.
	1496-97. North America, by the Cabots.
	1525. Expedition sent to North America by Henry VIII.
	1576. Frobisher's voyages. 1583. Sir Humphrey Gilbert's explorations. 1584. Expedition to Roanoke Island, by Sir W. Raleigh. 1585. Lane's Colony. 1587. White's Colony. 1600. Gosnold's attempt in New England. 1607. Virginia Colony at Jamestown. Popham's Colony at Sagahadok.
09. The Hudson, by Henry Hudson.	
	1620. Plymouth Colony. 1630. Massachusetts Bay Colony. 1633. Maryland.
38. The Swedes, on Delaware Bay.	

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART I.

FOR USE IN RECITATION AND REVIEW.

The New World. 1. The United States; size; population; situation; how acquired; the story. 2. The New World; long unknown; how long known.

The Natives. 3. The Indians; origin; legends. 4. The social condition. 5. Traces of civilized races; the Mound Builders.

The North American Indians. 6. Their relations to colonists. 7. Complexion; frame; features. 8. Physical aptitudes; characteristics. 9. Dwellings; occupations. 10. Delight in war; conduct in battle; to prisoners. 11. Chief employment; tame animals; implements, tools, utensils. 12. Condition and treatment of women—and children. 13. Religion; government. 14. Letters; means of communication; invention of characters. 15. Principal branches east of the Mississippi—west of the Mississippi; most advanced tribes. 16. Unity of the race; differences; agreement. 17. Stock encountered by the English settlers; diminution of the number of the Indians.

Discovery of America. 18. Early visits to America; Atlantis; Madoc; visits in the fifth and tenth centuries; Icelanders and Norwegians. 19. Genoa. 20. The boy born there; his early life. 21. Columbus at Lisbon. 22. His scheme of sailing westward; his efforts to obtain means; his final success. 23. Contribution of the Queen, and of others; his first voyage. 24. Discovery of land; for whom claimed. 25. Three other voyages; death of Columbus. 26. North America discovered; Amerigo Vespucci.

Spanish Colonization. 27. Motive of discovery and colonization; treatment of the natives; introduction of other labor—by whom. 28. Distribution of the new lands; Portugal's acquisition of Brazil; extent of Spanish dominion. 29. The Spanish conquerors: Balboa; Cortez; Pizarro; Ponce de Leon; Coronado. 30. Mines of silver and gold.

French Explorations, etc. 31. First French exploration. 32. The St. Lawrence. 33. Coligny's design. 34. His second attempt; fate of the colonists. 35. The revenge. 36. Occupation of Canada. 37. Jesuit zeal; extent of French discoveries and claims.

Dutch and Swedish Settlements. 38. Dutch trade to North America; Henry Hudson; his procedure and death. 39. New Amsterdam; other settlements; New Netherlands. 40. Measures to induce settlement. 41. Swedish colonization; Dutch jealousy. 42. Stuyvesant's campaign. 43. Loss of New Netherlands by the Dutch.

PART II.

THE ENGLISH COLONIES.

1578—1763.

FIRST ENGLISH ATTEMPTS AT COLONIZATION.

1. **More than three-quarters of a century passed away** before the English took advantage of the discovery of the mainland of North America by the Cabots. When Henry VIII. undertook further explorations, he was warned by the Emperor Charles V., that the Pope had granted America to Spain.* He quietly renounced his desire of possessions in the New World. The bitter hatred which sprang up between England and Spain, in the reign of Elizabeth, directed the attention of the English to the great continent beyond the Atlantic.† The fisheries of Newfoundland had been long frequented by English ships.

The dream of a north-west passage to Asia attracted English mariners to the northern seas of America. Martin Frobisher sailed on such an expedition, and brought home from Labrador rocks and dirt supposed to be rich in gold. Every adventurer, since the first voyage of Columbus, expected to win easy wealth in America by the discovery of endless mines of precious metals. The expectation had been increased by the treasures extracted from Mexico and Peru; and has been strangely justified by the experience of the living generation.

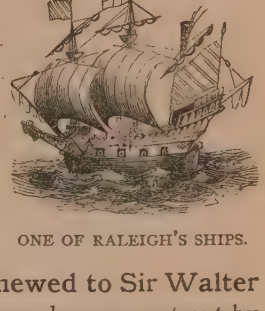
* The English possessions in America were not recognized by Spain till 1670.

† A petition was presented to Queen Elizabeth, in the spring of 1574, "to allow of an enterprise for the discovery of sundry rich and unknown lands fatally reserved for England, and for the honor of your Majestie." This is indorsed by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Sir Richard Grenville, and others.

2. Queen Elizabeth granted a patent * to Sir Humphrey Gilbert "to undertake the discovery of the northern parts of America." His first expedition, made in conjunction with his half-brother, Sir Walter Raleigh, accomplished nothing.

On the second, he took possession of Newfoundland for the English Crown. † Losing one of his vessels off the coast of Maine, he turned homewards with the two that remained. He was himself on board the *Squirrel*, the smaller and weaker bark. It foundered in a storm. The last words heard from Sir Humphrey were: "Courage, my lads, we are as near heaven on sea as on land."

1583.



ONE OF RALEIGH'S SHIPS.

3. The grant to Gilbert was renewed to Sir Walter Raleigh. Two exploring vessels were sent out by him under Amidas and Barlow. They came to the Island of Woco'ken, at the mouth of Ocracoke Inlet, on the coast of North Carolina. They carried back two of the natives, and described in glowing terms the charms of the climate, the waters, the forests, the fruits, and the flowers. The Queen called the new and beautiful land Virginia, in honor of her own maiden reign.

1584.

4. Sir Richard Grenville conducted a second expedition. He was Sir Walter's kinsman, a daring sailor, and had long been an eager advocate of American adventure. Ralph Lane went out as governor of the projected colony, and was accompanied by one hundred and eight emigrants. They landed on Roanoke Island, examined the neighborhood, and explored the Roanoke River in search of gold and silver.

---

* A patent is a charter or grant issued by sovereign authority. In 1578, Queen Elizabeth conferred such a patent on Sir Humphrey Gilbert. Such patents became frequent outside of North America.

† In 1610, James I. made a grant of Newfoundland to the Earl of Southampton, Sir Francis Bacon and Company.

5. **The settlers maintained friendly relations with the Indians** at first, but discords soon arose. The wild natives feared that "there were more of the English yet to come, to kill their people and fill their places." The strangers were suspicious. Wingina (*-jee'nah*), a newly appointed chief, was treacherously slain. His tribe refused to furnish provisions, and the colonists were brought almost to starvation. They gladly accepted the chance of returning home on board of Sir Francis Drake's ships, which had touched upon the coast. They had scarcely departed when Grenville came back from England. He left fifteen men to retain the post. Their bones alone were found when the next emigrants arrived.

6. **Raleigh did not abandon his attempt.** He formed a company to continue the enterprise. Families, and not merely unmarried men, were sent out. They were instructed to pick up the men left by Grenville, and then settle on Chesapeake Bay. The captain of the fleet refused to continue the voyage, after landing them on Roanoke Island. There they remained; and there the city of Raleigh was begun. Provisions were scarce. The Indians were unfriendly. White, the Governor, was induced to return to England for supplies and additional settlers. He came back to the coast. The colonists were neither seen nor heard of again. All perished of hunger, or by the savages. Their fate was never discovered. They numbered one hundred and seventeen persons, including Virginia Dare, White's granddaughter, the first English child born in America, and only ten days old at the time of White's departure.

7. **Assistance to the endangered colony** had been prevented by war with Spain, and the hazards at home from the Invincible Armada.* When this danger passed away, several fruitless efforts were made for the relief or discovery of the

* The Invincible Armada was a powerful fleet, designed by Philip II. of Spain for the invasion and conquest of England. It sailed from the Tagus 29th May, 1588. It suffered much from the attacks of the English in the British Channel, and was destroyed by storms on the coasts of Scotland and Ireland.

hapless settlers. Raleigh sent out several expeditions which achieved nothing. His means were much reduced by his expensive undertakings. He was himself actively engaged in the continued warfare with Spain.* He assigned all his rights to a new company, which accomplished no results worthy of mention.

THE VIRGINIA COLONY, 1606–1619.

8. **Raleigh was condemned as a traitor,** and his patent was forfeited to the Crown soon after James I. became King of England. James then granted a charter for American colonization to two new companies; one composed chiefly of London adventurers; the other, of traders and explorers from the West of England. The former was entitled the London Company; the latter, the Plymouth Company. Both were subject to "the Council of Virginia," whose members resided in England, and held their meetings in London. A long stretch of the Atlantic coast was divided between the two companies. Lands were to be held by the freest tenure; but for five years labor was to be performed for common, and not for private benefit.

9. **Capt. Christopher Newport** sailed with three small vessels,† in December, 1606, and was driven by a storm

* Sir Walter Raleigh is the true founder of the English colonies in America. He left no colony of his own. He pointed the way, and gave encouragement to those which succeeded. He spent vast sums in his endeavor to make "a plantation" in what his friend, the great poet Spenser, calls "the fruitfullest Virginia."

Raleigh (1552–1618) was a most notable man in a notable age. He was handsome, intelligent, dashing, bold, adventurous, skilful. He was a distinguished soldier in the wars of France, Ireland, and Spain. He was the greatest naval commander of his day. He was a statesman, a scholar, a poet, an historian, and a man of scientific research. He was, moreover, a brilliant courtier. England owes to him the beginning of her colonial and her maritime supremacy. The world is indebted to him for the Irish potato and tobacco.

† The *Susan Constant*, of 100 tons burden, Capt. Newport; the *Godspeed*, of 40 tons, Capt. Gosnold; and the *Discovery*, of 20 tons, Capt. Ratcliffe.

Capt. Gilbert, a member of Sir Humphrey's family, had sailed up the Chesapeake during the year, and had been lost on the expedition.

into Chesapeake Bay. There were only one hundred and five colonists, including seven Councillors for the government of the plantation. The names of the Councillors were inclosed in a box, which the king had ordered not to be opened till after their arrival in America. The voyagers proceeded up the broad stream of the Powhatan', and named it James River, after the English monarch. They selected a place for settlement on the northern bank of the stream, and called it Jamestown, also after the king.

10. **Quarrels began** as soon as the box containing the names of the Councillors was opened. There had been serious contentions on the voyage. Wingfield was chosen President. John Smith, one of the Councillors named, was denied his place in the Council. He had been arrested on the outward passage. When brought to trial, he was fully acquitted ; but the governing body was a turbulent and squabbling set.

CAPT. JOHN SMITH.

11. **Capt. John Smith*** was remarkable among the most remarkable men engaged in the settlement of America, and he has been regarded as the true founder of the English colonies there. His adventures were as surprising as those of any romance. In boyhood, he had run away, and gone to sea. He had fought in the Dutch and Turkish wars. He

* Capt. John Smith's (1559–1631) adventures, "hair-breadth escapes," and "moving

had thrice slain a Turkish opponent in single combat. He had been thrown into the sea by his fellows, to propitiate the storm. He had been a slave among the Turks, and among the Tartars. He had escaped through Russia and Poland, after killing his master with a flail. He had been twice saved by the affection of noble ladies. He had wandered through Germany, France, Spain, and Morocco; and had drifted back to England in time to join Capt. Newport's expedition.

12. Jamestown had a hard struggle for existence. It was attacked by the Indians during Smith's absence on a visit to Powhatan. The site was unhealthy. Half the colonists died of an epidemic. They were lazy, thoughtless, and would not work. Trouble inflamed discords. Wingfield was removed from the Presidency. Ratcliffe, a much worse man, was appointed in his stead.

POCAHONTAS.

Smith undertook the exploration of the Chickahominy to find a water line to the Pacific. He was overpowered by the Indians. He himself escaped slaughter, when his companions were slain, by showing his pocket compass to the savages. He was carried by them to their chief, O-pe-chan'ca-nough (*-no*

accidents by flood and field," rest mainly on his own authority, but derive confirmation from contemporaneous records. His story was questioned in his own day by the quaint and inaccurate Thomas Fuller, and has been recently disputed.

The sneer of Fuller in his "Worthies," and the arguments of some recent writers, assailing the veracity of Smith's surprising narrative, have been ably answered (1882) and discredited by Mr. William Wirt Henry, of Richmond, in an Address delivered before the Virginia Historical Society.

Opechancanough conveyed him to Powhatan, the great chief. He was saved from death by Powhatan's young daughter Pocahontas, or Mato'kes. She is said to have placed her head between his and the clubs of the savage executioners. He was sent back to Jamestown with honor, and peace was made with Powhatan.

13. **One hundred and twenty more emigrants** arrived during the winter. Provisions continued to be very scarce. In the second summer, Smith explored the waters of the Chesapeake, and made a chart of them and the neighboring shores. He was chosen President on his return, and encountered bitter opposition. He visited Powhatan again, to insure peace, and to obtain food for his people. He paid a visit also to Opechancanough, and seized that bloody chief in the midst of his braves. By such skill and daring he procured sustenance for the starving colony.

14. **The Virginia Company in England** was disheartened by the heavy expenses and the scant returns. The colonists transported, and the arrangements for labor adopted, were not suited for the hard task of subduing the wilderness. Disappointment was the result. The company obtained another charter, which enlarged the territorial limits of their grant; and extended them from the Atlantic to the Pacific.*

15. **Lord Delaware was appointed Governor-General for life** under the new charter. Nine vessels, with five hundred emigrants, sailed from Plymouth. One ship was sunk in a storm. The rest were scattered abroad upon the ocean. The *Sea Adventure*, carrying the three Commissioners for the new Government—Gates, Somers, and Newport—was wrecked on the Bermudas. The seven others reached Jamestown, battered by the gales, and with deficient supplies.

* Little was yet known of the width of the continent. The English were acquainted only with the Atlantic shore. The Pacific was supposed to be not very far distant in the west. It had been discovered by crossing the narrow Isthmus of Darien, and the Gulf of California had been visited by Cortez after the conquest of Mexico. There were no means of estimating the intervening breadth of country.

16. The old colonists were hungry and quarrelsome. The existing Government was set aside by the new charter. Smith did what he could to maintain order and to keep off destitution. He was injured by an explosion of powder, and returned to England to seek medical aid. His departure left the colony almost without control. Hostilities with the Indians were renewed. Famine followed. In six months four hundred and ninety colonists were reduced to sixty. This wretched period is known as **The Starving Time.** One man was put to death for killing and eating his wife; others fed upon the corpses of the dead.

17. At length **Gates, Somers, and Newport arrived** in two small vessels, which they had patched up out of the wreck of the *Sea Adventure*. Their arrival only increased the misery of the famishing people, by swelling the number of mouths to be fed. All determined to abandon the unhappy land. They were stopped on their way down by a message from Lord Delaware, who had reached Old Point Comfort, at the mouth of the James.

THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH COLONY.

18. On Sunday, the 10th of June, the rescued settlers returned to their lately deserted abode, and renewed the task of settling and subduing the earth. They said to their countrymen at home: "God will raise our State and build his church in this excellent clime." The Virginia colony was saved, and its romantic history proceeded without further break.

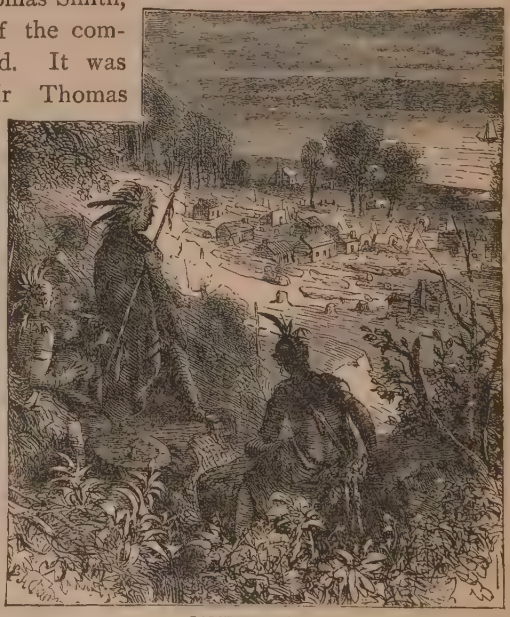
1610. 10 June.

19. Lord Delaware endeavored to establish order and industry. His health gave way. He went back to England, leaving Lord Percy* as Deputy-Governor of the two hundred colonists remaining. He died some years later, on

* Lord Percy was the brother of the Earl of Northumberland, the fellow-prisoner of Raleigh in the Tower of London.

his return voyage to Virginia, and gave his name to the bay off which he expired. He had spent his life, his labors, and his fortune in maintaining the English hold on North America.*

20. Not long after Lord Delaware's departure, **Virginia was put under the harsh rule of a military code,** prepared by Sir Thomas Smith, the treasurer of the company in England. It was enforced by Sir Thomas Dale, a stern soldier, but an able man. New emigrants arrived, and the condition of the settlers was soon improved, by granting to each man a few acres to be held and cultivated as his own. A few years later a hundred acres were bestowed upon each actual settler, and the culture of tobacco was introduced. The colony then advanced rapidly in numbers and prosperity.



JAMESTOWN.

21. **The king changed the constitution of the council**

* In June, 1634, Cecily, Lady De La Warr, represented in a petition to the king that the success of the colony of Virginia was "due to the large sums of money expended out of her jointure, and that she was left burthened with many debts, and had only £10 per annum to maintain herself and seven children."

in England, and the control of Virginia affairs was taken out of the hands of Sir Thomas Smith. His management had provoked many complaints. The colonists were allowed to make laws for themselves, but these required the approval of the English Government. The first Legislature in Virginia—the first representative body in America—met at Jamestown in the summer of 1619. New emigrants continued to arrive. In three years more than three thousand persons were added to the population. The company had spent seventy thousand pounds in the enterprise.*

22. During the first twelve years **the Virginia colony consisted almost exclusively of men** under rigorous rule. There were few women among them. The colonists were chiefly soldiers of fortune, broken tradesmen, idle laborers, straggling sailors, vagrants, spendthrift gentlemen, and adventurers in search of gold and sudden gain. Now, poor but respectable women were sent, and were sold to the highest bidder. They fared so well that many more were dispatched to the thriving plantation. The price of a wife reached one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. It was not a high price for a wife, but tobacco was still scarce and costly, and money was little known on the banks of James River.

THE VIRGINIA COLONY WITH A LEGISLATURE.

23. **The marriage of Pocahontas** before this time had proved of much benefit to the colony. Powhatan had sent her away to a more northern tribe as quarrels arose with the English, and as he looked forward to bitter wars with them. She was seized in her retreat by Capt. Argall, and brought a prisoner in his ship to Jamestown. She became a Christian, and the bride of John Rolfe, who had been her instructor in

---

* A writer of the time thus describes the condition of Virginia in 1615: * * * "For Virginia, we know not what to do with it. * * * The great expense that the nobility and gentry have been at in planting Virginia is no way recompensed by the poor returns from thence."

religion.* Peace resulted from the marriage; and Powhatan furnished corn for the support of the English settlers till their own crops sufficed for their needs. Pocahontas survived only a short time. She was taken to England by her husband, was presented to the king and queen, and was kindly treated by them. She met Capt. Smith, who published that his life had been saved by her.† She sickened and died as she was setting out on her return.‡

INTRODUCTION OF AFRICAN SLAVERY.

24. The colony appeared to be at length firmly established, and the future was full of hope. Emigrants came in numbers, and the culture of tobacco was extended. A Dutch vessel arrived, and **sold twenty negro slaves** to the planters. This was the beginning of slavery in the English colonies. The number of the slaves grew with fresh importations. They furnished the labor for clearing the forest, inclosing the lands, cultivating the soil, and for other manual service. The experiment of sending out convicts had been tried by the king's order. It had failed, and had been abandoned.

The new Legislature tried, with little success, to civilize the Indians by converting them to Christianity. Provision was made for their education by the endowment of a college, the first proposed in the English colonies.

---

* There is a very curious letter still in existence, addressed by Rolfe to the Governor of Virginia, setting forth with the utmost earnestness the religious considerations which recommended his marriage with Pocahontas.

† The romantic tale of the preservation of John Smith's life by the impulsive heroism of Pocahontas has been questioned, but its truth has been ably maintained. It rests upon Smith's own statement, made some years after the occurrence alleged. Nearly all that we know of Smith has the same foundation, and is not above reasonable suspicion or qualification.

‡ Several very respectable families in Virginia trace their lineage back to Pocahontas. It has been recently stated in the papers that a daughter of hers was born during the visit to England, and that her descendants still survive there. To this little credit can be given without full evidence.

THE GREAT MASSACRE.

25. A fearful calamity overwhelmed the colony. Powhatan was dead. Opechancanough succeeded to his authority. He assured the Governor that "the sky should fall before he broke the peace." A false security produced rash exposure and the neglect of all precautions. The Indians treacherously attacked the settlers on their scattered plantations. In a few hours, on the night of March 22d, nearly three hundred and fifty persons were butchered.* The names of all have been preserved. Jamestown had been warned and was saved. The colony seemed to be ruined. This horror was called **The Great Massacre.**

1622.

26. The recent slaughter was charged to unwise rule. The settlers were dissatisfied with the government of the English council; and the council was divided into bitter factions. The Virginia charter was revoked. The king assumed the government, and Virginia became a royal colony.

1625.

27. Lord Baltimore, a Roman Catholic nobleman, came to Virginia, seeking a refuge for the persecuted Catholics of England. He was forbidden to remain, because he could not take the oath to support the English Church required by the colonial constitution. He went back to England, and procured a royal grant of the country round the head of Chesapeake Bay. Here was afterwards established the Catholic colony of Maryland. From this grant arose squabbles and petty warfare between the new colony and Clayborne, the surveyor of Virginia. The Governor and Legislature got involved in the controversy, and discord sprang up between them. The Governor, Sir John Harvey, was deposed by the House of Burgesses, and sent to England for trial. He was restored by the king. Virginia continued to prosper, notwithstanding the dissensions, and the low price of tobacco, which had been

* Three hundred and forty-nine was the exact number, which is put at three hundred and forty-seven by many historians.

made a royal monopoly. A provisional Governor who preceded Harvey had been removed for hog-stealing. He was pardoned in consequence of an epidemic, and of his being the only physician in the country.

28. **Sir William Berkeley** was appointed by Charles I. Governor of Virginia, in the year when the Great Rebellion broke out in England.* He was an elegant, brave, but passionate man, thoroughly loyal to the king. The colonists entertained a high regard for him. They were warmly attached to the royal Government, as was proved by their "Declaration against the Company," when that body asked to be restored to their former rights and privileges.

29. **A second slaughter of the settlers by the Indians** occurred twenty-two years after the Great Massacre. Opechancanough ravaged the frontier. Five hundred of the English were slain. The English colonies grew up in the midst of danger from the savages. The population, however, had increased with wonderful rapidity since Virginia had become a dependency of the English Crown. Sir William called out the forces of the colony. He marched against Opechancanough, captured him, and brought him to Jamestown. The hostile chief was old, helpless, and almost blind. He was brutally murdered by one of his guards; and complained in death of being made a show to the people. His fall broke up the Indian confederation, and put an end to many perils.

1644.

VIRGINIA UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH.†

30. **The Civil War in England** drove many Royalists to Virginia. Many more followed after the unhappy monarch had been beheaded by the victorious Puritans. Virginia remained faithful to the young son of the dead king. Com-

* The Great Rebellion (1641–1649) was the name given to the war between Charles I. and the Parliament. It closed with the deposition and execution of the king.

† The English Commonwealth designates the period (1649–1660) from the execution of Charles I. to the restoration of Charles II.

missioners were dispatched by the Parliament to reduce it. A treaty was made with them, securing to the Virginia people "such freedoms and privileges as belong to the free-born people of England." Sir William Berkeley retired to his plantation near Jamestown. A Provisional Government was set up on the return of the Commissioners from Maryland. The new Governor was elected by the Assembly, by whom all officials were chosen. On the death of Cromwell, the House of Burgesses restored Sir William Berkeley. Virginia had been almost independent during the English Commonwealth. It was the first British possession to proclaim Charles II. From its loyalty it obtained the name of the **Old Dominion,** and commemoration in the titles and on the coins of the British sovereign.*

1652.

THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

31. **The Northern parts of America** early attracted English enterprise. A plantation in that quarter was projected in the very opening of the seventeenth century. A year before Raleigh's patent was forfeited, Capt. Gosnold discovered Cape Cod in Massachusetts, and named it from the abundance of codfish in the waters around. He built a small fort, but the garrison refused to remain, from dread of the Indians. A second attempt to establish a colony was made by Raleigh Gilbert.

The coast continued to be visited by English traders. Many adventurers resided for brief periods along those shores. Capt. John Smith, with the office of Admiral of New England, explored the coasts, and expressed his wonder at the plenty of

* Charles II. added to the royal motto: "*En dat Virginia quintam*"—Virginia gives the fifth crown. The five crowns were those of England, France, Scotland, Ireland, and Virginia.

To this loyalty may, perhaps, be ascribed the uncertain origin of the designation, the "Old Dominion," applied to all of Virginia east of the mountains.

fish, and of the trade that might be thus supported. The danger from Indians was slight; for an infectious disease, caught from the Europeans, had swept away multitudes from those bleak regions. The whole tract had been assigned to the Plymouth Company. The name of New England was bestowed upon it by Smith, at the suggestion of Prince Henry, eldest son of James I.

32. **No permanent colony was attempted** within the Plymouth grant till the closing years of James. A small band of English pilgrims from Holland, where they had sought a refuge from religious persecutions at home, founded a settlement in that inclement wilderness. They did not select the locality. They were dropped there against their will. They desired a more southern abode. They had received slight encouragement from the Plymouth Company. The king had expressed his readiness to overlook their heresy if they did not otherwise violate English law. He inquired how they proposed to make a living. "By fishing," they replied. "By my soul," said the king, "a most apostolic vocation."

33. **One hundred and one Puritan pilgrims,** the pioneers of a larger number soon to follow, started from Delft, in Holland, under the charge of Elder Brewster. They purchased a small vessel and hired another to transport them across the ocean. The *Speedwell*, which they bought, proved crazy, and was abandoned. The *Mayflower*, which they hired, sailed alone from Plymouth, and landed them near Cape Cod. Their intention was to settle on richer lands and under happier skies. The season was late, and the captain of the *Mayflower* was in haste to return. They were compelled to land in a country which did not attract them, and which they had not designed to occupy.

1620. Sept. 6.

34. **The emigrants signed an agreement for their government before landing.** They elected John Carver, Governor, and Miles Standish, Captain. A committee of three determined the place of settlement. A hamlet was begun on

Christmas-day, 1620.* It was called Plymouth, after the English harbor from which they had set sail. The new abode was begun in midwinter, in a severe climate. In January, eight died; in February, seventeen; in March, fourteen.† Among the victims were Governor Carver and his wife. Fortunately the settlers were not troubled by Indians, as pestilence had left scarcely any in the country around.

35. **A single Indian straggled into the little settlement** before the return of spring. He saluted the strangers with the greeting: "Welcome, Englishmen!" He had picked up a few words of English from traffickers on the coast. This visit produced an alliance with Massasoit, the chief of the Wampanoags, which lasted for fifty years. Other tribes professed friendship, but Canonicus, the head of the Narragansetts, sent a bundle of arrows, bound with the skin of a snake, as a symbol of hostility. Governor Bradford sent back the skin, stuffed with powder and shot. Canonicus remained quiet. The Indians were provoked by some settlers who had been established in the neighborhood, by Weston, a trader. Disturbances ensued. Capt. Standish was sent to discover an alleged plot of the Narragansetts. He stabbed one of the chiefs with his own hand. John Robinson, the Puritan pastor in Leyden,

---

* The main body of the Pilgrims landed on Monday, December 25th. The rock on which they stepped from their boats when they reached the shore is celebrated as the Plymouth Rock. A part of it still remains in position and may be recognized. A part was conveyed to the heart of the town more than a century ago. A handsome arch has been built over it, as a monument. Seventeen men landed on Monday, December 11th, but the main body disembarked two weeks later, December 25th.

These dates are according to the Old Style. The New Style was adopted in England in 1752. By this, 11 was added to the number expressing the day of the month. Thus, Dec. 11th, O. S., became Dec. 22d, N. S., the day which has long been celebrated by the descendants of the Pilgrims as "Forefathers' Day." In 1620, there was, in fact, a difference of only 10 days between the two styles, and December 21st is the true anniversary of the landing, and the date inscribed on the new monument at Plymouth.

† "In three months past die half our company. The greater part in the depth of winter, wanting houses and other comforts; being infected with scurvy and other diseases, which their long voyage and uncomfortable condition brought upon them. Of a hundred scarce fifty remain—the living scarce able to bury the dead." * * * —Gov. Bradford."

wrote, when he heard of the barbarity, "How happy a thing it would have been that some had been converted before any were slain!"

36. **The new Plymouth Colony advanced slowly,** and suffered much from the harsh climate, and from insufficient subsistence.* Other settlements were attempted. Capt. John Mason obtained a tract of country between Salem and the mouth of the Merrimac. This he named Mariana. Sir Ferdinando Gorges procured a grant of the lands between the Merrimac and the Kennebec, and called it Laconia. Thus began the settlement of New Hampshire and Maine.† An effort was made to establish Scotch emigrants east of the Saint Croix, on lands granted to Sir William Alexander, in what is now Nova Scotia.

37. **The successful settlement of New England** was achieved by a different enterprise. A strictly Puritan colony was begun at Salem, to which John Endicott led settlers, after a charter for Massachusetts Bay had been obtained. Little was accomplished till it was decided to remove the council and the government of the new colony to America. John Winthrop and eleven other gentlemen conducted the scheme. They resolved "to colonize only their best men." Winthrop took out seven hundred colonists, "for the most part yeomen, mechanics, and farm laborers, with their women and children." They removed to Charlestown, as they

THE FIRST CHURCH BUILT IN BOSTON IN 1632.

1629. 1630.

* The Plymouth Colony was annexed to that of Massachusetts Bay by the charter of William and Mary, in 1691.

† The name by which the country was first known was the Indian name, Norimbega. It was called Maine in compliment to Henrietta Maria, Queen of Charles I., and daughter of Henry IV. of France. She had some connections with the French duchy of Maine.

found Salem in distress. In two years new settlements and churches sprang up. The villages clustered round the places of worship.

38. **The Puritans in America were as intolerant** as those from whose persecutions they had fled. Only members of their churches were allowed to vote. Only Puritans of approved faith could be deputies to the General Court or Legislature. Religious and political dissensions resulted from this rigor. Winthrop, who had been elected Governor four times successively, was replaced by Henry Vane, a young and earnest fanatic fresh from England.

Further divisions were caused by the appointment of Roger Williams to the charge of the church at Salem. Williams was desirous of tolerating all creeds. He was banished, and strayed through the wilderness till he got beyond the limits of the colony. Anne Hutchinson and others were also driven into exile for upholding doctrines different from those prescribed.

39. **The stern community prospered** in the midst of strife. In ten years 21,000 emigrants arrived. The fisheries were very lucrative and supported a large trade. The people were industrious, enterprising, and frugal. Settlements spread widely through the surrounding country. Earnest encouragement was given to education. Harvard College was founded on a small bequest of John Harvard.

40. **Charles I. and his ministers were alarmed** by the growth of the Puritan colonies. These provided a retreat for numbers of the political and religious opponents of the king. They gave strength and support to the discontented at home. Archbishop Laud was placed at the head of a commission for the government of New England. Emigration to the new country was restrained. It has often been represented that Oliver Cromwell and John Hampden were thus prevented from emigrating to it. The civil war in England, and the overthrow of the king favored the fortunes of the New England colonies and rendered them almost independent. For a time

they were allowed freedom of trade. A scheme of government, called "A Body of Liberties," was enacted in Massachusetts. Offices were made wholly elective, and were held for a year only. Religious restrictions were relaxed. Slavery was forbidden, except in the case of prisoners of war, strangers publicly sold, persons who sold themselves, or who were condemned to be slaves.

COLONIAL COMBINATIONS IN NEW ENGLAND.

41. Maine and New Hampshire were added to Massachusetts. The colonies of Massachusetts Bay, New Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven formed a union for protection against the Indians, against the Dutch on the Hudson, and against the French in Canada and Acadia. Rhode Island was excluded in consequence of its religious doctrines.* This was the first American confederation.

1643.

42. Religious dissent was still persecuted. Baptists were seized, fined, and otherwise punished. Quakers were whipped, imprisoned, banished. They had their ears cut off, their tongues bored with hot irons, and four, at least, were hanged. These outrages were practised till they were arrested by a royal order. Some zeal was shown in the endeavor to convert the Indians to Christianity. John Eliot devoted himself for nearly fifty years to this task, and translated the Bible into one of the native tongues, which has now been long extinct.†

THE SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND.

43. The settlement of Rhode Island was unlike

* Another reason for its exclusion was that Rhode Island denied the jurisdiction of Plymouth. The chief cause was its rejection of the civil and religious rule of Massachusetts.

† Few copies of the work are in existence. It was said, fifty years ago, that there was then "scarcely any living person who can read or understand a single verse in it." An example of its uncouthness is furnished in its longest word: "*Wutappesittukgussonnookwehtunkquoh*"—"kneeling down to him."

that of any of the other colonies. Roger Williams, after being driven out of Salem, wandered, for three months of a northern winter, through the woods, often without guide, or fire, or better shelter than a hollow tree. The savages were kind to him. His gentleness impressed their fierce natures. He began a new home, which he called Providence. He offered it as "a refuge for persons distressed in conscience." The Narragansett chiefs, Canonicus and Miantonomoh gave him lands. Mrs. Anne Hutchinson and others, when expelled from Massachusetts, were invited by him to settle in the neighborhood. They bought from the Indians the beautiful island of Aq'uiday—the Isle of Peace—and it received the name of Rhode Island.*

1636.

44. **Roger Williams went to England** to obtain a charter for the towns of Providence, Newport, and Portsmouth, with the right of governing themselves. A General Court had already declared the government to be a democracy. Williams succeeded in his mission. A second charter was obtained from Charles II., nearly twenty years later; and under this charter Rhode Island was governed for one hundred and eighty years. Diversities of religious belief were freely tolerated, because Williams maintained that "to punish a man for any matters of conscience was persecution."

1644.

THE SETTLEMENT OF CONNECTICUT.

45. **The Connecticut Valley,** in which the Dutch had established trading posts, was claimed by England. The Plymouth Company granted to the Earl of Warwick a strip of territory, one hundred and twenty miles wide, reaching from the river of the Narragansetts to the Pacific Ocean. Warwick conveyed this grant to Lord Say and Sele, Lord Brooke, and others. Under it, John Winthrop the younger, the son of the Governor of Massachusetts, built a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River, and called it Saybrook. Next year a

1635.

* The name seems to have been earlier than the date of this purchase. Rhode may be *roode*—red—Red Soil.

settlement was made at Hartford by the Rev. Mr. Hooker and his congregation. They had moved through the forest with their families and wagons, and cows and horses. They were the first regular band of those New England pioneers who have pushed steadily onward till they have reached the mouth of the Columbia River—"yearning for other worlds to conquer." *

A large colony was soon after planted at New Haven by emigrants from Massachusetts.†

46. **The Indians were disturbed and alarmed** by the spread of the new settlements. They were threatened with the loss of their hunting grounds, their homes, and the graves of their fathers. They were also subjected to great and continual injustice. They were more numerous and more warlike in the inland parts of the country than they had been found to be along the coast. They were harassed by the intruders, and they harassed them in turn. A passionate and treacherous warfare occasioned much loss of life on both sides. The mother and the child were murdered at the milking-pen. The Indian was shot down in cold blood when a chance presented itself. The settlers ploughed their fields and harvested their grain in reach of their arms. Sentries were placed to give warning of danger, while the rest of the laborers worked on the farm.

STOCKADED HOUSE.

Shortly to say: there neither man nor maid
Was safe afield, whether they wrought or played.

INDIAN WARS.

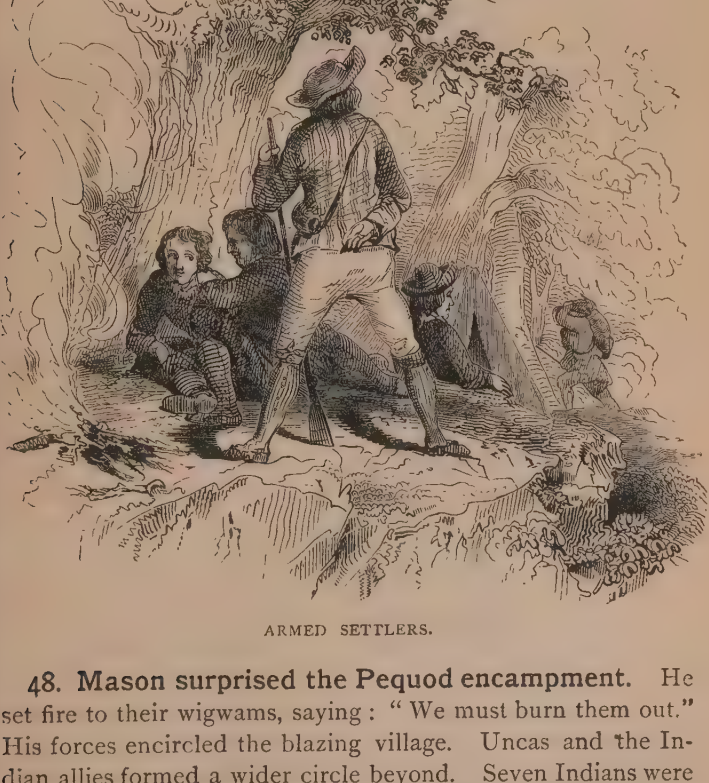
47. **The Pequods,** dwelling east of the Connecticut River,

* Mr. Hooker's company sought their new abode, complaining of the crowding of the population, as 3,000 emigrants had recently arrived from England. They sold their homes to the new-comers, and migrated westward in search of "pastures new."

† In 1639, Connecticut constituted itself a separate government, and adopted a written constitution—the first in America.

devastated the frontier, killing men, women, and cattle. War was declared against them. Capt. John Mason commanded the colonial army, consisting of eighty or ninety English and seventy Mohicans (*mo-hee'cans*), under their chief, Uncas. The Narragansetts were prevented by Roger Williams from joining the Indian league.

1637.



ARMED SETTLERS.

48. Mason surprised the Pequod encampment. He set fire to their wigwams, saying: "We must burn them out." His forces encircled the blazing village. Uncas and the Indian allies formed a wider circle beyond. Seven Indians were taken, seven escaped, and more than six hundred were slaughtered. Two of the English were killed, and sixteen or

twenty wounded. The war was prosecuted till the Pequods were slain or subdued. The victors appropriated their lands.

49. **The war between the Narragansetts and the Mohicans** was of equal advantage to the people of Connecticut. The Narragansett chief, Miantonomoh, attacked the Mohicans, and was taken prisoner. His fate was referred to the Commissioners of the United Colonies of New England for their decision. By them he was handed over to the mercy of his enemies. Uncas, the Mohican, cut him down with his tomahawk, carved the living flesh from his shoulder, and ate it with savage relish, declaring the flesh of foes to be the sweetest of morsels. Ten years later, a war with the Dutch and Indians was prevented solely by the refusal of Massachusetts to be governed by the decisions of the New England Union.

50. After the restoration of Charles II., **Connecticut received a royal charter,** which conjoined New Haven and the other settlements around under a single government. The younger Winthrop was named Governor. He was elected seventeen times successively. When Sir Edmund Andros, the Royal Governor of New England under James II., demanded the surrender of the charter, excuses were made to delay its delivery till evening. While the charter lay on the table for delivery, the candles were suddenly extinguished. When they were relighted, the charter had disappeared. A copy of the charter was hidden by Capt. Wadsworth in a hollow tree, afterwards known

1662.

1687.

THE CHARTER OAK.

as the "Charter Oak." * Here it lay concealed till better days returned, after the expulsion of James from the English throne.

THE MARYLAND COLONY.

51. On his return from Virginia, **Lord Baltimore received from Charles I.** a grant of the country between the river Potomac and the Atlantic.† He died before the patent was made out. His eldest son, Cecil Calvert, succeeded to his title and his plans. The territory lay within the limits of Virginia, which the king thought had more land than it needed. The claims of Virginia produced discord from the beginning.

52. **The new colony was designed to be a retreat for the Catholics,** who were persecuted and oppressed by the English laws. It was named Maryland in honor of the Queen, Henrietta Maria—herself a Catholic. Lord Baltimore had proposed to call it Crescentia. The colonists were allowed free government, exemption from taxation by the mother country, and perfect toleration of religious opinions. Leonard Calvert, brother of Lord Baltimore,‡ brought over the first colonists in 1633. The village of St. Mary's was founded on the river of the same name, twelve miles above its junction with the Potomac, where some cleared land was bought from the Indians. As the ground was open and ready for cultivation, a crop of corn was raised the first year, and part of it was sent to New England for sale. It relieved the

1633.

* This aged tree stood till 1856, when it was blown down.

† The condition on which the grant was held was the delivery, annually, of two Indian arrows at Windsor Castle.

‡ The title of Lord Baltimore, from which the large commercial city of Maryland receives its name, was derived from the seaport town of Baltimore, in the south-west of Ireland, situated a short distance north of Cape Clear.

hungry people there from the starvation with which they were threatened.

53. **Clayborne, the surveyor of Virginia, had a grant** of lands and privileges of trade within the territory cut off for Maryland. He maintained his claim by arms, and waged a small war against Lord Baltimore's people. He was defeated, but made his escape to Virginia, whence he was sent to England. During the civil war in the mother country, Clayborne excited insurrection in Maryland. Calvert retired to Virginia. He returned and suppressed the petty rebellion. He died the next year.

54. After the execution of Charles I., the Assembly of Maryland passed the "**Toleration Act,**" and repeated the promise of religious freedom.* These engagements were soon broken. The Commissioners appointed by the Long Parliament † (Clayborne was one of them) changed the government, and placed it in the hands of a Council of Ten. The new Assembly, which included many recent Puritan emigrants, deprived the Roman Catholics of all political and religious rights. Civil war was the consequence. When peace was restored, the proprietary governor ‡ was readmitted to his office.

55. **The Maryland Assembly denied the rights of Lord Baltimore's heirs** after the death of Cromwell. They were confirmed on the reëstablishment of the royal authority in England. They were enjoyed by the family till William III. made the colony a royal province. On the accession of the House of Hanover § they were restored to the fourth Lord Baltimore, after he had renounced the creed of his fathers.

* This act, passed in April, 1649, enacted that "no person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be in any ways troubled, molested, or discountenanced, for his or her religion, or in the free exercise thereof."

† The Long Parliament was the English Revolutionary Parliament, which lasted, with many interruptions and mutilations, from 3d Nov., 1640, to 16th March, 1660.

‡ The proprietary governor was the deputy-governor appointed by the proprietor, Lord Baltimore.

§ The House of Hanover obtained the sovereignty of Great Britain in the person of George I., in 1714, and is now represented by Queen Victoria.

The last Lord Baltimore was a profligate and a spendthrift. At his death he bequeathed Maryland to a son, Henry Harford.

1771.

56. Maryland was peaceful and prosperous. It grew in wealth by the culture and exportation of tobacco, and by the trade which tobacco encouraged. It escaped all serious danger from the Indians. The capital was transferred to Annapolis at the end of the seventeenth century. In the middle of the eighteenth, the population amounted to 40,000 whites and 60,000 blacks.

VIRGINIA FROM 1660 TO 1750.

57. The royal authority was revived in Virginia even before Charles II. had been invited to resume the English throne. Joy prevailed along the waters of the James River, but it was tempered by grave discontents. An act, passed under the Commonwealth, compelled the trade of the colonies to be carried on in English ships, manned by English sailors, and to be conveyed to English harbors. The "Navigation Act" was the cause of much future complaint. This statute was revised and extended. Another grievance was the lavish grant of lands to court favorites. "The Northern Neck," or the wedge of land between the Rappahannock and Potomac rivers, was bestowed upon Lord Colepepper (*cul-pep'per*). "All the dominion of land and water called Virginia" was given for thirty years to Lord Colepepper and the Earl of Arlington. The Assembly protested against such procedures, but no redress was obtained. The Virginians, however, were thriving, and Virginia planters, on their visits to England, dazzled the English with their wealth and extravagance. Ten years after the Restoration the population numbered 40,000; and 16,000 hogsheads of tobacco were annually exported.

58. **The first Assembly after the Restoration** * declared the Church of England to be the State church, and imposed taxes for its support. Old laws against Quakers and other dissenters were revived. New laws against them were passed. A tax was laid on tobacco to defray the expenses of the Government; and high pay was given to the members of the General Assembly. These members had been previously elected every two years. The new body, following the late example of the Long Parliament in England, protracted its existence during fifteen years, till it was ended by the indignation of the people. It is not surprising that after the continuance of increased excesses for three years a plot was concocted for the overthrow of the Government. The leaven of republicanism, introduced by Puritan emigrants during the rule of the Commonwealth, was at work.

59. **The discontent was embittered** by real or supposed danger from the Indians. The Susquehannahs, driven southwards by the Senecas, were plundering along the Potomac. John Washington went to the aid of the settlers. Some chiefs, who brought proposals of peace, were murdered. "If they had killed my father and my mother," observed Berkeley, "yet, if they had come to treat of peace, they ought to have gone in peace." The outrage maddened the savages, and they pushed their hostilities to the falls of James River. Governor Berkeley was accused of neglecting measures of defence.† The Government did not even give the people permission to defend themselves. This indifference, or neglect, gave occasion to Bacon's rebellion.

BACON'S REBELLION.

60. **Nathaniel Bacon was a young man of fortune,**

* The Restoration is the term applied to the reëstablishment of the royal authority in England, under Charles II., in 1660.

† Sir William Berkeley sent out an expedition to explore the interior of the country. It crossed the Blue Ridge, but was stopped by the Alleghany. The Governor was preparing to lead a second expedition in person when Bacon's rebellion broke out.

of education, and of many accomplishments. He had recently arrived in the colony. He was probably a kinsman of the illustrious Francis Bacon.* He was a member of the council, as was his uncle of the same name, who designed him for his heir. Being refused a commission for the Indian war,

1676. he marched against the savages with no commission but his sword. He defeated them, and retired to his plantation. He was declared a rebel in his absence. The anger of the people compelled the summoning of a new Assembly. Bacon was elected one of the delegates.† He asked pardon for any misdeeds committed by him, and was admitted to his seat in the Legislature. His commission was still withheld. He withdrew secretly from Jamestown, and returned at the head of five hundred men. Berkeley met him, bared his breast, and cried out: "Fair mark! Shoot!" The disturbances, however, were so threatening, that he was induced to grant the commission. The spirit of coming revolution was already abroad in the land.

61. Bacon marched against the Indians again. Berkeley, a second time, proclaimed him a rebel, and prepared to subdue him by arms. Being insufficiently supported, Sir William sought refuge on the further shore of Chesapeake Bay. Bacon then seized upon Jamestown, and remoulded the Government. Having done so, he attacked the Pamunkeys, perhaps without sufficient cause. He next proceeded against the main body of the Indians near the present site of Richmond.‡ He inflicted a terrible slaughter upon them. The victory was

---

* Francis Bacon (1561–1626) was Lord High Chancellor of England, and father of the Baconian Philosophy, or modern Inductive Science. He was one of the members of the Virginia Company, and was intimately associated with the English projects of colonization under James I.

† On his way down the river, Bacon was encountered by an armed vessel, and was arrested by the sheriff. He was taken before the Governor, who accosted him with the inquiry: "Have you forgot to be a gentleman?" Bacon replied: "No, may it please your Honor." "Then," said Berkeley, "I will take your parole."

‡ "Bacon's Quarter," near the city, and "Bloody Run," three miles below it, are supposed to mark Bacon's plantation and Bacon's fight.

succeeded by new hazards. Berkeley had returned to Jamestown. Bacon invested the place, repelled a vigorous assault, captured the town and burnt it.* Berkeley escaped down the river, having been driven off by the cannon which were brought to bear upon his flotilla.

62. **This success produced no enduring result.** Troops arrived from England to sustain the royal Government.† The rebellion was soon ended by the death of Bacon, who contracted a fatal disease by exposure in the swamps. A few of his followers escaped. Twenty-three were executed. Berkeley's severity rendered him odious to the people whom he had governed for a whole generation. He went to England to give an explanation of the late unfortunate events. He did not survive his return. The king would not receive him. "The old fool!" said Charles, "he has taken away more lives in that naked country than I for the murder of my father."‡ Berkeley's harsh suppression of this provincial rebellion, and his rejoicing at the absence of schools and printing-presses, have prevented his obtaining due credit for the prosperity of Virginia under his twenty-eight years' rule.

63. **This rebellion deprived Virginia of the liberal charter** intended for it. Lord Colepepper became Governor as well as proprietor. He was greedy and exacting. He was removed from the Government, and surrendered most of his other privileges to the king. Virginia became once more a royal province. It could turn out 15,000 men for military service; but heavy taxes and the low price of tobacco kept it complaining of poverty.

64. **After the cruel suppression of Monmouth's re-**

* On his rapid and unexpected approach, he gathered from the neighborhood the ladies of the families of the officials and prominent men within the town. Releasing one, to communicate the intelligence, he intrenched and fortified himself during the moonlit night. The besieged were afraid to fire, lest they might injure the ladies in the opposing camp. Next morning, an unsuccessful assault was made by Berkeley.

† In a small fleet under Sir John Berry.

‡ This anecdote is doubtful. Berkeley's treatment has been otherwise represented. This rebellion cost the colony $500,000.

bellion in England,* many political convicts were transported to Virginia, and were sold to the planters. They brought from fifty to seventy dollars a head. When Louis XIV. renewed the persecution of the Huguenots, or French Protestants,† a number of them came over. They were a valuable addition to the population.

65. **Francis Nicholson,** the first Governor under William III., took active measures to establish the college which had been so long contemplated. Funds were subscribed by the king, the queen, the bishops, and many other persons of distinction. Thus, the College of William and Mary
1693. was founded. It was the second college established in the English colonies in America. Nicholson removed the seat of government from Jamestown to Williamsburgh, which he laid out in the shape of the letter W, in honor of King William. Sixty years later, the best public buildings in the English provinces were found there.

66. **Virginia continued to increase in prosperity** under the governors and deputy-governors sent out from England. None of them deserved higher regard than Alexander Spotswood, who had fought with distinction at Blenheim.‡ He carried into effect the project of Sir William Berkeley, crossed the Blue Ridge, and descended into the rich and beautiful
1714. Valley of Virginia. To commemorate the expedition, he gave to each of his companions a golden horseshoe, and instituted "the Tramontane Order, or Knights of the Golden Horseshoe."§ At Germanna, on the Rappahannock, he set up the first furnace for smelting iron that was

* The Duke of Monmouth, one of the sons of Charles II., excited a rebellion against James II. He was defeated, captured, and executed in July, 1685.

† The Huguenots were driven out of France by the revocation of the Edict of Nantes in 1685. This revocation repealed Henry IV.'s decree for the protection of the Protestants.

‡ Blenheim was the scene of the Duke of Marlborough's first great victory. It was gained in 1704, over the French and Bavarians.

§ Some of these badges are still preserved.

established in America.* Trade was rendered more secure by the defeat and death of the pirate Theach, or Blackbeard, after a desperate fight in Pamlico Sound. On the outbreak of the Spanish war, Spotswood left his retreat at Germanna, to take command of the colonial troops, but died at Annapolis before sailing. The Virginia forces employed against Carthagena were commanded by Gooch, the new Governor. He held the Government twenty-two years, and returned to England soon after the close of the great war of the Austrian Succession.†

1739.

THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES AFTER THE RESTORATION.

67. The union of the colonies of New England gave them security and strength. Their spirit of independence was displayed by their opposition to the commissioners of Charles II., and by their welcome of Whalley, Goffe, and Dixwell, the regicides.‡ These fugitives first came to Boston; but went to New Haven as a safer refuge. They were often in great danger. On one occasion they escaped by hiding under a bridge, while their pursuers crossed it above their heads. At last they concealed themselves at Hadley. The village was surrounded by Indians in King Philip's War. A venerable stranger placed himself at the head of the alarmed inhabitants, and led them to victory. He vanished after the battle. This was supposed to have been Goffe. The most dreadful of Indian wars had broken out; but New England numbered 60,000 people, and the Indians were at no time numerous.

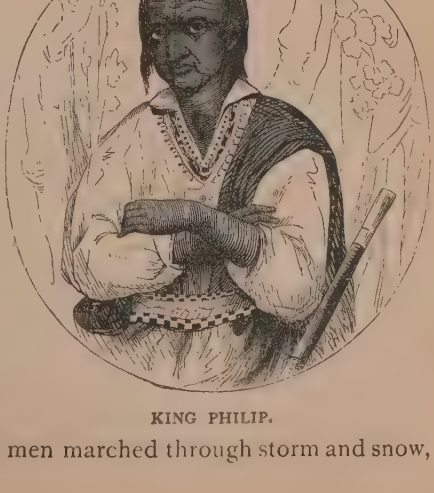
* The progress of Virginia in industry and commerce is manifested by the exportation in 1730 of 40 tons of iron, 3,000 pounds of copper ore, 300 pounds of raw silk, 300 pounds of hemp, and 150 quintals of beeswax. A quintal is a weight of 112 lbs., or 100 lbs., according to the scale employed.

† The war of the Austrian Succession was the war against Maria Theresa of Austria, begun by Frederick II. of Prussia. It lasted from 1740 to 1748.

‡ The regicides were the members of the extraordinary Court of Justice which had tried and condemned Charles I.

KING PHILIP'S WAR—1675.

68. Massasoit had through life faithfully observed his treaty with the Plymouth Pilgrims. His younger son, Philip of Pokanoket, or Mount Hope, succeeded him, and was the chief of seven hundred Wampanoags. He was accused of plotting the destruction of the whites. The informer was murdered. Three of Philip's tribe were seized, tried, and hanged by the Plymouth people. Philip attacked the settlements, and there was war. The forces of Plymouth, joined by those of Massachusetts, finding Mount Hope abandoned, advanced through the country of the Narragansetts, to the swamp of Pocasset, whither the Wampanoags were said to have retreated. Philip broke through the lines around him, and drew other tribes into the war. Several towns were burnt; more were attacked. Hadley was saved in the manner already described. During two seasons the borders were devastated with all the horrors of savage warfare. Cruelty and daring were vain against superior numbers, superior arms, superior resources, and superior intelligence. Philip was defeated. He was hunted from place to place, deserted by his allies, and at length killed by one of his own followers. His wife and child had been previously taken. The boy, only nine years of age, was sold in Bermuda as a slave.



KING PHILIP.

69. Canon'chet, the chief of the Narragansetts, **was charged with** having given aid to Philip. A thousand men marched through storm and snow,

and surprised his camp in Rhode Island. It was taken after a stubborn defence. A thousand Indians were slain, six hundred wigwams were burnt, and many savages were roasted in the flames. In the spring Canonchet was captured and was put to death. The Wampanoags and the Narragansetts—the friends of the early colonists—were heard of no more. Thirteen towns had been destroyed, and six hundred lives lost, on the side of the New Englanders.

70. Difficulties occurred between Massachusetts and the English Crown. Charles II. declared the charter of the colony void. James II. assailed the privileges of Rhode Island and Connecticut. The charters were resumed on the revolution in England, and the Governor, Andros, was seized, and sent home for trial. King William did not permit Massachusetts to return to its old system. A new charter, forbidding religious tests for political purposes, and reserving a veto on the provincial legislation, was bestowed upon that colony. Plymouth and Maine were annexed to it. These changes were distasteful. One still more odious was the appointment of the Governor and the higher officials by the king.

1684. 1692.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR.—1689-1697.

71. Hostilities between England and France in Europe produced war in New England. It began with an attack on Dover. Schenectady, in New York, was surprised in the night by French and Indians. The inhabitants were slaughtered and the town burnt. The whole northern frontier was in danger. Delegates from the provinces met at New York to devise means of protection. An expedition against Montreal failed. Sir William Phipps made an attack by sea upon Port Royal, took it, and plundered other places in Acadia. He sailed from Boston against Quebec, but achieved nothing. These expeditions drained Massachusetts of money, and left the troops clamorous for their pay. Bills of credit* were is-

* Government promises to pay the sums of money specified on the bills.

sued to defray the expenses incurred. These soon sank to half their professed value. Thus was begun the endless issue of paper money in the colonies.

72. Sir William Phipps, a colonist of humble birth and of little education, had fished up a million of dollars from some Spanish wrecks in the Carribbean Sea. He was appointed Governor of Massachusetts, and brought the new charter from England.

THE SALEM WITCHCRAFT.—1692.

73. **The delusions of the Salem witchcraft** gave notability to the administration of Phipps. Parris, the minister of Salem, accused his Indian servant, Tituba, of bewitching his daughter and his niece, children of nine and eleven years of age. Tituba was whipped, confessed her guilt, and accused others. The accused made further accusations. Arrests, trials, and tortures were multiplied. Those who maintained their innocence were hanged. Those who admitted their guilt, for the most part, escaped.* Twenty persons were capitally punished; more than fifty were tortured into confession. Numbers were confined in jail. The trials were at last stopped by the king.†

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—1702-1713.

74. **The War of the Spanish Succession in Europe** is known as Queen Anne's War in the history of the English colonies in America. The French and their Indian allies fell upon the frontier settlements of New England. The villages in Maine were desolated. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was

---

* Giles Cory, an old man, eighty years of age, was pressed to death between boards for refusing to plead to the accusation. The refusal was in order to save his property, as it would be forfeited if he were convicted of the felony. This is the only instance in British America of this punishment—the last in the history of English law.

† Such delusions had prevailed everywhere. An act was passed in England, in the first year of James I., against witches. The acts against witches were not repealed till 1736. A royal edict against them was issued in France in 1682. Witch trials took place in Sweden in 1670. In the same year the younger Casaubon published in England a work asserting the reality of witchcraft.

surprised at midnight by enemies who marched through the snow, and who entered the fort over the drifts banked against the palisades. Forty-seven of its people were killed, and one hundred and twenty prisoners were dragged away to Canada. A fruitless attempt was made from New England to conquer that province. The Indian villages along the Penobscot and the St. Croix were destroyed by Colonel Church, with five hundred men from Massachusetts. Colonel Nicholson took Port Royal, in Acadia, and changed its name to Annapolis, in honor of the queen.

75. **Grievous burdens were imposed upon New England** by this war, but prosperity waits upon an industrious and intelligent people. Bishop Berkeley, who was said to possess "all the virtues under heaven," visited Rhode Island, and spent three years near Newport. While contemplating this visit and forecasting the destinies of America, he wrote : 1728.

> Westward the course of empire takes its way ;
> The four first acts already passed,
> A fifth shall close the drama with the day ;
> Time's noblest offspring is his last.

Already the desire of independence might be discerned in New England and in other of her sister colonies. The desire increased with increasing strength and wealth. These grew with population and tranquillity. Peace was made with the Eastern Indians. Quiet prevailed and progress was quickened till the next war.*

KING GEORGE'S WAR.—1744-1748.

76. **The War of the Austrian Succession** produced violent hostilities between the English and French colonies, which faced each other in America. An English frontier gar-

* Great religious excitement prevailed in New England, between 1735 and 1742. It was designated "the great revival," and "the new light." The pious fervor was much increased by the eloquent preaching of George Whitefield, who visited that part of the country during the period.

rison was seized by the French, and imprisoned in the strong fortress of Louisburg. Colonel Pepperell besieged it with a large force, and captured it in forty-nine days. Peace in Europe did not terminate the colonial warfare. Nova Scotia was con-

1755. quered by an expedition from Boston. The Acadian peasants, whose conduct had been suspicious, were torn from their homes,* placed on shipboard, and dispersed among the English colonies from New Hampshire to Georgia. Many found a more welcome refuge in the French province of Louisiana.

At this time the New England colonies contained about 360,000 white inhabitants, and carried on an extensive and profitable trade with the West Indies and with Europe.

NEW YORK.

77. **The Governors of New York,** after its conquest from the Dutch, **were appointed by the Duke of York,** the new proprietor. Many were dissolute, greedy, and arbitrary. All met with bitter opposition, and with severe censure. The population was composed of various nationalities,† and the larger part consisted of the recently conquered Dutch settlers, who submitted reluctantly to a strange rule. A treaty was made by Governor Carteret with the Five Nations, at Fort Orange, or Albany. They were converted into faithful friends, and formed a strong defence against the French in Canada.

78. **Popular discontent prevented effectual resist-**

1673. **ance,** when a Dutch fleet entered the harbor, during the war between England and Holland. The city,

* Longfellow's graceful poem, "Evangeline," is founded upon the story of the Acadian exiles.

† The population was of origin so various that eighteen different languages were said to be in use. It was reported to be "the most polygenous of all the British provinces." There was constant dissension between the English and Dutch inhabitants.

the fort, and the province surrendered at once, but were restored to England on the reëstablishment of peace. A new charter, extending the territory, was granted to the Duke of York. His deputy, Sir Edmond Andros, embraced under his rule the country between the Hudson and the Delaware, but failed in his efforts to add to New York the tract along the west bank of the Connecticut River.

79. **The people continued to complain,** and had reason to complain. Under a new Governor they were allowed to elect a Legislative Assembly. This assembly enacted a "Charter of Liberties." It was set aside when the Duke of York became King James II. On his dethronement, Jacob Leisler, the commander of the militia, seized the fort at New York, and set up a government. A Governor, appointed by William III., arrived. Leisler and his son-in-law were tried, condemned, and executed.

1683.

80. **The people were restless** under good governors and under bad governors. Discords were frequent. Edward Hyde, Earl of Cornbury, the cousin of Queen Anne, made himself odious by persecuting dissenters, by extorting bribes, by embezzling public moneys, and by other tyrannical conduct. He was removed on the petition of the Assemblies of New York and New Jersey.

The commerce of New York was already of much value. It was annoyed by the depredations of pirates, of whom Capt. Kidd was the most notorious. Kidd was captured, and was hanged in London. He was supposed to have buried a large amount of gold somewhere on the shore of Long Island. This hidden treasure is still sometimes sought by persons more eager for fortune than steady work.

81. **The city of New York was plundered by slaves,** and a church and some houses were burnt. A conspiracy among the negroes was suspected, and severe punishment was inflicted. Thirteen were burnt, eighteen were hanged, and seventy-one were removed from the colony.

82. A Congress was held at Albany at the beginning of the French war in America. It was composed of delegates from the several colonies, and was gathered to strengthen the league with the Iroquis, or Six Nations, which had formerly been The Five Nations.* Benjamin Franklin presented a plan for a Colonial Union. It was rejected by Connecticut, but adopted by all the other Provincial Delegations. It was deemed hazardous by the British Government, and was dropped. It was an anticipation of the Union of twenty years later, by which American Independence was gained. Such a measure had been proposed long before by William Penn and several other persons of sagacity.

1754.

NEW JERSEY AND DELAWARE.

83. Charles II. had enlarged the grant of New York to his brother by adding to it the country on the shores of Delaware Bay and along the eastern bank of the Delaware River. The Duke of York conveyed New Jersey—the tract between the Hudson and the Delaware—to Lord Berkeley and Lord Carteret. Elizabethtown was settled by people from Long Island. Population was invited by liberal offers, by the promise of representative government, and by freedom from any taxation but such as might be imposed by the Colonial Assembly. Seventy-five acres of land were also promised for every "stout slave" brought in. The experiment did not succeed, for the private gain of the proprietors was its chief object. One governor was deposed, and the colony was recovered by the Dutch on the surrender of New York.

84. Lord Berkeley sold his share of the Province to a Quaker, who assigned it to William Penn and two other Quakers. The colony was divided into East and West Jersey, the latter became Penn's. The Quakers, suffering from harsh

* They became the Six Nations by the reception and incorporation of the Tuscaroras, on their expulsion from North Carolina in 1712.

treatment in England, hastened to form a settlement in America. An Assembly was held at Salem and adopted a body of laws, entitled "Fundamental Constitutions." East Jersey was purchased, and fresh cargoes of Quakers came to Quakerland. The Covenanters,* fleeing from cruel persecution in Scotland, also sought here toleration and quiet, and swelled the number of the inhabitants.

1681.

85. **A more hopeful enterprise** attracted the regards of the Quaker chiefs. The Jerseys were surrendered to the Crown, and were placed under the control of the Governor of New York. After forty years of union they were again separated from it, and formed into the Royal Province of New Jersey, which grew and throve in unbroken peace, for there were no Indian dangers to be encountered.

SETTLEMENT OF PENNSYLVANIA.—1682.

86. **Penn desired a wider range for his "holy experiment"** than the Jerseys afforded. George Fox, the founder of the sect, had visited America, which promised such a retreat for his followers as he was solicitous of obtaining. Penn, his disciple, sought to give full effect to this desire. He procured from Charles II. a grant of the country west of the Delaware. The grant was soon made to include "The Territories," now forming the State of Delaware. The new domain was called Sylvania (woodland), which the king changed to Pennsylvania (Penn's woodland).

87. **A large body of emigrants was sent out.** Settlement was invited by offering ten acres of land for a dollar. Penn visited the country himself, and instituted a government.

* The Covenanters were enthusiastic Scotch Presbyterians, who resisted the attempt of Charles II. to suppress their form of religion. They met for worship in the woods and fields and in remote places. They were hunted by Highlanders and dragoons, and were mercilessly cut down. Their cruel treatment and stubborn resistance furnish the subject of one of Sir Walter Scott's best novels.

He was welcomed by the Swedes on Delaware Bay, by the dwellers in the Jerseys, and by the settlers on his recent grant. He made a treaty of friendship with the Indians under an elm tree, which was venerated till it was blown down at the beginning of the present century.* He did not seize lands, but paid for them, though the payment was trifling. The savages assured the "Quaker King" that they would "live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and sun should shine." The promise was, in the main, kept with entire fidelity. On this visit Penn laid out the city of Philadelphia (Brotherly Love), between the Schuylkill and the Delaware rivers. He remained two years in America, and left a population of 7,000 people in the new domain when he returned to England.

88. **"The Territories," or "Three Lower Counties," were lost to Pennsylvania.** They were claimed by both Penn and Lord Baltimore. The English Committee of Trade and Plantations declared that they were not included in the grant of Maryland. A separate government was conferred upon them. A dispute arose also in regard to the southern boundary of Pennsylvania. It was settled long afterwards

WILLIAM PENN.

* The Wampum Belt which was delivered by the Lenni-Lenape to Penn, as the title-deed for the lands granted at "The Great Treaty" of Shackamaxon, is in the possession of the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, to which it was presented, in 1857, by Mr. Granville Jones Penn, a descendant of the original proprietor.

by two surveyors, Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon. The boundary determined by them is familiarly known as Mason and Dixon's Line, and has been of grave political importance.*

89. **Penn returned to America after an absence of fifteen years.** He allowed Delaware (the Lower Counties) to have an Assembly of its own. He was recalled to England by a design entertained for the abolition of all proprietary governments. He died in the Fleet prison, overwhelmed with debt incurred on account of his colony.† An attack of paralysis had prevented his selling it to the Crown. It thus descended to his heirs. Their ownership lasted till the Revolution.‡

NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.—1629–1763.

90. **The desire of the English for American possessions was inflamed** by the successful establishment of the colonies of Virginia and New Plymouth. A vast territory on the southern border of Virginia was granted to Sir Robert Heath, but the civil war occurred in England before any settlement was made. At the Restoration, Charles II. regranted the country to Lord Chancellor Hyde (Earl of Clarendon), Sir William Berkeley, Governor of Virginia, and other favorites. Two years afterwards the limits of the grant were extended on the west to the Pacific.

1663.

* Mason and Dixon were English surveyors, and performed the work in 1763. They ran the line from the north-east corner of Maryland 244 miles to the west. They were then interrupted by Indians. The 34 miles remaining were completed in 1782 by Colonel Alexander McLean, of Pennsylvania, and Joseph Neville, of Virginia.

† William Penn (1644–1718) was the son of Sir William Penn, an admiral under the Commonwealth and under Charles II. He attached himself to the Quakers while a student at Oxford, and was expelled for non-conformity when only sixteen years of age. He entered on the study of law, but was driven from London by the plague. He was for some time an itinerant preacher. On the death of his father he inherited a large estate. The rest of his life and his entire fortune were devoted to colonization in America.

‡ The State of Pennsylvania voted Penn's heirs a compensation of $650,000, and the British Government gave them a pension of $20,000 a year.

91. The new colony was called Carolina, after Charles, the king. Its northern frontier was within the boundaries assigned to Virginia. It had been explored at an early date under the authority of the Government at Jamestown. Some settlements were made in what was designated Southern Virginia: by Virginians on Albemarle Sound, and by Puritans from New England on the Cape Fear River. Under the new charter, William Drummond, a Scotchman, soon after prominent in Bacon's rebellion, was appointed by Sir William Berkeley Governor of the Albemarle settlements. He gave them a simple constitution, and called an assembly at Edentown. The New England colony on the Cape Fear was soon abandoned by most of its members. Other immigrants came from New England and the Bermudas, and settled in the Albemarle neighborhood. Eight hundred from Barbadoes found abodes on the Cape Fear.

92. Lord Clarendon and his partners were statesmen as well as courtiers. They hoped to avoid the losses and failures which had attended previous colonial adventures. They set the keen and scheming Earl of Shaftesbury to the task of preparing a plan of government. He employed in the work his friend and guest, the celebrated philosopher, John Locke.

1670. A "Grand Model" was produced, which was altogether unsuited for the woods and swamps, and for a scant, poor, and scattered people. There were to be three ranks of nobles: landgraves with 48,000 acres of land; caciques (*ka-seeks'*) with 24,000, and barons with 12,000. All power was placed in their hands, subject to the control of the eight proprietors. The Church of England was declared to be the State religion, contrary to the advice of Locke. The cumbrous plan was never put into full operation. It was renounced after twenty-two years of failure.*

93. William Sayle appeared in Ashley River **as Gov-**

* A small volume of 75 leaves, bound in vellum, contains this "first set," and is in the handwriting of Locke, and full of corrections and notes by him.—*Report on the Shaftsbury Papers, by the Keeper of the Records.*

ernor under "The Grand Model," and brought with him three ships. Provisional governments were allowed to the Albemarle and Clarendon settlements, on Albemarle Sound and Cape Fear. Their remoteness precluded any close connection with the more southern plantation. Thus the two States of North and South Carolina came to be formed ultimately out of the Clarendon grant.

94. **Disputes, disturbances, and insurrections harassed the northern colony** for many years. The southern or Carteret colony was soon in a flourishing condition. Violent divisions occurred there on the meeting of the first Legislature. People of diverse race and creed, and habits and fortune, could not dwell in harmony under the restraints of the proprietary rule. Dutch from the Low Countries and from New York, and Huguenots expelled from France settled on the Ashley, the Santee, and the Edisto. Scotch came to Port Royal Island, and dissenters from Somersetshire were established in their neighborhood by Humphrey Blake, the brother and heir of the great admiral of the Commonwealth. In subsequent years came Moravians, and Swiss, and Irish, and Germans from the Rhine. The swamps along the Ashley were turned to good account in the raising of cattle. On the point of land between this river and the Cooper was founded the city of Charleston, so named after Charles II. of England.

1680.

95. **The Carolinas prospered** in spite of constant discords. They were harassed by Indian and Spanish assaults, for Spain claimed the southern districts as part of Florida. Smugglers and pirates were harbored at Charleston, which grew rich by the illicit trade with them. In the beginning of the eighteenth century, twelve hundred men, partly Indians, marched against St. Augustine, and took it from the Spaniards. In return, Charleston was threatened by a fleet of French and Spanish vessels. They were driven off.

96. **Greater dangers were experienced from the In-**

dians. The Tuscaroras and Corees attacked the Albemarle colony, and massacred one hundred and thirty Germans in a single night. The Tuscaroras were crushed the following year by a force from the South. A remnant of them found refuge in the North with the Five Nations, by whom they were adopted as a sixth member of their confederation. Other Indians took up the hatchet. The southern frontier was ravaged by a sudden inroad of Yemassees on the Savannah. They were joined by the Catawbas, Cherokees, and Creeks. Governor Craven pursued them through the dreary cypress swamps, routed them at Salkehatchie (*sol-ketch'e*), and drove them to Florida.

1711.

97. Church controversies were added to other troubles, and to the distress caused by the expense of the Indian wars. An effort to enforce the Anglican system* only occasioned discontent and wrangling. The people were estranged from the proprietors. Their government was rejected. After ten years of angry strife, the rights of all but one were sold to the king. The Carolinas, divided into north and south, became royal provinces.

1729.

They now made more rapid advances than they had ever made before. Rice was introduced from Madagascar before the end of the seventeenth century. Cotton was cultivated in the first year of the eighteenth. Indigo proved a lucrative crop. Four hundred thousand pounds of the dye-stuff were exported before the close of the French and Indian war, of which an account will shortly be given.†

GEORGIA.—1732–1756.

98. Carolina was exposed to attack on the west, along the whole course of the Savannah River. Spain looked

* The Anglican system is the ecclesiastical establishment of the Episcopal Church as it exists in England—as a State Church.

† Three thousand and twenty-five hogsheads of rice were imported into London

upon the country as hers, and upon the English as intruders. When the Carolinas were transferred to the British Crown, this disputed territory was granted to General Oglethorpe and other trustees, for a term of twenty-one years. It was to be held in trust for the poor, and was designed as an asylum for the destitute and miserable. The reigning king in England was George II., and the province was in consequence called Georgia.

1732.

99. Oglethorpe* was a soldier, who had fought with distinction, and had served under Prince Eugene at the siege of Belgrade. He was moved by the sorrows and the sufferings of the British poor, and sought, by the same measure, to relieve them of their misery, the country of their support, and to enlarge and strengthen the English colonies in America. He conducted the emigrants himself. The first settlement was made on the Savannah River, where the city of Savannah now stands.† Each male settler received twenty-five acres of land on condition of military service. This land he could not sell. It descended to his heirs with the same obligation. Negro slavery and the use of rum were prohibited. These regulations, however, could not be maintained.

GENERAL OGLETHORPE.

1733.

100. Oglethorpe went back to England on behalf of

from Carolina in May, 1730; and in 1733 so much was shipped to Spain and Portugal as nearly to stop the trade in that article with Venice.

The cotton exported about that time was almost sufficient to satisfy the requirements of the English manufacture.

* James Edward Oglethorpe (1698–1785) was from the south of England. He served as aide-de-camp on the staff of Prince Eugene. He was under the Duke of Cumberland in the second Jacobite Rebellion. He was offered the chief command in America, in 1775.

† At the Indian village of Yamacraw, where John Musgrove, a Carolina trader, married to the Muscogee Princess Mary, had been established for seven years.

his colony. On his return, he brought back three hundred additional settlers, more than half of them German Protestants. The Wesleys,* who afterwards founded the Methodist denomination, accompanied him. Whitefield † twice visited the colony. Oglethorpe went a second time to England, and returned with a regiment of six hundred soldiers, to be employed against the Spaniards. He began the war by an attack on St. Augustine. The Spaniards, in retaliation, invaded Georgia, captured a fort on the Altamaha (*ol-ta-ma-haw'*), and spread dismay around. They were completely outgeneralled by Oglethorpe, and withdrew in haste. So many complaints were made against his rule, that he was summoned home, to be tried by a court-martial. He was acquitted with honor, but never revisited America. He lived two years beyond the close of the American Revolution.

101. **Civil government was instituted** on the departure of Oglethorpe. Discords continued to prevail till the colony was taken into the hands of the king. Prosperity had been prevented by unwise restraints. The exclusion of negro slavery was chiefly complained of. A constitution like that of Carolina was accorded to the province; and Georgia advanced more rapidly than even her thriving neighbor.

102. **By the middle of the eighteenth century** the strip of country from the Penobscot to the Altamaha, and between the mountains and the Atlantic coast, was occupied by active, industrious, daring communities under English rule. These were growing daily in all the elements of wealth. The total population was about a million, and the value of the exports reached five millions of dollars.‡

---

* The Wesleys were John (1703-1791) and Charles (1707-1788). John Wesley came as a missionary to the Indians; Charles as Oglethorpe's secretary.

† George Whitefield (1714-1770) came to Savannah in 1737, and a second time in 1739. He founded an orphan house there in 1740. He made seven voyages to America, and excited much enthusiasm by his preaching. He died at Newburyport, Mass.

‡ This is a very rough and uncertain estimate. The population was supposed to be 914,000 in 1751, and 1,165,000, besides 200,000 negroes, in 1754.

THE GREAT FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR. —1754–1763.

103. The English in North America were not yet secure. They had struggled through many difficulties and dangers. They were now threatened with a more serious danger than any that they had overcome. The Indians had been urged and aided by the French in their ravages along the northern front. The northern colonies had retaliated by the conquest of Acadia, and by assaults on other settlements. The French losses in the East were amply made up by their acquisitions in the West. They had won the vast valleys of the St. Lawrence, the Mississippi, and the Great Lakes. They hemmed the English within the long, narrow tract between the Alleghanies and the Atlantic seaboard.* The English felt the need and nursed the desire of broader possessions. A conflict for supremacy, which was a strife for existence, was unavoidable.

NEW FRANCE.

104. France had gained her extensive American empire mainly by the zeal, the enterprise, and the pious energy of Jesuit missionaries. These earnest fathers had explored the upper course of the St. Lawrence, discovered the great inland seas, and navigated the Mississippi. Marquette (*mar-ket'*) and Joliet (*zhol'e-ā*) descended the Wisconsin to its junction with the Father of Waters, and followed the mighty river to the mouth of the Arkansas. La Salle passed down the Great River to its entrance into the gulf, claimed the unknown valley for France, and named it Louisiana, after the "Great Monarch," Louis XIV.

1673.

105. La Salle was commissioned to occupy and govern the newly discovered region. Spain had an earlier title to

* In Colbert's constitution of the French West India Company, in 1664, the grant had been "of all Canada down to and behind Virginia and Florida."

it, on account of the wanderings of De Soto and Coronado. La Salle was murdered by his own men in Texas, while endeavoring to return to it. He had missed the obscure mouths of the Mississippi, and was roaming about in the wide prairies, vainly seeking to reach the shores of that river. Other attempts at French settlement were made. Little success, or promise of success, attended them for many years. New Orleans was founded by the Mississippi Company, under the direction of John Law.* Hostilities broke out with the Natchez and the Chickasaws; but no serious opposition was encountered by the French in their occupation of Louisiana. Three millions of dollars were expended in the adventure before a firm foothold was secured.

1719.

HOSTILITIES BETWEEN THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

106. **Europe obtained peace, but not America,** by the close of King George's War, or the War of the Austrian Succession. The French and English were too violently opposed to each other on the Western Continent to permit quiet to be restored there. The war continued to be waged between their American colonies.

107. **French forts were established on the Upper Ohio** to prevent the English from spreading westwards. The Governor of Virginia sent George Washington, a young man not yet twenty-two years of age, to demand the withdrawal of the French. In two months of winter, he performed the difficult journey through the wilderness, and brought back a polite refusal from the French commander.

1753.

The Ohio Company, a Virginia land association, built a fort where the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers unite, and form the Ohio. It was captured by the French, and received the

* John Law (1681–1729) was a Scotchman. He established a Land Bank in Scotland. It failed. Being outlawed, he gained the favor of Louis XIV., and set up a bank at Paris. This bank received the grant of Louisiana. It was made the Royal Bank of France in 1718. In 1720 Law was appointed Controller-general of Finances. The "Mississippi bubble" burst. He fled from the furious mob, and died in poverty at Venice.

name of Fort Du Quesne (*du-kane'*). Washington returned too late to save it, but surprised the French at the Great Meadows.* Their commanding officer was slain. Washington and his small force were soon besieged in Fort Necessity—a hasty intrenchment. They were forced to surrender. The English seemed likely to be kept back behind the range of the Alleghanies, though claiming the country to the Pacific. The English Government sent out General Braddock,† with two regiments which had run away at the battle of Prestonpans.

BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.—1755.

108. Braddock started from Alexandria, having added the provincial militia to his force. Washington served on his staff. The troops advanced carelessly through the unbroken forest. They were entrapped in an ambuscade by the French and Indians, when only a few miles' distant from Fort Du Quesne.‡ A scanty remnant of the army was saved by the cool courage and skill of Washington, and by the steadiness of the Virginians. Braddock was mortally wounded, and most of his officers were disabled or slain.§

109. Two other expeditions formed parts of the year's campaign; one against Fort Frontenac and Fort Niagara; the other against Crown Point, on Lake Champlain.‖ The

* The Great Meadows, where was the site of Fort Necessity, lie at the eastern foot of Chestnut Ridge, in Fayette County, Pennsylvania, near the National Road. They are about fifty miles north-west of Cumberland, in Maryland.

† General Edward Braddock (1715–1755) had served with distinction in Spain, Portugal, and Germany. He was selected by the Duke of Cumberland for the command in America.

‡ The scene of Braddock's defeat (9th July, 1755) was on the right bank of the Monongahela, only seven or eight miles eastwards from Pittsburg.

§ Washington's escape was remarkable. He exposed himself with the greatest intrepidity throughout the battle. Two horses were shot under him. Four balls pierced his coat; but he was not wounded. An Indian chief aimed twice at him; then directed his followers to fire at him. He remained untouched. They then desisted from the attempt to shoot him, deeming him to have a charmed life.

‖ The names of these forts frequently recur in American warfare. Fort Frontenac was near Kingston, in Canada, not far from the outlet of Lake Ontario. Fort Niagara was at the mouth of the Niagara River. Crown Point was on the left bank of Lake Champlain, north of Ticonderoga, which stood at the junction of Lake George

former was abandoned on Braddock's defeat; the latter produced no satisfactory result. The French commander, Dieskau (*dee-es'ko*), was severely and incurably wounded and was taken prisoner.

DECLARATION OF WAR.—1756.

110. **War was at length formally declared** between France and England. Oswego was taken by Montcalm, the new Governor of Canada. Nothing was accomplished by the English during the year. The next summer Fort William Henry was attacked by the French, supported by seventeen hundred Indians. The garrison surrendered. Many of them were massacred by the savages, in violation of the terms of the surrender. Lord Loudoun (*lou'dun*), the Governor-General of the English colonies, collected ten thousand men for the conquest of Louisburg. The season was already too far advanced for anything to be achieved.

CAMPAIGN OF 1758.

111. William Pitt,* afterwards Earl of Chatham, became Prime Minister of England in this season of gloom. The American provinces made zealous efforts in their own defence, having been promised by him the repayment of such expenditures as they might make on account of the war. Twenty thousand soldiers were required from them. Abercrombie, the new general, found fifty thousand under his command.

112. **Three enterprises were contemplated** in this campaign. Louisburg was taken by General Amherst and General Wolfe, aided by a fleet under Admiral Boscawen (*bos-kaw'en*). Ticonderoga and Crown Point were to be assailed by Abercrombie and Lord Howe. They had fifteen

---

with Lake Champlain. Fort Oswego was on the site of the present Oswego, in New York. Fort William Henry was at the head of Lake George, and Fort Edward was about half-way on the road between the two lakes.

* William Pitt (1708–1778), first Earl of Chatham, the great and eloquent Prime Minister of Britain during the Seven Years' War, became an Earl in 1766.

thousand men, the largest army yet assembled in America. They were repulsed by Montcalm, and the young Lord Howe was slain. Abercrombie fell back to Albany. Du Quesne was abandoned and burnt when Washington and his Virginians appeared before it. Washington received the thanks of the Virginia Legislature for this success. He was unable to respond to the complimentary address. "Sit down," said the Speaker, "your modesty is equal to your valour, and that surpasses the power of any language I possess."

CAMPAIGN OF 1759.

113. These successes induced Pitt to undertake the conquest of Canada in the next campaign. Three movements were again proposed, and were intended to unite before Quebec. Amherst was to drive the French out of New York, and to take Ticonderoga. General Prideaux (*prid'o*) was to capture Fort Niagara, and to join Amherst in Canada. General Wolfe was to sail up the St. Lawrence and besiege Quebec.

114. The siege of Fort Niagara lasted three weeks. It surrendered to Sir William Johnson, after Prideaux had been killed. Ticonderoga and Crown Point were abandoned on Amherst's approach. He did not advance further, but wintered at Crown Point. The attack on Quebec was thus left to Wolfe alone.*

115. Quebec is strongly situated, and was strongly fortified. Its works were too extensive for the number of the garrison. It stands on a lofty height, and is unassailable on three sides, which are defended by the broad rivers St. Charles and St. Lawrence. These unite below the Grand Battery, and form the splendid harbor, which is screened by the Island of Orleans. Behind the city are the Plains of

* General James Wolfe (1727–1759), when appointed by George II. to command this expedition, was represented to be a madman. The king replied that he wished his other generals had the same sort of madness.

Abraham, a broad plateau between the two rivers and high above their level.*

116. Wolfe arrived before Quebec about midsummer. He had twenty-two ships and eight thousand men. He landed on the Isle of Orleans in front of the city. From Point Levis (*lee'vi*), a mile below Quebec, he threw hot shot across the bay and destroyed the lower town. He was severely repulsed in the endeavor to drive the French from their position on the left bank of the river, near the Falls of the Montmorenci. Wolfe was sick and out of heart at the prospect of the difficulties before him.

GENERAL WOLFE.

He heard nothing of Amherst. He was ready to despair. As a last chance, he welcomed the thought of proceeding against the town from behind. Moving silently up the stream,† he landed in the night at a sheltered spot, since noted as Wolfe's Cove, and clambered up the steep above, dragging his single gun up by the labors of his men.

THE CAPTURE OF QUEBEC.

117. The Battle of the Heights of Abraham began two hours before noon, and lasted only twenty-four minutes. Montcalm endeavored to turn the flank of his assailants, and to press them over the steep. His troops were broken, and Wolfe charged their shattered lines. In this onset he was

* Cape Diamond, on which the citadel of Quebec is built, is 333 feet above the level of the St. Lawrence.

† As Wolfe was stealing up the St. Lawrence on this memorable night, he quoted a verse from Gray's Elegy, then a recent poem, and remarked that he would rather have been the author of those stanzas than win the victory on the morrow.

wounded in the wrist. He still pushed forward, and was wounded again. A third wound was mortal. "They run! they run!" reported an officer to the expiring general. "Who run?" asked Wolfe. "The French; they give way everywhere," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die happy." Montcalm, too, was wounded; the second time fatally. When informed that he must die, he answered, "I am glad of it; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." The city surrendered four days later. A monument to the joint memory of both the fallen commanders was erected in the square before the Castle of St. Louis, which was the Government House.

THE CONQUEST OF CANADA.—1760.

118. An attempt by the French to recapture Quebec in the spring was frustrated by the arrival of the British fleet. Montreal was surrendered in the autumn, when Amherst at length reached it. With that town were surrendered the whole of Canada, and all the French possessions in North America, east of the Mississippi.

119. The Southern colonies were harassed by the Indians during the desperate struggle in the North. The Cherokees, long faithful to the English, had been rendered hostile by harsh treatment. Outrages were committed on both sides. The Indian hostages were murdered. The Cherokees took Fort Loudoun, on the Tennessee River, and slaughtered twenty-seven of the garrison. After three campaigns, they sued for peace, and the Valley of the Tennessee was open to English settlement.

120. The Seven Years' War* was closed by the Treaty of Paris. France gave up to England what the latter had conquered, with all the dependent territory, and to Spain all of Louisiana west of the Mississippi. Spain ceded the Floridas to Great Britain. The English thus acquired all that lay between the Great River and the Atlantic; Spain all

* The Seven Years' War between Frederick II. of Prussia, and the Empress Maria Theresa, involved England, France, Russia, and Poland, as allies of the combatants.

beyond to the Pacific. France did not retain a foot of land on the Northern Continent.

PONTIAC'S WAR.—1763.

121. **A desperate Indian warfare arose out of the removal of the French,** who were suspected of instigating and encouraging it. The Indians were filled with apprehension and rage by the belief that they were to be stripped of their lands and to be destroyed. Pontiac, the chief of the Ottowas, formed a confederation among the tribes occupying the country between the Ohio and the Lakes. He hoped to expel the English intruders from the hunting grounds of the red men. He spread havoc, dismay, and death along the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania, and took all but three of the forts between Fort Pitt (Pittsburg) and Fort Niagara. He besieged Detroit, after failing to capture it by treachery. The bold energy of General Bouquet rescued Fort Pitt and retrieved disaster in Western Pennsylvania. Pontiac was foiled at Detroit. His allies deserted him. All the tribes but the Delawares and the Shawanees made peace. Pontiac withdrew to Illinois. He was assassinated by a Kaskaskia Indian, on the banks of the Mississippi, opposite to St. Louis.* His death relieved the English of all serious danger from the Indians, and threw open the West for settlement.

CONDITION OF THE ENGLISH COLONIES BEFORE THE REVOLUTION.

122. **The marvellous prosperity and the bright prospects of the English colonies** in North America were described in the British Parliament by Edmund Burke, just one month before the actual outbreak of the Revolution. At this point a survey of the state of the colonies under English rule may be appropriately introduced.

123. **The progress of the English settlements** had

*The Indian was induced to commit the murder by the bribe of a barrel of whiskey.

brought them nearer to each other. The contact was not close, but it was becoming closer every day. There were jealousies and antagonisms between the Northern and Southern provinces. Trade and other interests and communications linked them together more and more. Wide tracts of primeval forest still separated towns and villages and colonies ; yet companies from dissevered regions had withstood the brunt of war, shoulder to shoulder. Clearings remained far apart in the remote districts. Inward growth brought the scattered members near enough to breed the sense of community.* Daring pioneers had already fixed their homes beyond the Blue Ridge and the Alleghany Mountains, and had pierced the wilderness to the Tennessee, the Kentucky, and the Ohio.

124. The inhabitants of the colonies were supposed to number three millions at the outbreak of the Revolutionary War.† Twelve years earlier it was deemed a sanguine fancy to represent the white population as exceeding eleven hundred thousand. The population was fairly divided between the Northern and Southern provinces. Nearly a fourth of the number was found within the limits of Virginia ; less than a seventh was in Massachusetts, which was second in rank.

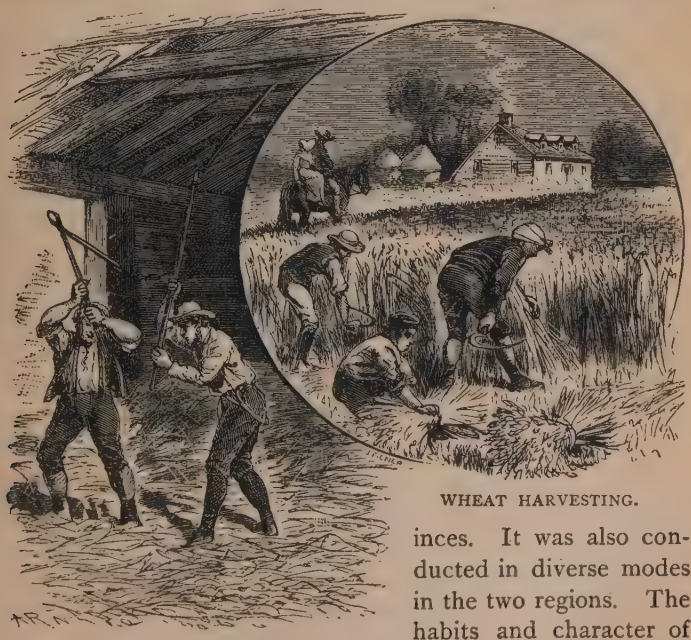
125. The occupations of the people were diversified. Most of them were engaged in the cultivation of the soil for subsistence. They were homely, frugal, earnest, with a keen sense of the useful. In the States north of Virginia and Maryland, large numbers were employed in the whale and other fisheries, and in various sea service. Merchants were numerous and enterprising. They derived large profits from

* Facilities for travelling, even between the largest cities and towns, were very limited. From New York to Philadelphia, one could traverse by stage coach in two days a distance over which the traveller can now be carried by rail in two hours. From New York to Boston was a week's journey, and from Charleston to Philadelphia a journey of two or three weeks. With the great mass of the people carriages were not used. They rode on horseback, the wife not unfrequently seated on a pillion behind her husband.

† The calculation was loose and unworthy of confidence. Bancroft concludes "that the whole number of white inhabitants in all the thirteen colonies was, in 1774, about 2,100,000; of blacks, about 500,000; the total population very nearly 2,600,000."

their commerce. In many northern harbors, shipbuilding was energetically prosecuted. Artisans of all kinds were in demand, and were amply remunerated. The restless and roving became hunters and trappers, and pursued their game far in front of the settlements. The lumber business furnished occupation to multitudes of wood-cutters. Some small manufactures had been begun. Iron furnaces had been erected in Virginia and elsewhere. Manufacturers were grievously discouraged by the English "Navigation Laws," and by other measures of repression.

126. Agriculture was directed to the production of dissimilar crops in the Northern and in the Southern prov-



WHEAT HARVESTING.

inces. It was also conducted in diverse modes in the two regions. The habits and character of the people were affected by this diversity.

In the North were small farms and small farmers. The ground was cleared and tilled, the crops harvested, and all

the operations of the field and of rustic industry were performed by the owners, their families, and their hired laborers.

In the South were large plantations cultivated by slaves, whose rich owners lived in ease and luxurious indulgence. The planters were easily tempted into extravagance and dissipation. They were generous, but reckless; hospitable, and inclined to out-door sports. The culture of the soil was slovenly. Old fields were thrown out of use and left waste. New lands were inclosed, for land was abundant, fertile, and cheap.

In the North were raised the various crops of a cool and temperate climate; principally for home or neighborhood consumption. In the South, the staple productions—rice, indigo, cotton, tobacco, Indian corn, and wheat—were cultivated on a large scale, for the purpose of exportation.*

127. Productions were abundant in both the North and the South, and in excess of the home demand. Everywhere were ease and plenty; out of the cities destitution was scarcely known. Wealth was rapidly accumulated. Rich men were numerous, but neither so many nor so rich as to be oppressive to the laboring class. Expensive dresses, and the other forms of elegant display, were frequent. The large mass of the people were clothed in comfortable homespun.† The lavish Virginia planter played on the English comic stage the part subsequently filled by the East India nabob.

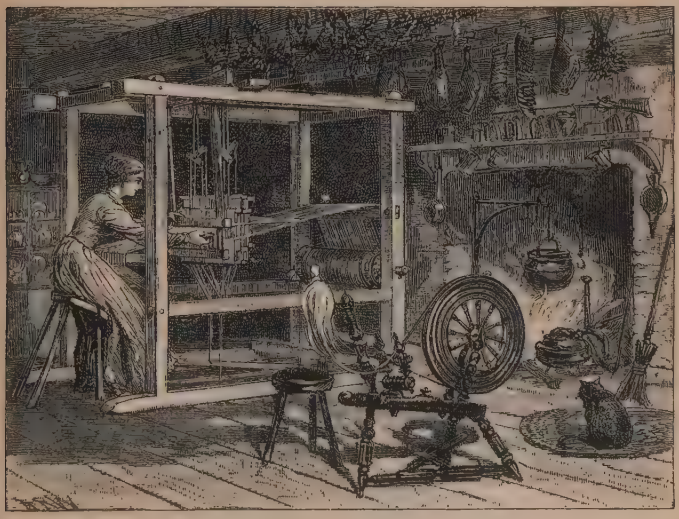
128. The abundance of valuable products which provoked luxurious indulgences **nourished a still more abundant commerce.** The harbors of New England, New York, Philadelphia, Norfolk, and Charleston were busy with arriving and departing vessels. An active trade was kept up between Boston and other neighboring ports, and the West Indies; with the Catholic countries of Europe, which they supplied with their Lenten diet of salt fish; and direct with England.

* Farming implements were few and simple: the wooden plough, iron-pointed; a cumbrous hoe; the sickle; the flail, etc.

† The spinning-wheel and loom almost always constituted a part of the furnishing of country houses. Mrs. Washington is said to have had sixteen spinning-wheels.

To the West India Islands were sent lumber, fish, and flour, to be exchanged for molasses, which was converted into New England rum. The cargoes from the Southern colonies were rice, tobacco, indigo, cotton, hemp, grain, and lumber.

129. **The exports and imports of the country** had increased surprisingly.* The "Navigation Laws" confined the trade to the mother country and its colonies. These restrictions were, however, evaded, and smuggling was often a source of wealth. Moreover, ships built in Northern shipyards, having disposed of their cargoes in the Mediterranean



OLD TIMES—SPINNING-WHEEL AND LOOM.

and elsewhere, were habitually sold in foreign harbors. They thus became articles of both manufacture and trade.

130. **The sparseness of the population**, in comparison with the vast extent of the country, stimulated ingenuity, and

* The exports in 1763 amounted to about five millions and a half of dollars; and the imports to more than eight millions. In 1773, notwithstanding the Non-Importation Agreements, the exports reached nearly seven, and the imports exceeded ten millions.

fostered that spirit of invention which has continued to be a marked American characteristic. A rude and inefficient cotton-gin was in use on some Southern plantations. Most of the implements in daily service had been simplified or improved. Franklin's experiments in electricity had resulted in the device of the lightning-rod.*

131. **No civilized people can long remain** without intellectual pursuits, after the urgent needs of subsistence are satisfied and the accumulation of wealth begun. General education was diligently cherished in New England, and the foundations of the present diffused intelligence were laid. There were colleges in Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and Virginia.†

Letters, philosophy, and science found a few eager devotees. In the early years of the Virginia colony, Sandys's Translation of Ovid's Metamorphoses, a work notable in its day, had been completed on the banks of the James River.‡ No other work of like literary reputation had been produced; but the writings of Franklin were admirable in the plain directness of their style, and in the practical sagacity which they displayed. Many instructive volumes issued from the press. Newspapers were established,§ and were read with avidity. Controversial tracts abounded. Theology and metaphysics were enriched by the acute speculations of Jonathan Edwards.

132. **Science has attracted public attention** only in

---

* The invention of the lightning-rod was announced in "Poor Richard's Almanac" for 1753.

† Harvard was founded in 1636; William and Mary, in 1693; Yale, in 1700; Columbia, in 1754; Princeton, in 1746; Pennsylvania University, in 1749. [Brown University, Rhode Island, 1764.]

‡ The last ten books of Sandys's Ovid were written about the time of "the Great Massacre" of 1622. Byrd's account of the running of the line between Virginia and North Carolina has great literary merit.

§ The first permanent newspaper in the United States was the *Boston News-Letter*, established in April, 1704. It was a foolscap half sheet, issued weekly, and was large enough to contain all the news. At the beginning of the Revolution, there were only thirty-seven newspapers, with an aggregate circulation of not over 4,000.

In 1775 the whole number of printing-houses in the British colonies was fifty

recent years ; but the American Philosophical Society was instituted in Philadelphia as early as 1744, by the zeal of Dr. Franklin and his friends. The researches of Franklin into the nature of electricity, and his drawing lightning from the clouds, along the string of a kite, were almost the creation of a new science. David Rittenhouse constructed a rude observatory for himself, and gained distinction by his astronomical pursuits.

133. **The state of religion** among the people differed greatly in the different provinces. The Church of England was the established church in New York, Virginia, and the Carolinas. In Maryland, the population remained largely Roman Catholic. In New England the original Puritanism was dominant, but its rigor had become much softened. A solemn and somewhat gloomy piety, however, still prevailed. The Presbyterians were numerous, influential, and earnest in New Jersey. There, but especially in Pennsylvania, were the quiet and gentle Quakers. In Carolina and Georgia Moravians and other German Protestants were settled, and Huguenot families were frequent in Virginia and South Carolina.

Everywhere, however, was found an intermixture of creeds, and consequently the need of toleration had been experienced. Laxity of morals and of conduct was alleged against the communities of the Anglican Church. In the middle of the eighteenth century a low tone of religious sentiment was general. The revival of fervor, which was excited then by the Wesleys, was widely spread by Whitefield in America, and Methodism was making itself felt throughout the country. The Baptists were spreading in different colonies, and were acquiring influence by their earnest simplicity. They favored liberty in all forms, and became warm partisans of the revolutionary movement.

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART II.

THE ENGLISH COLONIES.

First English Attempts. 1. Delay in profiting by the discovery of the Cabots; Henry VIII.; renewed attention to North America; Northwest passage; expectation of gold mines. 2. Sir Humphrey Gilbert's two expeditions; his fate. 3. Sir Walter Raleigh—exploring expedition; the name of Virginia. 4. The first colony. 5. Its history. 6. The White Colony; its fate. 7. Why not relieved; a new company.

The Virginia Colony. 8. Raleigh's patent forfeited; the new charter; the two companies; the Virginia Council; tenure of lands and labor. 9. The expedition to Virginia; the councillors; the settlement. 10. Quarrels. 11. Capt. John Smith. 12. Difficulties at Jamestown; Smith's adventures. 13. Fresh emigrants; exploration of the Chesapeake; Smith president. 14. Disappointment; new charter. 15. The Governor-General; misfortunes of the new expedition. 16. Condition of the colonists; Smith's return to England; "The Starving Time." 17. Arrival of the shipwrecked party; abandonment of Jamestown; return of the fugitives.

First Permanent English Colony. 18. Renewal of the colony. 19. Lord Delaware. 20. Government left behind by him; private ownership of land; tobacco. 21. Change in the direction; first Legislature; progress; expenses. 22. Sale of wives—their price. 23. The marriage of Pocahontas; her story. 24. Introduction of negro slaves; conversion of the Indians; a college.

The Great Massacre. 25. Slaughter of colonists by the Indians. 26. Alleged cause of the massacre; Virginia a colony of the Crown. 27. Lord Baltimore's search for a settlement; dissensions resulting; a hog-stealing Governor. 28. Sir William Berkeley Governor. 29. Second Indian massacre; death of Opechancanough.

Virginia under the Commonwealth. 30. Effect of the Civil War on Virginia; the Commissioners of the Commonwealth; the new Government; the restoration of Berkeley; the Old Dominion.

The New England Colonies. 31. Early colonial enterprises; Capt. John Smith's survey; naming the country. 32. Puritans in Holland; their application for settlement; their reception. 33. The Pilgrim Fathers; their voyage; their arrival. 34. Agreement for government; settlement begun; the winter. 35. The lone Indian; Massasoit; Canonicus; Indian dangers; Capt. Standish. 36. Mariana; Laconia; Nova Scotia. 37. The strictly Puritan colony; Winthrop; Charlestown. 38.

Intolerance; dissension; Winthrop and Vane; Roger Williams; Anne Hutchinson. 39. Prosperity of Massachusetts; Harvard College. 40. Apprehensions of the English Government; Archbishop Laud; restraint of emigration; New England during the Civil War; "The Body of Liberties."

Colonial Confederation. 41. The New England Union; exclusion of Rhode Island. 42. Religious dissent; Anabaptists, Quakers; conversion of Indians; translation of the Bible.

Settlement of Rhode Island. 43. Wanderings of Roger Williams; Providence; treatment by Indian chiefs; Aquiday; Rhode Island. 44. Constitution of Rhode Island; second charter; position of Williams in regard to religious freedom.

Settlement of Connecticut. 45. First grant in Connecticut; Saybrook; Hartford; New Haven. 46. The Indians and the settlers.

Indian Wars. 47. The Pequods; Mason's army. 48. Mason's campaign. 49. The Narragansetts and the Mohicans; fate of Miantonomoh; war with the Dutch prevented. 50. Royal charter for Connecticut; the Governor; the surrender of the charter; the charter hidden.

The Maryland Colony. 51. Grant to Lord Baltimore; discord. 52. Design of the new colony; its name; concessions to the settlers; the first colonists; the place of settlement; the first year. 53. The war with Clayborne. 54. The "Toleration Act;" the Government under the Commonwealth; the new Assembly; civil war; restoration of proprietary government. 55. Lord Baltimore's heirs; their rights confirmed, withdrawn, restored; last Lord Baltimore. 56. Progress of Maryland.

Virginia History Resumed. 57. Restoration of the royal authority; the "Navigation Act;" grant of "the Northern Neck;" the dominion of Virginia granted; condition of the Virginians. 58. The first Assembly after the Restoration; continuance of the Legislature. 59. Increased discontent; the Susquehannahs; John Washington and Berkeley; Indian ravages; their effect. 60. Nathaniel Bacon; his proceedings; the new Assembly and Bacon's action; Bacon and Berkeley. 61. Bacon, Berkeley, and the Indians; capture of Jamestown; the Pamunkeys; overthrow of the Indians; destruction of Jamestown. 62. Death of Bacon; severity to the rebels; recall of Berkeley; his long rule. 63. Penalty for rebellion; forces and resources of Virginia. 64. Consequences of Monmouth's Rebellion; the Huguenots. 65. William and Mary College; Williamsburg. 66. Governor Spotswood; passage of the Blue Ridge; "Knights of the Golden Horseshoe;" the first iron furnace; Blackbeard; death of Spotswood; Governor Gooch.

The New England Colonies after 1660. 67. Union and spirit of independence; the regicides; Goffe.

King Philip's War. 68. War with Wampanoags; course of the war; fate of Philip, his wife and son. 69. War with the Narragansetts; capture of their camp; fate of Canonchet; losses of the New Englanders. 70. Massachusetts and the English Crown; declaration of Charles II.; action of James II.; charter of William III.

King William's War. 71. How occasioned, and begun; Schenectady; assembly of delegates; proposed attack on Montreal; Port Royal; Quebec; bills of credit. 72. Sir William Phipps. 73. Salem witchcraft.

Queen Anne's War. 74. Ravages committed; Deerfield; attempt on Canada; Port Royal. 75. Effects of the war; Bishop Berkeley.

King George's War. 76. Louisburg; Nova Scotia; expulsion of Acadians; population of New England.

New York. 77. Governors of New York; how appointed; their characters and government; the people; Indian treaty. 78. Recapture of the city by the Dutch; recovery; the new charter; the new Deputy-Governor. 79. Legislation; commotion and usurpation. 80. Condition of the province; Earl of Cornbury; Capt. Kidd. 81. Negro conspiracy. 82. Congress at Albany.

New Jersey and Delaware. 83. Grant of New York enlarged; transfer of New Jersey; measures for settlement. 84. Sale by Lord Berkeley; the Quaker colony. 85. Penn's new enterprise.

Pennsylvania. 86. Penn's purpose; his grant. 87. Settlement; treaty with the Indians; Philadelphia. 88. "The Territories;" Mason and Dixon's line; 89. Penn's return to America; Delaware; Penn's last years and death.

North and South Carolina. 90. Heath's grant; grant to Clarendon, Berkeley, etc. 91. Name of the colony; settlements in it. 92. The plan of government; its author. 93 The Governor under "the Grand Model." 94. Condition of the Carolinas; the population; Charleston. 95. Prosperity; dangers. 96. The Tuscaroras; the Yemassees. 97. Religious discord; the Carolinas a royal colony; productions and exports.

Georgia. 98. Purpose of the grant; the name. 99. Oglethorpe; first settlement; provisions for settlers; prohibitions. 100. Companions of Oglethorpe on his return; war with Spaniards; Oglethorpe's recall; 101 Georgia after his departure. 102. Territory occupied by the English.

The French and Indian War. 103. Hazards of the English; French losses and acquisitions; struggle in prospect.

New France. 104. French explorations. 105. La Salle; Louisiana; the Mississippi Company.

Hostilities between France and England. 106. Continuance of war. 107. Washington's expedition; the Ohio Company; Fort Du Quesne; Washington taken prisoner.

Braddock's Defeat. 108. Braddock's march, surprise, and death. 109. Other movements.

Declaration of War. 110. French and English operations, 1756, 1757.

Campaign of 1758. 111. The new Prime Minister; the army. 112. Plan of the campaign; its fortunes; Fort Du Quesne and Washington.

Campaign of 1759. 113. Conquest proposed; plan of campaign. 114. Delays and their consequence. 115. The city of Quebec. 116. Wolfe's arrival; want of success; change of plan.

The Capture of Quebec. 117. Battle of the Heights of Abraham; death of Wolfe and Montcalm. 118. Loss of Canada by the French. 119. The Indians in the South. 120. The Treaty of Paris; France excluded from North America.

Pontiac's War. 121. Pontiac's confederacy; Indian ravages; siege of Detroit; General Bouquet; death of Pontiac.

The English Colonies before the Revolution. 122. Burke's admiration of the progress of the English colonies; survey proposed. 123. Relation of the colonies to each other; influences tending to union; separation; settlements in the interior. 124. Number of inhabitants. 125. Occupations; agriculture; fisheries; commerce; ship-building; lumbering; manufactures. 126. Diversities of agriculture in the North and in the South; differences in habits, character, culture, living, crops. 127. Abundance of productions; ease; wealth; luxury. 128. Extent of commerce; articles of trade. 129. Exports and imports. 130. Inventions; Franklin. 131. Education; colleges; literature; newspapers; theology and metaphysics. 132. Science; Franklin; Rittenhouse. 133. Religion in the several provinces; revival in religion.

PART III.

THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

1763–1789.

THE APPROACH OF REVOLUTION.— 1763–1775.

1. **The exclusion of France from North America** released the English colonies from all serious apprehensions. The long restrained yearning for independence was encouraged by the assurance of security and the consciousness of strength. Industry and trade were stimulated by the return of peace. Wealth and population flowed in with a full tide. The startling progress of this prosperity attracted the admiration not only of Burke,* but of all who observed the great movements in the affairs of men.

2. **English statesmen feared** that the gain of Canada would prove to be the loss of America. French statesmen had consoled themselves for its surrender with the hope and the belief that the conquerors would be ruined by the consequent revolt of the colonies. Montcalm had expressed the like conviction, three weeks before the battle on the Heights of Abraham. These fears and hopes were soon in the way of accomplishment. The colonies felt that they could now stand alone. They no longer needed British protection and British support. They were unwilling to submit any longer to British

---

* Edmund Burke (1728–1797) was a great English statesman, and the most brilliant of English orators. He was a member of Parliament from 1766 to 1793. In 1771 he was appointed Agent for the Colony of New York. He was the friend of Franklin, and always favored the interests of the American colonies.

Engraved for Holmes' History of the United States

orders, exactions, and restraints, or to the bonds of a distant control.

3. **The grievances of the colonies** were set forth, some years later, in the Declaration of Independence. Most of them were then recent, but many were of long standing, and grew out of the policy uniformly pursued by England for the promotion of her home interests. The chief causes of discontent, at the outset, were the restrictions upon trade imposed by the Navigation Acts, and the stricter enforcement of measures for the repression of smuggling; the prevention of American manufactures; and the project of taxing America to increase English revenues, and to lighten the burden of the English national debt. That debt had been augmented $300,000,000 by the late war. Much of it had been incurred for the defence of the American colonies. It was so large as to threaten the ruin of England.

4. **The quarrel over the trade regulations** broke out in Massachusetts. An old law was revived, and warrants, called "Writs of Assistance," were issued, to search anywhere for smuggled goods. These warrants were denounced as "a kind of power, which cost one king of England his head, and another his throne."

THE PARSONS' CASE.

5. **Virginia was rendered indignant** by orders from England, setting aside an Act of Assembly which forbade the introduction of African slaves, and annulling another Act, fixing the value of tobacco in contracts to be paid in tobacco. The salary of parsons was 16,000 pounds of tobacco. Some clergymen went to law to obtain the difference between the market price of tobacco and the price fixed by the statute. Patrick Henry* was the advocate of the people in "The Par-

* Patrick Henry (1736–1799)—"the forest-born Demosthenes"—was America's greatest orator, and one of its earliest and most ardent patriots. He had little education, and his early years were unpromising. His speech in "the Parsons' Case" gave him distinction. It was delivered at Hanover C.-H. in 1763. He is prominent in the subsequent history.

sons' Case." He declared that "a king who annuls or disallows a law of so salutary a nature, degenerates into a tyrant, and forfeits all right to obedience." "Treason! treason!" shouted magistrates, lawyers, and spectators. He lost the case, but the parsons were allowed only one penny damages. Henry was not more than twenty-seven years of age at this time.

6. The English Government was resolved to tax

PATRICK HENRY BEFORE THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

the American colonies, and to maintain an army there at their expense. The "Sugar Act" lowered some imposts, but announced the purpose of retaining a tax for revenue. Discontent was increased, and opposition became bolder. Samuel Adams, of Boston,* said: "We claim British

1764.

* Samuel Adams (1722–1803) was one of the earliest and most active opponents of British rule in America. In 1769, he closed a public speech with the declaration: "Independent we are; and independent we will be."

rights, not by charter only; we are born to them." He asserted the exclusive right of the colonies to tax themselves, and to govern themselves. The doctrine spread, that "Taxation without representation is tyranny," and that "Resistance to tyrants is obedience to God."

THE STAMP ACT.

7. "The Stamp Act"* was passed in England while such was the feeling in America. This Act required the use of stamps, of various cost, on all law papers, almanacs, pamphlets, and newspapers. The measure was bitterly resented and resisted by the Americans. It was not the form of the tax, but the fact of taxation, to which they objected.† Patrick Henry offered resolutions in the Virginia Legislature, affirming that "the

1765.

SAMUEL ADAMS.

* A Stamp Tax had been suggested in 1734, by Governor Colby, of New York; and again in 1744, by Governor Clarke.

When it was proposed, in 1739, to Sir Robert Walpole, then Prime Minister of England, he rejected the suggestion, saying: "I will leave that for some of my successors, who may have more courage than I have, and be less a friend to commerce than I am." * * * George Grenville was that rash successor.

† In the debates in the British Parliament on this bill, Charles Townshend remarked, that the Americans were "children planted by our care, and nourished by our indulgence." To this Colonel Barré made the indignant reply: "They planted by your care! No—your oppression planted them in America!—they fled from your tyranny to a then uncultivated and inhospitable wilderness, exposed to all the hardships to which human nature is liable. They nourished by your indulgence! No—they grew by your neglect; your care of them was displayed, as soon as you began to care about them, in sending persons to rule them who were the deputies of deputies of ministers." * * *

General Assembly of the whole colony alone have the sole right and power to levy taxes on the inhabitants of the colony." He closed his speech with the celebrated words: "Cæsar had his Brutus; Charles I. his Cromwell; and George III."—"Treason!" cried the Speaker—"may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it!" The resolutions were adopted by a majority of only one. They were repeated by the other colonies.

8. **Delegates from nine colonies** met at New York, in October, and prepared "A Declaration of Rights and Grievances;" a petition to the king; and memorials to both Houses of Parliament. The agents for the sale of stamps were forced to resign their appointments, or were driven from the country. The stamps could not be introduced. They were not allowed to be landed, or they were sent back, or delivered up, or destroyed. The merchants agreed to stop all importation from Great Britain. The people resolved to abstain from the consumption of British goods. A society was formed for the encouragement of home manufactures. The Stamp Act was repealed at the beginning of the next year, and the news of the repeal produced joy and gratitude in America.*

THE DUTIES ON TEA, Etc.—1767.

9. **The joy was of brief duration.** A new ministry laid duties on tea, paper, glass, lead, etc. The indignation of the Americans was rekindled, and was answered by harsher measures on the part of the British Government. Troops were sent to Boston to put down resistance by armed force. The Virginia Assembly denied the right of Parliament to tax the colonies, and protested against carrying accused persons to England for trial. The Assembly was dissolved by the Governor. George Washington, at a private meeting of the members, proposed resolutions against importing British commodities. They

* Burke remarked at the time that it was "an event that caused more universal joy throughout the British dominions, than perhaps any other that can be remembered."

were adopted. The Legislature of Massachusetts prepared and transmitted a circular letter to the other colonies, condemning the recent imposition of taxes by the mother country, and inviting them to unite in redressing the evils complained of. The Legislature refused to rescind the resolution of this circular, when ordered by the Governor to do so. The legislative body was dissolved by him in consequence.

THE FANEUIL HALL OF THE REVOLUTION.

As it was not reassembled, a convention was proposed. It met at Boston.*

THE BOSTON MASSACRE.

10. **The presence of the soldiery,** for the support of the revenue laws, excited much bitterness. A quarrel

* The convention met in Faneuil Hall, the customary place of assemblage for the patriots of Massachusetts. Hence it is often designated "The Cradle of American Liberty." It had been built and given to the city by Peter Faneuil, in 1742. After its destruction by fire in 1761, it was rebuilt by the town. It was converted into a theatre during the British occupation.

took place between a citizen and a soldier. Each was sustained by his class. Two days later, the troops on parade were insulted and bullied by the mob. One of the soldiers was struck. He and some of his fellows fired into the crowd. Three men were killed, and several wounded. This "**Boston Massacre,**" as it was termed, produced grave commotion. The removal of the troops from the city was demanded and enforced. The captain in command, and the soldiers engaged in the disturbance, were brought to trial. They were defended by John Adams * and Josiah Quincy. All but two were acquitted. These were found guilty of manslaughter.

1770. 5 Mar.

11. **The offensive duties were repealed** by the British Parliament on the very day on which the "Boston Massacre" occurred. The duty on tea was, however, retained, for the purpose of asserting the right of taxation, and of relieving the East India Company, whose warehouses were crowded with unsold supplies. The Home Government stubbornly maintained, and the colonies strenuously denied, the right of taxation.† Massachusetts was put under martial law, and other measures of coercion were proposed. The salaries of the high officers of the Provincial Government were fixed by royal ordinance, to render them independent of the will of the people.

1772.

THE REGULATORS.

12. **The other colonies joined in the resistance** to the British encroachments, but not with uniform promptness and resolution. In North Carolina, the inland people formed

* John Adams (1735–1826), afterwards President. He was one of the committee to draft the Declaration of Independence; and one of the negotiators of the Treaty of Paris, in 1783. He died 4th July, 1826.

† The hatred entertained for these duties was strikingly displayed. In 1772, the revenue schooner Gaspée ran aground off Rhode Island, while pursuing the Providence packet, which refused to come to when a shot was fired across her bows. In the middle of the night, more than two hundred persons from Providence captured the schooner and burnt it.

associations to oppose the exactions and arbitrary conduct
1768. of Governor Tryon, and assumed the name of "Regulators." Three years later they were defeated by Tryon on the **Alamance** River. Six of the insurgents were executed, and numerous confiscations were made. Many persons engaged in the insurrection, or, reduced by it to poverty, fled beyond the Alleghany Mountains. Their settlements on the Watauga and the Nolichuck'y were the beginning of the State of Tennessee. Daniel Boone, and a few others had preceded them.

DANIEL BOONE.

13. **Daniel Boone** was a plain yeoman, with the tastes and spirit of a pioneer. He was living on the Yadkin River, in North Carolina, when the insurrection of the Regulators broke out. He started from home to explore the wilds of Kentucky. He was taken prisoner by the Indians, but escaped. He continued his journey, reached the Ohio, and explored the Cumberland River. Returning to the Yadkin, he sold his little property, and set out with his own and other families for "The Dark and Bloody Land."* He

DANIEL BOONE.

1773. was detained on the Clinch River, as the Indians were ravaging the frontier When the Shawanee war was over, he proceeded on his route, and built a fort on the Kentucky River, where Boonesborough now stands. He was again

* The Indian name, *Kain-tuck'ee*, is said to mean "The Dark and Bloody Ground."

captured by the Indians, and again made his escape. He accompanied General Clarke in his expeditions against the tribes on the Ohio. The loss of his land, the love of adventure, and the long habit of a roving life, tempted him further westward. He settled on the Little O'sage River, in the heart of Missouri, and at eighty years of age accompanied a hunting party to the Great Osage. He was nearly ninety when he died * —having seen many States formed out of the wilderness and the prairies which he had traversed in advance of settlements. He was a notable example of those daring and resolute men, who have pushed the domain and the civilization of the United States from Massachusetts Bay and the Chesapeake to the Golden Gate and the Pacific shores.

THE PRINCESS SUSANNA.—1771.

14. A singular occurrence varied the strife of these eventful years. Sarah Wilson suddenly appeared in South Carolina, claiming to be the Princess Susanna Carolina, of the royal family of England.† She had been an attendant on one of the queen's maids of honor, and had stolen much valuable jewelry from her Majesty. She was tried, convicted, and condemned to death. The sentence was commuted to transportation and sale in the colonies. She had been sold in Maryland, and had escaped to Carolina. She made lavish promises of governments, regiments, offices, and promotions. The romance ended by her arrest near Charleston, as a runaway servant.

THE BOSTON TEA PARTY.—1773.

15. The discords grew more bitter every day. The non-importation agreement was renewed, as the duty on tea was retained. It was little regarded, and was followed by a large increase in the amount of British wares imported. Tea

* Daniel Boone (1735?–1820) settled in Missouri, on a Spanish grant, in 1799.

† A like adventure occurred in 1721, in Mississippi, while under French rule. A woman, claiming to be the widow of the Czarowitz Alexis, the unhappy son of Peter the Great, arrived in that country, and married a French officer.

was, however, refused. No orders were sent for it. The East India Company's warehouses in London contained 17,000,000 lbs. which could not be disposed of. To encourage sales in America, the export duty was taken off; and the price of tea was thus rendered lower in the colonies than in England. The temptation was offered in vain. The Americans still refused to take tea. Cargoes were sent to American ports without being ordered. They were everywhere rejected. At Boston, the vessels were boarded by fifty persons, disguised as Mohawk Indians, and three hundred and fifty chests of tea were emptied into the harbor, with great public rejoicing. This was called "The Boston Tea Party."*

THE BOSTON PORT BILL.—1774.

16. **The British Government was provoked to stronger measures** by this destruction of tea.† The harbor of Boston was closed as a commercial harbor by "**The Boston Port Bill.**" The Constitution of Massachusetts was altered. Objectionable representatives were excluded from the General Court. The seat of government was transferred to Salem; and trade was removed to Marblehead. General Gage, the commander of the British forces, was appointed Governor. Trials in certain causes were declared removable to another colony, or to Great Britain.

THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.—1774.

17. **These violent measures produced general alarm** and indignation. The Virginia Assembly protested

* About six weeks after the destruction of this tea, Franklin was summoned before the Privy Council in London, and was virulently denounced by Wedderburn, the Solicitor-General. Franklin was removed from his office of Deputy-Postmaster-General of the Colonies, and from his other public appointments.

† It was the king and the court party, or the king's friends, who urged coercion.

"With the two exceptions of Johnson and Gibbon, all the eminent and shining talents of the country, led on by Burke, were marshalled in support of the colonies."—WRAXALL, *Historical Memoirs.*

against them, and was immediately dissolved by the Earl of Dunmore. Eighty-nine of the members met in the ball-room or "Hall of Apollo," of the Raleigh Tavern, at Williamsburg. They resolved that an attack on one colony was an attack on all. They suggested the appointment of Committees of Correspondence, and of deputies to a General Congress.

CARPENTER'S HALL.

18. **The Congress,** which was the first Continental Congress, **met at Philadelphia** in the beginning of September. Eleven colonies were represented at the meeting, which assembled in Carpenter's Hall. The members entered into a solemn association to secure the redress of colonial grievances. They resolved not to import goods from Great Britain, nor to export American products thither, and not to consume British commodities until the offensive acts were repealed. Declarations and addresses to the Crown, the British people, and the colonies were issued, in order to proclaim the infringement of colonial rights, and to invite consideration, sympathy, or concurrence. Congress then adjourned, with the recommendation that another should assemble in the coming May.

19. **Civil War was fast approaching.** Yet Lord North, the British Prime Minister, declared "his firm persuasion that the troubles in America would be settled happily, speedily, and without bloodshed." General Gage fortified the neck which

connected Boston with the mainland. A Provincial Congress met at Concord. The militia was organized, minute-men designated, and generals commissioned. Everything was ripe for war, and ready for an explosion. The first spark would fire the train.

THE BATTLE OF POINT PLEASANT.

20. Dangers arose on the frontier. The Indians were in arms on the Western border. Dunmore marched against them, and reached Pittsburg with the force under his immediate command. He made a new treaty with the Six Nations, and proceeded against the Shawanees on the Ohio. General Andrew Lewis, with several regiments of Virginia riflemen, marched by way of the Greenbrier and Kanawha (*kan-aw'-wā*) rivers to Point Pleasant. Dunmore had proposed to meet him there, but had not arrived. An engagement with the Indians was accidentally brought on while Lewis's army was encamped between the Kanawha and the Ohio. The battle lasted throughout the day. The Indians were defeated.* The loss of the Virginians was very heavy. Many of their officers were wounded or slain. Colonel Charles Lewis, the brother of the general, was shot down early in the conflict. The victory was decisive, and freed Virginia from Indian occupation, and from regular Indian hostilities. A treaty was made with the Shawanees, and they were restricted to the further bank of the Ohio. To this treaty Logan assented, though he would not attend the council. The Cayu'ga chief sent his acceptance with a speech preserved by Jefferson as a striking example of savage eloquence.†

1774. 10 Oct.

---

* The Indians were commanded by the gigantic warrior Cornstalk, and his son Ellinipsico. The voice of Cornstalk was heard above the din of battle, cheering his braves with the cry, "Be strong! Be strong!"

† The war began with the murder of thirteen Indians along the Ohio. Logan killed the same number of white men in retaliation. He was not present at the battle of Point Pleasant. He sent his speech by an Indian interpreter. In this celebrated speech he said:

* * "One man * * last spring cut off, unprovoked, all the relations of Logan, not sparing women or children. There runs not a drop of my blood in the

21. A close estimate of the population was made by the first Congress. Virginia was supposed to contain 650,000 inhabitants; Massachusetts, 400,000; and New York, 250,000.

THE REVOLUTION, 1775.

22. The British Ministry were confident that the colonies would soon submit, or be subdued. They felt only contempt for the courage, the steadiness, and the discipline of the colonial militia.* They said that the Americans "might bluster, but would not fight, or think of resisting General Gage." The resistance grew more resolute with the resolution to crush it. Patrick Henry proposed in the Virginia Convention at Richmond, that "the colony be immediately put in a position of defence." He clearly discerned the coming conflict. He exclaimed: "If we wish to be free, we must fight: I repeat it, we must fight! The war is inevitable, and let it come! Let it come! I know not what course others may take; but, as for me, **Give me liberty, or give me death!**"

THE ROUT AT LEXINGTON.

23. The war had already come. A small force, sent by General Gage to seize some cannon at Salem, had been opposed by the country people at the passage of a little stream. A stronger detachment was sent from Boston to capture the arms and military stores collected by the patriots at Concord. The column set out at midnight; but its approach was announced by Paul Revere (*re-veer'*) to John Adams and John

veins of any living creature. This called upon me for revenge. * * I have * * fully glutted my revenge. For my nation, I rejoice in the beams of peace; but nothing I have said proceeds from fear. Logan * * will not turn on his heel to save his life. Who is there to mourn for Logan? Not one."

* It was contemptuously said in England, "that the sight of a grenadier's cap would be sufficient to put an American army to flight."

Hancock, at Lexington.* The British reached that place about daybreak, and found the minute-men of the district under arms. A skirmish ensued. Eight Americans were killed and several were wounded. The column pushed on to Concord, but the stores had been removed. On its return it was beset by the enraged militia. It was fired upon from every vantage ground or place of ambush. At Lexington the retreat became a rout. The troops were pursued and shot down till they reached Charleston. It was impossible to make a stand, though Lord Percy brought a thousand men to their rescue. The British lost 273 men; the Americans, 88. **The War of the Revolution** was begun. There could be no peace without submission or independence.

1775. 19 April.

24. **The skirmish at Lexington** was soon known throughout the colonies, and roused the people everywhere. Twenty thousand militia hastened to Boston. In Rhode Island forty cannon were carried off from the batteries. At Charleston, South Carolina, the arsenal was sacked, and the arms distributed to the volunteers. Georgia threw in her fortunes with the other colonies, and seized the royal magazines. In Mecklenburg, North Carolina (20 May), the people annulled the royal authority. The forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which commanded the communications with Canada, were captured by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold.† Allen appeared before Ticonderoga early in May, and demanded its surrender, "in the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress." Crown Point was taken two days later.

25. **The Continental Congress reassembled** on the

* There is a very spirited poem by Longfellow on Revere's midnight ride, to convey to the patriots at Lexington intelligence of the march of the British.

† Benedict Arnold (1740-1801) will reappear frequently and notably in the history of the Revolutionary War. Ethan Allen was a prisoner in the hands of the British from 1775 to 1778. He died in 1789.

same day that Ticonderoga surrendered. It assumed for the "Confederacy" the name of "The United Colonies of North America." A second petition to the king was ordered, and the wish was expressed for "a return to their former connections and friendship with Great Britain." Measures were taken for the vigorous maintenance of the war. An army of twenty thousand men, and the issue of three millions of dollars in paper money, were ordered. George Washington,* of Virginia, was appointed Commander-in-chief. He resigned his seat in the Congress, and proceeded to the scene of war before Boston.

1775. May 10.

GENERAL WARREN.

THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

26. The British forces in Boston were strengthened by the arrival of ten thousand soldiers, under Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne—names closely associated with the further prosecution of the war. With this increase of force, Gage

* George Washington (1732–1799) has the history of his country for his biography. He was born in Westmoreland County, Va., and was now forty-three years of age. His early youth was passed as a surveyor, and as such he had been employed by Lord Fairfax. He thus acquired habits of observation, of caution, of cool reflection, of just judgment, and of firm decision. He was the friend of peace and attached to England, under whose banner he had served. But he was still more the friend of temperate liberty, and was devoted to truth, to justice, and to his country. His talents were solid rather than brilliant. His nature was so well poised that he was as unshaken in adverse as in prosperous fortune. His ambition could not be tempted by a crown; nor could disappointment, desertion, and calumny provoke him to despair. He was thus admirably fitted to guide the struggling colonies through the doubtful fortunes and multiplied difficulties of the Revolution, and of the first period of Independence

undertook the capture and fortification of **Bunker Hill,** which lay opposite the city, on the further side of the Charles River. The design became known, and Colonel Prescott sought to preoccupy the position by a night movement. In the darkness he seized Breed's Hill, which is a lower elevation. Gage sent twenty-five hundred troops to dislodge the Americans,

1775. 17 June. who numbered fifteen hundred, after being joined by Generals Warren and Putnam.* The men-of-war in the harbor, and the batteries on the Boston shore poured a heavy fire on the American encampment. Charlestown was shortly in flames. The British advanced against the hostile works. They were driven back by a hot and steady fire. A second charge was made. It was repulsed. A third charge was undertaken, with the support of a thousand new troops. The Americans did not waver, but their ammunition was exhausted, and they were compelled to retreat. General Warren was the last to retire, and was shot through the head. The British lost 1,054, killed and wounded. The American loss was 145 killed, and 304 wounded. The fallen patriots are commemorated by a monument, the corner-stone of which was laid by Lafayette fifty years afterwards.

GENERAL PUTNAM.

THE ARMY BEFORE BOSTON.

27. General Washington took command of the army investing Boston a fortnight after the battle of Bunker Hill. He found a patriotic mob, rather than an army. It consisted

* Israel Putnam (1718–1790), a plain farmer and tavern-keeper, commanded the first troops raised in Connecticut for the French War in 1755. His popular fame rests largely on his gallop, in 1779, down "Horseneck Stairs," five miles west of Stamford

of 14,500 men—nearly all volunteers for brief periods of service. It was sanguine, but disorderly; eager, but undisciplined; confident, but inefficient; and was without the most needful military supplies. The first necessity was to introduce order, system, permanence, and obedience. The fall and winter months were chiefly employed in this indispensable task, and in collecting military and other stores. The investment of Boston was maintained, and everything was prepared for energetic action in the spring.

ATTEMPT TO CONQUER CANADA.

28. The last half of the year was not without stirring events. There was reason to fear a British invasion from Canada, which had not joined in the colonial revolt. Two expeditions were prepared to avert this danger, and to gain the province for the Confederacy. It was expected that the Canadians would sympathize actively with the scheme, for they had not been twenty years subject to the British Crown. Richard Montgomery, an officer of Irish birth, descended Lake Champlain, with one army, and moved upon Montreal. Benedict Arnold, accompanied by Aaron Burr,* ascended the Kennebec with the other, and was to join Montgomery before Quebec.† Montgomery found Montreal abandoned, and took it. He then moved down the St. Lawrence with the scanty force which did not desert him as soon as the term of service expired.

29. **Arnold reached Quebec** only two days later than the occupation of Montreal. His march had been performed under the most serious difficulties. Exposure in a bleak climate during the stormy months of autumn, flooded streams,

---

* Aaron Burr (1756-1836) will appear prominently at a later period. He was the grandson of Jonathan Edwards—a mere boy at this time. His only child, Theodosia, was lost at sea, January, 1813. She was reported to have been captured and murdered by pirates.

† Richard Montgomery (1737-1775) served under Wolfe at the capture of Quebec. He emigrated to America in 1772—settled on the Hudson—and married in New York.

and chilling rains had to be endured. There were no roads through the gloomy forest. The way had to be picked through fallen and tangled timber. The shoes of the soldiers were worn out on the rugged and frozen soil; their clothes hung from them in tatters; their food was scanty, and failed altogether at times. Their supplies were exhausted before they reached the St. Lawrence. Colonel Enos turned back with a third of the troops. No obstacles overcame the constancy and the iron will of Arnold. On he marched. He reached Quebec, and demanded the surrender of the city. The demand was rejected. His ragged regiment inspired no alarm. He retired up the river, to wait orders from Montgomery.

30. The joint forces of the two commanders did not reach a thousand men. They were far from home and friends, from support, and from supplies. They could not return; their only hope was in rash daring. They advanced to Quebec, and again demanded its surrender. The surrender was again refused. A night attack was made on the strongly fortified city, defended by two hundred guns. Arnold advanced on the side of the St. Charles River. Montgomery led his men along the banks of the St. Lawrence. He was killed, and his line shattered by a discharge of grape. Arnold's leg was broken by a musket shot, and he was carried to the rear. Captain Morgan* captured the advanced batteries. After a gallant conflict of three hours, he was compelled to surrender with his detachment.

31 Dec.

AFFAIRS IN THE SOUTH.

31. Virginia had been actively employed. The day after the battle of Lexington, Lord Dunmore removed twenty barrels of gunpowder from the magazine at Williamsburg. Patrick Henry collected volunteers for their recovery. A conflict was delayed by the Governor's agreeing to pay for the

* Daniel Morgan (1737-1802) was a waggoner and farmer. In youth he removed from New Jersey to Virginia. He was a private under Braddock. He was with Arnold on the march up the Kennebec. He died at Winchester, Va.

powder. Dunmore then sought refuge on board the Fowey man-of-war, in York River, and sailed to Norfolk to prepare means for the subjugation of the province. He was defeated at Great Bridge, twelve miles south of Norfolk—a point which commanded the approaches on that side. Norfolk could no longer be held by him. He again found safety on a man-of-war. The patriots occupied the city. It was furiously bombarded by the fugitive Governor, and was set on fire by sailors and marines. Nine-tenths of the buildings, and property valued at a million and a half of dollars, were destroyed. Dunmore proclaimed freedom to the negroes, and invited them to take up arms against their masters. He endeavored to retain command of the Chesapeake, and encamped his promiscuous followers on an island, under protection of the fleet. The fleet was driven off, and the encampment broken up, during the next summer, by General Andrew Lewis.*

1776. 1 Jan.

32. In North and South Carolina the royal governors were driven to seek security on board the armed vessels in the harbors. In the former province a large body of royalists, Highlanders, and others were defeated, during the winter, at Moore's Creek, by Colonel Caswell and an inferior force of militia. The Revolution was spreading everywhere, and the spirit of resistance was becoming more resolute. There was little method in the several movements. The blow was struck when the chance of striking a blow was offered.

1776. 27 Feb.

SECOND YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION.—1776.

33. There was much complaint of the inaction of General Washington. Congress urged an early attack on

* Andrew Lewis, of Virginia (1730-1780), commanded at Point Pleasant. He was with Washington at Fort Necessity, 1754, and in Braddock's defeat. He made the treaty with the Six Nations, 1768. He was recommended by Washington as one of the four Major-Generals of the Continental Army. His statue is on the Washington Monument, Richmond, Va.

Boston. The British Government had been busy during the late months. They had proclaimed martial law throughout the colonies. They had hired Hessian and other German mercenaries; and encouraged the capture of colonial property at sea. General Howe was in command in Boston, and had received strong reinforcements. General Gage and General Burgoyne had returned to England.

THE RECOVERY OF BOSTON.

34. Washington was prepared to gratify the wishes of the people, and to execute the orders of Congress. A heavy cannonade from the American batteries was showered upon the fortifications of Boston for three successive nights, in the beginning of March. On the third night, Dorchester Heights, which commanded the city on the south, were seized by 2,000 American troops. When morning broke, and Howe saw the hostile guns frowning down upon him, he knew that the city and the fleet in the harbor were at the mercy of the Americans. The recapture of the heights was hopeless. An informal

17 Mar. agreement was made for the undisturbed evacuation of Boston.* It had been occupied seven years by the British. The embarkation of the troops, and of the loyalists who withdrew with them, was long delayed by storms. At length the fleet sailed for Halifax, to await future opportunities and further orders.† The Americans entered Boston, and General Putnam was placed in command of the town. The estates and property of refugees were confiscated and sold. The proceeds were applied to the public service. Washington apprehended that Howe would attack New York, and has-

* Boston was regained by the same strategical operations as were afterwards employed by Napoleon Bonaparte to expel the British from Toulon.

† There is a legend in Boston, "that, on the anniversary night of Britain's discomfiture, the ghosts of the ancient governors of Massachusetts still glide through Province House. And, last of all, comes a figure shrouded in a military cloak, tossing his clenched hands into the air, and stamping his iron-shod boots upon the freestone steps, with a semblance of feverish despair, but without the sound of a foot-tramp." —HAWTHORNE.

tened thither after sending forward part of his army for its defence

THE BRITISH PLAN FOR THE CAMPAIGN.

35. **The British proposed three objects** for the campaign of 1776: to relieve Quebec, which was still threatened by Arnold, and invade the Northern Colonies from Canada; to make a descent upon the Southern Provinces; and to acquire the city and colony of New York. No fear was entertained for Boston. Boston, however, was lost, and its loss interrupted and delayed other operations. Canada was relieved. General Clinton sailed early in the year to execute the second design, which was the special scheme of the king himself. He proceeded southwards, after touching at New York, to unite his forces with the royal governors.

BRITISH REPULSE AT FORT MOULTRIE.

36. **Clinton was joined at the Cape Fear River** by Admiral Sir Peter Parker with a fleet, which brought Cornwallis* and seven regiments from Ireland. They sailed against Charleston, which had been put in a state of defence by the energy of John Rutledge, the first President of South Carolina, under its new Constitution. General Charles Lee† had arrived in time to take command of the defenders, but his temper rendered his services unwelcome and inefficient.

37. **The chief defence of the city and harbor** was a fort of palmetto logs on Sullivan's Island, mounting thirty

---

* Charles Cornwallis (1738–1805), Earl and afterwards Marquis Cornwallis, served in the Seven Years' War. He was aide-de-camp to George III., and Governor of the Tower. He became Viceroy of Ireland, and Governor-General of India.

† Charles Lee (1731–1782) entered the British army at a very early age. He distinguished himself in the French and Indian War. He lived with the Mohawks, and was made a chief, under the name of "Boiling Water." He served under Burgoyne in Portugal. He was aid to Poniatowski, King of Poland, and was sent as his Ambassador to Turkey. He returned to America in 1773, and resigned his commission in the royal army, to accept one in the American. He was a prodigy of leanness. He was highly accomplished, but vain, arrogant, and passionate.

guns. It was commanded by Colonel Moultrie (*mool'tre*), and bore his name. Clinton landed in the rear of the fort. Lee urged its abandonment, declaring it "a slaughter-pen." An inlet of the sea, which could not be forded, separated Sullivan's Island from Long Island, on which the British had disembarked. The same difficulty frustrated a second attempt to take the fortress by land. The fleet passed the bar, and bombarded the fort for ten hours, without producing any serious damage. The balls sank in the soft palmetto trunks, without splintering or displacing them.* Clinton returned to New York, and the Carolinas were not annoyed again for two years.

28 June.

JOHN RUTLEDGE.

38. **A gallant act was performed by Sergeant Jasper** during the bombardment. The flag-staff was broken by a ball, and the flag of South Carolina fell over the parapet. In the midst of the heavy fire, Jasper leapt down, recovered the flag, and replaced it on the ramparts.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.—4th July, 1776.

39. The Virginia Convention directed their delegates in Congress "to propose to that body to declare the United Colonies free, independent, and sovereign States." Richard

* The frigates sent to the support of Clinton ran aground, and stuck fast in the shoals of the "Middle Channel." The Actæon could not be got off, and was burnt by her officers the next morning.

Henry Lee, one of those delegates introduced the proposition. A committee was appointed to draw up a suitable Declara-

SERGEANT JASPER REPLACING THE FLAG ON FORT MOULTRIE.

tion. It was composed by Thomas Jefferson,* and was slightly altered by Benjamin Franklin † and John Adams. It was

* Thomas Jefferson (1743–1826) was born in Albemarle County, Virginia. The leading events in his life are prominent in this history. He was sent to the Continental Congress in 1775. He was Governor of Virginia in 1779; Minister Plenipotentiary to Paris in 1784; Secretary of State in 1790; Vice-President in 1797; and President in 1801. He was buried on the mountain-side below his residence at Monticello. Congress appropriated $5,000 in 1879 to erect a monument there. Nothing had been done when Congress, in the spring of 1882, appropriated $10,000 for the purpose. The inscription placed on Jefferson's tomb, by his own direction, was: "Author of the Declaration of Independence, of the Statute of Virginia for Religious Freedom, and Father of the University of Virginia."

† Benjamin Franklin (1706–1790) was born in Boston, was apprenticed to his brother as a printer; went to Philadelphia at the age of 17; and visited London. He returned to Philadelphia in 1726; he published "Poor Richard's Almanac" in 1732. In 1752, he drew lightning from the clouds, with a key tied to the string of a kite. In 1753, he was Postmaster-General for America. In 1757, he was sent to England as agent for Pennsylvania, Massachusetts, and Georgia. He was sent to France, and negoti-

accepted by Congress, and signed by the members* on the 4th of July.† An oath was required of all officers, acknowledging "the **Thirteen United States**," by name, "to be free, independent, and sovereign States."

THE PEACE COMMISSION.

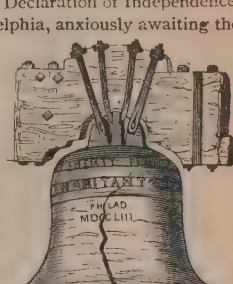
40. **General Howe was appointed Commander-in-chief** of the royal forces in America.‡ Reinforcements, and the coöperation of a fleet under Lord Howe, were promised. The two brothers were appointed Peace Commissioners, with the hope of winning the colonies back. To break their concert, separate amnesties and separate restoration were proffered. The negotiations were protracted, but were fruitless, since complete independence was demanded. The failure to arrange terms of reconciliation was attended with the active prosecution of hostilities, and the endeavor to accomplish the third and principal scheme of the British campaign.

---

ated the alliance with that country; and in 1782, the Treaty of Peace with England. He returned, and became President of Pennsylvania.

* John Hancock (1737–1793), a wealthy and patriotic merchant of Boston, President of the Continental Congress, was the first signer of the Declaration of Independence.

† The citizens were collected in the streets of Philadelphia, anxiously awaiting the decision. The bell-ringer had been in the steeple all day in readiness. He had left a boy below to give him prompt notice. As the time passed by, he muttered: "They will never do it! They will never do it!" About 2 o'clock in the afternoon, a loud hurrah came from below, and the boy shouted, "Ring! Ring!" A merry peal rang out, announcing "Liberty through all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof." Such was the inscription on the bell. The royal arms were torn down, and burnt in the street. Bonfires were kindled, and the houses illuminated. In New York, the leaden statue of George III. was thrown over, cut into pieces, and melted into bullets. In Boston, the Declaration was welcomed with cheers. Like demonstrations were made at Norfolk, Charleston, Savannah, and other places. The Declaration was read to the soldiers, at the head of the brigades, and received with enthusiasm.



LIBERTY BELL.

‡ Howe's whole forces, if united, would have amounted to about 35,000 men, including 13,000 Hessians. The Americans in arms were reported to amount to 200,000, but they were widely scattered, and could never be collected in large bodies.

THE BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

41. Howe sailed from Halifax in the end of June, and planted himself on Staten Island. Here he was joined by Lord Howe and the fleet, and by Parker and Clinton from South Carolina. Ten thousand men and forty cannon were landed on Long Island, to expel the Americans under General Sullivan, who lay before Brooklyn. The patriots were com-

27 Aug. pletely entrapped. They were assailed in front and rear, routed, and driven into the town. Fifteen hundred were killed or captured. The shattered remnant was skilfully withdrawn by Washington, the second midnight, and transferred to New York.

THE CAPTURE OF NEW YORK.

42. The English fleet commanded the harbor of New York, the Hudson, and the East River. The victorious troops could be easily landed at any point. Many inhabitants of the city earnestly favored the royal cause. Washington's army was disorganized, and crippled by desertion. He left the city with the main body, and encamped on Harlaem Heights. Putnam remained behind with a small force to delay the advance of the enemy. Manhattan Island was

JOHN HANCOCK.

evacuated. Forts Washington and Lee, on opposite banks of the Hudson, were retained. The Americans were driven from the field at **White Plains,** and Washington fell back to a more secure position. This was soon abandoned, and he passed over into New Jersey, to obstruct the British advance upon Philadelphia. General Charles Lee remained on the eastern bank of the Hudson, with the New England regiments, whose term of service had nearly expired. The American army was utterly broken up. Scarcely 2,500 men held together in one body. Fortunately, Howe was deficient in enterprise. His heart was not in his work. Washington was cautious, stubborn, and resolute; and the Northern winter had arrived.

THE RETREAT THROUGH THE JERSEYS.

43. Winter did not end the campaign. Fort Washington was taken soon after Washington crossed the Hudson. Cornwallis followed him. Fort Lee was evacuated. The Americans retreated, with the loss of their guns and stores. Cornwallis still pressed forward. The Americans fell back behind the Passaic; next, behind the Raritan; next, to Princeton; then to Trenton, where the tattered and scattered remnant

8 Dec. crossed the Delaware. The British could not pass the river for want of boats. The chance of capturing Philadelphia and the Congress was lost by the delay. Congress hastened in alarm to Baltimore. The royal troops pitched their camp along the eastern shore of the Delaware. During this celebrated retreat through the Jerseys,* General Charles Lee had been ordered to join the retiring army. Two of his Jersey regiments deserted. He was himself surprised and captured. He was held at first as a deserter from the royal service, but was exchanged after long detention.

---

* The devastation of the Jerseys by the royal troops, on this march, seriously damaged the royal cause in that quarter. The British destroyed the College and Library at Princeton, Rittenhouse's Orrery, and the Public Library at Trenton.

THE PASSAGE OF THE DELAWARE.

44. **An early termination of the war** was now expected. Seventy thousand Americans had been in arms during the regular campaign. Small and scattered bands—ragged, worn out, foot-sore, and dispirited—alone remained. But Howe had divided his forces, and sent Clinton, with Parker's fleet, against Newport, in Rhode Island, which was easily taken. Moreover, Washington did not despair while others were despairing. On Christmas night he crossed the Delaware with 2,400 men, to surprise the Hessians at **Trenton,** in the midst of their carousals. It was a night of tempest. Masses of ice were swept down by the dangerous current. The passage was rendered dim and ghastly by the falling snow. The troops were not drawn up on the Jersey shore till four o'clock in the morning. A high wind, with driving sleet, chilled the men more than the passage of the river had done. Sullivan reported the muskets to be wet. "Use the bayonet," said Washington, "for the town must be taken, and I am resolved to take it." It was daylight before the attack began. The Hessians were completely surprised, and utterly routed. Their commander was slain; their stores were captured; 946 were taken prisoners; only 162 escaped. The Americans did not lose a man. Washington at once recrossed the Delaware. An English writer of the time remarked: "This small success wonderfully raised the spirit of the Americans." It was natural that it should do so. It was a brilliant exploit, following a long train of disasters. It revived hope.

45. **Congress endeavored to give permanence to the army,** and to fill its scanty ranks. Twenty pounds in money, and one hundred acres of land, were offered as a bounty to every private who should volunteer. Washington was, for six months, empowered to appoint and to remove all officers below the rank of brigadier. This reveals the inefficiency of the regimental and company commanders. To turn

his victory to account, and to arrest the movements of the enemy, Washington recrossed the Delaware, and reoccupied Trenton, during the closing days of the year. Yet the difficulties of the time seemed too great to be overcome. Congress had neither funds for the army, nor credit with its own people. Means for the most pressing needs were obtained only from private liberality, or by the pledge of private fortunes.

46. **The projected invasion from the North** was frustrated by Arnold. He had been withdrawn from Canada, but had been ordered to oppose any advance from that quarter. He hastily constructed a flotilla on Lake Champlain, and engaged the British under General Carleton. Two of his vessels were lost; one was taken, the other sunk. The rest hurried up the lake, but were overtaken. The hindmost was captured; the foremost reached Ticonderoga. The rest were run ashore and burnt. The lake was recovered by the British; but their advance had been retarded till the approach of winter rendered the prosecution of invasion too hazardous.

THIRD YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1777.

47. **The third year of the war opened with dark prospects,** notwithstanding the success at Trenton. The war had become popular in England, though maintained at a heavy outlay, and earnestly opposed by an intelligent minority. It had already cost Britain £20,000,000. It had lost much of the early enthusiasm of the Americans, in consequence of frequent disasters and accumulating burdens. The army could scarcely be recruited, even with high bounties.* The militia could not be depended on. Conscription and a draft were proposed; but every device was preferred to the inconsistency and uncertainty of compelling men to fight for their freedom and independence.

* The British had previously offered bounties out of the vacant lands to the Highlanders, in order to induce them to volunteer for the war in America—where many of their fellow-countrymen were already settled.

THE BATTLE OF PRINCETON.

48. **Washington was at Trenton,** with 5,000 untrained men. Cornwallis had gone to New York, on his way to England. He returned to the Jerseys on learning the disasters at Trenton. Washington fell back as he advanced. The little stream of the Assipink divided the two armies. The British proposed to force its passage as soon as the morning came. Washington left his camp-fires burning, and marched rapidly against a British brigade at **Princeton.** He fell suddenly upon it at sunrise, and routed it. The empty camp in front, the cannonade behind, informed Cornwallis of the stratagem of the Americans, and of its success. He pursued them, but too late. Washington was secure in the highlands round Morristown.

1777. 3 Jan.

49. **The British forces were dispersed,** and their energies were wasted on trivial and disconnected enterprises. The result was "a war of posts, surprises, and skirmishes, instead of a war of battles." Connecticut was ravaged by Tryon, the former Governor of New York, and Newport was surprised.

THE UNITED STATES FLAG.

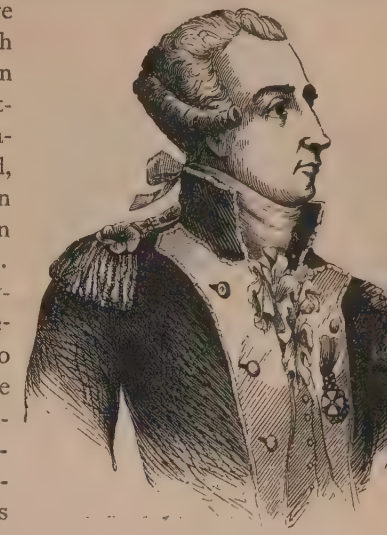
50. **A flag for the Thirteen United Colonies** was adopted by Congress during the summer. It had been used in the previous year by the army before Boston. It consisted of thirteen stars on a blue field, and thirteen alternate stripes of red and white for the fly.*

ARRIVAL OF LAFAYETTE.

51. **Benjamin Franklin and two other Commissioners** had been sent to France to invite its alliance with the colonies in revolt, and to procure aid for the maintenance of

* The flag was adopted by the army, in 1776, on the rejection of the petition of the Continental Congress, and the reception of the king's address.

the war. They were warmly received, and met with marked encouragement. A subsidy and other supplies were granted. American vessels were welcomed into French and Spanish ports. An open alliance was postponed, but numerous facilities were accorded, and a strong feeling in favor of the American patriots was displayed. Applications for employment in America became so frequent as to prove annoying. The young Marquis De Lafayette,* not yet twenty-one years of age, tendered his services. His family, the British ambassador, and the French king opposed his departure. He bought the Duke of Kingston's yacht, crossed the Atlantic, arrived at Charleston, was welcomed by Washington as a member of his staff, and appointed a Major-General. Baron DeKalb† and other officers attended him.



LAFAYETTE.

52. About the same time also came Count Casimir Pu-

---

* Marie Jean Paul Roche Gilbert Motier, Marquis De Lafayette (1757–1834) was very prominent in three revolutions: the American Revolution, the first French Revolution, and the revolution in France in July, 1830. He belonged to one of the oldest, noblest, and wealthiest families of France. He reached America in April, 1777. He revisited America in 1784, on the invitation of Washington; and in 1824, on the invitation of Congress. He was appointed commander-in-chief of the National Guards of Paris two days after the fall of the Bastile; and again, forty years afterwards. He was a prisoner of the Austrians at Olmütz, 1792–1797. He was almost rescued from captivity by Dr. Bollmann and a young Carolinian named Huger. He was the means of placing Louis Philippe on the French throne in 1830.

† John, Baron DeKalb (1732–1780), was a native of Alsace, and was a French Brigadier-General. He had been sent to America as a secret agent in 1762.

laski,* who had seized Stanislaus (*stan'is-las*) Poniatowski, King of Poland, in the streets of Warsaw, and had been outlawed in consequence. Thaddeus Kosciusko,† the celebrated Polish patriot was already in the country, having been driven from home by a love affair. Baron Steuben,‡ an officer of distinction in the wars of Frederick the Great, came the next year.§ Other foreigners also arrived.

KOSCIUSKO.

BURGOYNE'S INVASION.

53. The project of an invasion from Canada was renewed. It was strongly urged by Carleton, the Governor. It was hoped that New England might be cut off from the

* Casimir Pulaski (1747–1779) was a Lithuanian noble. He rebelled against the King of Poland in 1769. His father was captured and executed. He was commander-in-chief of the Polish insurgents in 1770. Stanislaus was seized by him in 1771.

† Thaddeus Kosciusko (1755–1817) was of a noble Lithuanian family. He formed an unhappy attachment for the daughter of the Grand Marshal of Lithuania, which occasioned his coming to America in 1776. He was the engineer of the works at West Point. Having returned to Poland, he became Major-General of the patriots in 1789. In 1794, he was Dictator of Poland. He was captured by the Russians and imprisoned. He was released in 1796, and revisited the United States the next year. In 1806 he declined Napoleon's invitations.

‡ Frederic William Augustus, Baron Von Steuben (1731–1795), had been aide-de-camp of Frederick of Prussia, and was a Lieutenant-General in Baden. He died at Steubenville. To none of the foreign officers was the revolutionary army more indebted than to him.

§ The eagerness of foreigners for appointments in the American army is shown by an advertisement, which appeared in the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, six weeks after the battle of Lexington: "A gentleman, who served all last war in the King of Prussia's army, offers his services to the province of Pennsylvania."

other colonies by a simultaneous advance up the Hudson. Sir John Burgoyne * was appointed to command the expedition from the north. Carleton tendered his resignation in consequence of being thus superseded. Burgoyne was ordered to engage the services of the Indians. He obeyed his orders, though disinclined to employ them, as Carleton had been. With 7,000 British and German troops, and a large body of savages, he ascended Lake Champlain. St. Clair withdrew from Ticonderoga, abandoned Fort Edward, and fell back on the Mohawk River. A sad story is associated with this withdrawal. Jenny Macrae, a young and beautiful girl, was betrothed to an English officer. She fell into the hands of the Indians, and was shot and scalped in their flight.†

54. **Burgoyne's advance through the forest,** after leaving the lake, was slow and difficult. He sometimes made scarcely more than a mile in the day. He was a fortnight in transporting his supplies to the Hudson River, a distance of eighteen miles. He was rarely able to collect provisions sufficient for more than four days. A strong detachment was sent, under a German officer, to seize the stores at **Bennington.** It was defeated by Colonel Stark and the Vermont militia. The reinforcements were also defeated. Stark is said to have cheered his men by declaring: "We must beat to-day, or Molly Stark's a widow." ‡ Another force had been

---

* Sir John Burgoyne (1730–1792) had distinguished himself as a Brigadier-General in Portugal, in 1762. His surrender at Saratoga deprived him of the personal regard of George III. He was tried before a committee of Parliament, and was vindicated. He wrote well, spoke well, and was a popular dramatist.

† The story of Jenny Macrae (*mac-ra'*), as told by Bancroft, and as repeated by most others who have noticed her fate, represents her as having been tomahawked by one Indian in a quarrel with another for the possession of the captive. This tradition has been denied, on the strength of later investigations and further testimony. She was undesignedly shot by some American troops, in a skirmish with the Indians who had captured her. She was scalped; and the scalp, with her long and beautiful hair, was carried to Burgoyne. She was only twenty years of age.

The tale was commented on by Burke, in the British Parliament, as "the murder of Miss Macrae, on the morning of her marriage."

‡ Doubts have been expressed of the truth of this story. The name of Stark's wife seems to have been Elizabeth, not Molly.

sent to his right, to sweep the Mohawk Valley. It was composed largely of Indians under Brant. Fort Schuyler (Rome) was besieged. General Herkimer fell into an ambuscade at Oris'kany, and was mortally wounded. On the approach of Arnold, the Indians deserted, and the expedition of St. Leger was completely frustrated. General Schuyler was removed from the command of the American army in the North, as disaster was ascribed to his indecision and incapacity. Horatio Gates,* a man more vain, but not more able, was appointed in his place.

THE SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE.

55. Both wings of Burgoyne's army had thus been defeated. His force was reduced to 6,000 men. Washington had sent some of his best officers to oppose him—Arnold, Lincoln, Morgan. The hope of a successful invasion had almost vanished. Still Burgoyne pressed forward, looking for the advance expected from New York. No help came. An engagement took place on Bemis's Heights, near Stillwater. It was bloody, but indecisive. A second battle, more damaging to the invaders, was fought on nearly the same ground. Morgan's Virginia Rifles shot down General Fraser,† one of the ablest and most esteemed of the British

19 Sept.
7 Oct.

GENERAL BURGOYNE.

* Horatio Gates (1728–1806) was born in England, and had been an officer in the English army. He was with Braddock in his defeat. He took up his abode in Virginia. In 1778, he was involved in intrigues to supplant Washington. When appointed to the command of the Southern army, General Charles Lee said to him: "Take care that you do not exchange Northern *laurels* for Southern *willows*."

† General Fraser was the son of the notorious Simon Fraser, Lord Lovat, who was beheaded in 1747, with forfeiture of his estates, for complicity in the Jacobite rebel-

officers. Burgoyne retreated to **Saratoga** with shattered forces, only 2,000 of which were British. He was surrounded by thrice his number. He had barely rations for five days.

17 Oct. Clinton had moved from New York, but too late. There was no escape. The whole army surrendered. It was stipulated that it should be sent back to England. Congress did not execute the terms of the convention. Burgoyne himself was permitted to go home on parole. He was ultimately exchanged for Laurens, the American envoy to Holland, who was captured at sea.

BATTLE OF THE BRANDYWINE, AND LOSS OF PHILADELPHIA.

56. The surrender of Burgoyne exercised a decisive influence on the fortunes of the war. France had throughout given much secret aid to the revolted colonies. It soon entered into open alliance with them, and engaged in war with Great Britain. The struggle was earnestly maintained in America; but the brilliant success at Saratoga was balanced by serious reverses elsewhere. Sir William Howe withdrew from the Jerseys to attack Philadelphia by water. Learning

GENERAL GATES.

tion of 1745. George III. was deeply affected by the consequences descending upon his son, and furthered his fortunes in many ways.

that the Delaware was obstructed, he directed his course to the head of Chesapeake Bay. Washington, who had been joined by Lafayette, and other foreign officers, took up his position at Wilmington. When Howe approached, he retreated behind the **Brandywine.** He was attacked here, and was dislodged with heavy loss. Lafayette was severely wounded. Philadelphia was abandoned, and was occupied by the British. Two months later, Lord Howe arrived with the fleet.

11 Sept.

57. **Washington attempted to repeat the operation** which had been attended with such striking success at Trenton and at Princeton. Howe's main camp was at **Germantown.** It had been weakened by sending off numerous detachments. Washington reached Germantown by a night march, and surprised the British. The ground was difficult. A heavy fog concealed the movements. The attacking columns were thrown into alarm and confusion. The ammunition was soon exhausted. Expected victory was converted into bloody defeat. Washington remained in his strong lines, when Howe challenged him to battle, two months afterwards. He took up his winter quarters at **Valley Forge,** on the south bank of the river Schuylkill.

4 Oct.

VALLEY FORGE.

58. **The winter at Valley Forge** has been celebrated for the hardships endured, and for the resolution which triumphed over despondency and peril. The hardships were great. They have since been exceeded and more patiently borne. The resolution displayed was due chiefly to the firmness of Washington. The army was scanty in numbers,* weak, disheartened, and unfurnished for the severities of the climate. More than a fourth of the men were "barefoot, and otherwise naked." Blankets and clothing were alike wanting.

* In February, 1778, there were only five thousand men fit for duty to be found in camp.

Food was scarce, even amid the abundance of the country around them. Dirt and misery produced disease. The rude log huts, disposed like the streets of a town, sheltered eleven thousand men, most of whom straggled off and disappeared in this period of distress. Washington shared the sorrows of his men, and bore with serenity more trying sorrows of his own. He was exposed to calumny, jealousy, and intrigue. His officers deserted him, charges were multiplied against him, and efforts were made to remove him from the chief command. One of his bitterest assailants was made Inspector-General. This new appointee was soon succeeded by Baron Steuben, whose energy and intelligence drilled the disorganized troops into efficient soldiers. In all trial, in all doubt, in all gloom, Washington preserved his cool judgment, his steady determination, his unselfish patriotism.

BARON STEUBEN.

MEASURES OF CONGRESS.

59. **Congress had been busily employed** during these grave military transactions. It appointed a new Committee of War, with Gates at its head. It adopted the "**Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union,**" which did not receive the assent of the several colonies till 1781. It endeav-

ored to restore the value of the currency, which had already fallen to a quarter of its nominal value. It took indiscreet and ineffectual measures for the accomplishment of this object. It also decreed the amount of the contributions to be furnished respectively by the States of the Confederation, for the general purposes of the Union.

FOURTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1778.

60. **The alliance with France was completed** during the winter. The war ceased to be simply a struggle between the mother country and her colonies. Hostilities were no longer confined to America. The treaty stipulated "the effectual maintaining of the liberty, sovereignty, and independence of the Thirteen United States of America, as well in matters of government as of commerce." Independence had indeed become the determination of the main part of the American people. The excesses of the British Government, the severities of the military, the ravages and outrages of the war, the savage deeds of the Indians, had embittered their feelings and rooted out old attachments. Their long resistance while conducting the war alone, gave them renewed confidence now that they had the avowed support of France.

1778. 6 Feb.

THE DEATH OF CHATHAM.

61. **The British had already sacrificed** twenty thousand men and £25,000,000 in the effort to reëstablish their authority. They had recovered nothing beyond the range of their guns. Henceforth France was enlisted in the war. Independence seemed to be assured. Proposals of conciliation, supported in Parliament by the Duke of Richmond, were rejected, because they did not concede independence. When Richmond moved his resolutions, they were opposed by Chatham, in Chatham's last speech. The old earl, recently risen from a sick-bed, feeble with age and tottering with gout, rested

on his son and his son-in-law, and denounced the proposal in the House of Lords.* When he attempted a second reply, he swooned, and was carried from the hall. He died a month later, and was buried at the public expense in Westminster Abbey.

CONDITION OF GREAT BRITAIN.

62. The situation of Great Britain was alarming. The hope of subjugating the Americans had vanished from nearly every mind except from the mind of the stubborn and half-witted king. Lord North, the Prime Minister, was in despair. He desired to close the war, and was restrained from resigning his high office only by the personal entreaty of his sovereign. The war was fearfully expensive. Commerce and manufactures were crippled by it. The revenues were overtaxed. The national debt was becoming insupportable. The army in America was recruited with difficulty. A new and greater war was now to

SIR HENRY CLINTON.

* In this speech he said, "I am old and infirm; I have one foot, more than one foot, in the grave. I rejoice that the grave has not closed upon me; that I am still able to vote against the dismemberment of this ancient and most noble monarchy Let us at least make one effort, and if we must fall, let us fall like men!"

be added to the older one, and it was strongly apprehended that other enemies would spring up.*

63. Sir William Howe had served reluctantly against the Americans. His resignation was at length accepted. He was succeeded by Sir Henry Clinton,† who was accompanied by the Earl of Carlisle and other peace commissioners. A singular incident arose out of this vain effort at conciliation. The young Lafayette challenged the earl, for harsh reflections on the King of France, in one of his communications. The challenge was of course declined by Carlisle, who answered that he was responsible for his public acts only to his own sovereign.

RECOVERY OF PHILADELPHIA AND BATTLE OF MONMOUTH.

64. Philadelphia could not be held by the British, as a French fleet of twelve vessels of the line was expected in the Delaware. The city was evacuated as soon as the peace negotiations proved hopeless. The army crossed the river, and moved slowly towards New York. The heavy stores were sent round by sea. Washington left Valley Forge, with a force nearly equal to Clinton's, and hung on his retreating steps. He overtook the British rear at **Monmouth Court-House.** General Charles Lee, who led the advance, was ordered to make an immediate attack, if possible; and was promised speedy support. The engagement was begun with spirit, and resisted with courage. Lee withdrew to await the arrival of the main body. The retiring troops were closely pressed by the British, and thrown into some confusion. Washington rode up and re-

1778. 28 June.

* A contemporary annalist, who was surely Burke, observed: "In this double warfare with old friends and old enemies, not only bereaved of her natural strength, but a great part of it turned against her, she (*Britain*) is left alone to endure the unequal combat, abandoned by all mankind, and without even the pretence of a friend, or the name of an ally in the world."

† Sir Henry Clinton (–1795), son of George Clinton, Governor of New York in 1743, and grandson of the Earl of Lincoln.

buked Lee with harshness and passion.* He rallied the disordered lines, drew up the main body, and renewed the battle. The British were repulsed, but no further advantage was gained. The men were worn out, the heat was excessive, and night was at hand. Fifty-nine soldiers had perished by heat alone. The British retreated during the night to the high grounds of Neversink.† The march through the Jerseys cost them two thousand men.

65. **The French fleet,** commanded by Count D'Estaing (*des-tang'*), appeared on the coast at the time of Clinton's retreat to New York. An attack on that city was proposed, but was deemed unadvisable. D'Estaing sailed against Newport. Greene‡ and Lafayette marched against it, with ten thousand men. Lord Howe followed D'Estaing. A storm separated the fleets after an indecisive action. The French vessels were much damaged, and sought Boston for repairs. They were pursued by the British, who had also suffered serious injury. Sullivan was compelled to renounce the investment of Newport. Next day Clinton landed with four thousand men from New York, for its defence.

THE MASSACRE OF WYOMING.

66. **Little was achieved on either side by this campaign.** The peace negotiations retarded its opening. Both parties were sorely straitened for means, and anxious about the results of the French alliance. Philadelphia was regained by the patriots, and New Jersey cleared of the British. That was all. But the year was rendered memorable by a tale of Indian

---

* For his conduct in this battle, Lee was tried by a court martial, and was suspended for twelve months. He was afterwards dismissed from the army in consequence of disputes with Washington.

† The peninsula of Neversink had been cut off from the mainland, and converted into an island, during the preceding winter, by a breach of the sea.

‡ Nathaniel Greene (1740–1786) was of Quaker parentage. He took up arms after the battle of Lexington, and was commissioned as a brigadier. He accompanied Arnold in the terrible march to Quebec. He died in Georgia of sunstroke. He was buried at Savannah, but his tomb is wholly unknown.

horrors, and by a very different tale of Virginia daring and adventure. **The Vale of Wyoming,** and the massacre perpetrated there, have been commemorated in verse by one of the most polished English poets, with more grace than accuracy :

> On Susquehanna's side, fair Wyoming !
> Although the wild flower on thy ruined wall,
> And roofless homes, a sad remembrance bring
> Of what thy gentle people did befall ;
> Yet thou wert once the loveliest land of all
> That see the Atlantic wave thy morn restore.

67. The Valley of Wyoming lies on both sides of the Susquehanna, below the junction of the Lackawanna. It is inclosed between two mountain ranges. The soil is rich ; the climate pleasant and healthful. There is a charming intermixture of hill and glade, of meadow and upland. It was claimed by both Pennsylvania and Connecticut. It had been recently settled by emigrants from the latter province. The discords in regard to its ownership were succeeded at the Revolution by other and worse discords. The partisans of the royal cause were numerous, and complained of severe treatment from the more numerous advocates of independence. Many fled to the Indians, whom they instigated to plunder the settlements from which they were exiled. An assault on the valley was made in 1777. A more furious attack was made the ensuing summer. Colonel John Butler, one of the refugees, led a large body of Indians, and a larger body of Tories disguised as Indians, against the dwellers in Wyoming, who

WYOMING MONUMENT.

1778. 4 July.

had been lulled into security by treacherous devices. Most of the men of military age were absent with the army. The small force left behind was induced to leave the principal fort, were drawn into an ambush, surrounded, and cut to pieces. The savage host pushed on, took Fort Wyoming, and massacred the captives. Men, women, and children were brutally murdered. The few that escaped fled beyond the Delaware and the Hudson, and implored their kindred to avenge them. Vengeance was not delayed. Unadilla, a village occupied by Indians and Tories, was destroyed. Vengeance begets vengeance, and the settlement in the Cherry Valley, at the head of the Eastern Susquehanna, was surprised and laid waste by a savage attack.

THE CONQUEST OF THE NORTH-WEST.

68. The Virginia adventure was the conquest of the North-west. The British Government did not only employ Indian auxiliaries, but from the beginning of the war had incited the Indians to assail the long frontier from the St. Lawrence to the Chattahoo'chee. Virginia and Pennsylvania were specially endangered. Before Congress took any decided action, Colonel Clarke * marched against the Indians beyond the Ohio. He crossed that river, hastened inland, captured Kaskaskia and other places. Vincennes (*vin-sens'*) was taken by Hamilton, the British commander in that quarter. It was speedily recovered by Clarke, who took Hamilton prisoner and sent him to Virginia. The North-west was claimed as a conquest, and was annexed to Virginia as the County of Illinois.

* General George Rogers Clarke (1752-1818) was born in Virginia. He commanded a company in Dunmore's expedition, 1774. He removed to Kentucky in 1775. He applied to Congress and to Virginia for the reimbursement of his expenses in this conquest. His application was not granted. The State of Virginia presented him with a sword. He stuck the blade in the ground and broke it, saying: "Tell Virginia to pay her debts, and then vote honors to the men who served her." The State afterwards gave him thirty thousand acres of land, most of which he distributed among the creditors who had furnished the means for his important expedition.

TRANSFER OF THE WAR TO THE SOUTH.

69. The war so far had been indecisive. The Southern States had been abandoned, and had been apparently lost to Britain. The city of New York, Newport, and a few other places, with the country around them, constituted all that the British retained in the Middle and Eastern States. The Americans had received the surrender of Burgoyne, had regained Boston and Philadelphia, but had apparently made little impression on the British power. Even the alliance with France had produced small benefit and much dissatisfaction. Serious conflicts took place between the French and the Americans. It appeared to the British Government that important advantages might be expected from shifting the war to the rich Southern colonies, which chiefly upheld the financial credit of the Confederacy in Europe, and through which the Americans received most of their military and other supplies. This movement would, moreover, turn the flank and threaten the rear of the provinces.

70. Colonel Campbell and thirty-five hundred men were conveyed by the fleet to **Savannah.** General Prevost (*pre-vo'*) was ordered to join him from Florida, and to take command. Colonel Howe, who had twelve hundred men at Savannah, was assailed in front and rear, and completely defeated. The city was entered by the British at the end of December. Augusta was captured early in the next year; and Georgia was recovered by the British.

FIFTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1779.

71. The operations of the fifth campaign were trivial, but not without important effects. Small forces may produce as much result as large armies, when opposed only by small forces. Courage and sagacity may be as signally displayed with few men as with thousands. It is, however, true

that the success of the Revolution was largely due to "the physical difficulty" of penetrating the vast and unsettled country. The British warred against nature, as well as against the rights of freemen. They had expended immense resources, without adequate return. Their supplies of men, money, and materials were at a low ebb, when new and more powerful enemies were gathering for the fray. The condition of English affairs was deemed more perilous than had been known for a century. A strong detachment of Clinton's army had been sent to the West Indies. His reinforcements from England did not reach him till the end of August, when the campaigning season was nearly over. The British fleets were so reduced that they could not furnish convoys for the merchantmen, or prevent the dread of French ascendency in the British Channel. The Americans were scarcely better off. They could neither expel the British from the Northern ports nor offer effectual resistance in the South. The currency was wretchedly depreciated (see section 91). The finances were almost hopeless. Men were wanting for the armies. Means were equally wanting to arm, to maintain, and to pay them. It was a time of petty warfare and of irregular operations;—a time noted for the boldness of partisan chiefs and guerrilla bands.

GENERAL GREENE.

72. Georgia was overrun and occupied by the British, but they were not left undisturbed. Pickens * attacked a

* Colonel Andrew Pickens (1739–1817), was born in Pennsylvania, of Irish parents

body of North Carolina Tories on their way to Augusta, and hanged five of them for treason. Retaliation followed. The bitterness of the war was further envenomed. General Lincoln,* who now commanded in the South, obtained possession of Augusta, but was obliged to abandon it.

73. The British commander, Prevost, crossed the Savannah, drove Moultrie before him, and advanced upon Charleston. The rivers and swamps in that realm of swamps were all flooded, and communications were interrupted. The city was summoned to surrender. A proposal was made that the State should remain neutral, and have its fate determined by the issue of the war. The offer was rejected and the opportunity was lost. Defences had been thrown up, defenders arrived, and the British were obliged to retire. The summer's heat prevented further movements, which were not systematically resumed till the winter.

74. **A descent had been made on the Virginia coast,** while Prevost was proceeding against Charleston. Portsmouth, Gosport, and Norfolk were taken. A hundred and thirty merchantmen, eight small Virginia war vessels, and an unfinished frigate, were burnt. Three thousand hogsheads of tobacco, with other booty, were carried off. The damage inflicted was estimated at two millions of dollars.

75. **The commerce and the little navy of the colonies** received a heavy blow by this destruction. An active trade had been carried on under foreign flags. Privateers had been encouraged,† and had made numerous and valuable cap-

* General Benjamin Lincoln (1733-1810) was of Massachusetts. He was seriously wounded at Saratoga, and was taken prisoner at the surrender of Charleston.

† The Duke of Richmond stated in the House of Peers, 11th February, 1778, on moving resolutions for a suspension of arms, that the number of vessels captured by the Americans, and condemned as prizes, amounted to five hundred and fifty-nine, valued at $13,000,000.

The First Lord of the Admiralty said, about the same time, that the scarcity of seamen was due to the want of the American sailors who served to man the fleets. These he estimated at eighteen thousand, and, as they were serving on the opposite side, the practical difference amounted to thirty-six thousand men.

tures. A public navy had been early decreed by Congress. Three years before this time, Hopkins had been sent out with five frigates against the Bahamas. Earnest efforts had been made to build war vessels.

THE BON HOMME RICHARD AND THE SERAPIS.

76. John Paul Jones,* a Scotchman, acquired reputation by his daring at sea. In the preceding year he had attempted to burn Whitehaven, on the north-western coast of England, and had spread panic along the neighboring shores. He had then plundered the house of Lord Selkirk, by whom he had been formerly employed as a gardener. In the close of the present summer he encountered two British **23 Sept.** frigates. He lashed his vessel, the **Bon Homme Richard** (*bon om'ree-shar*) to his assailant, the *Serapis* (*ser-a'pis*), and endeavored to set it on fire. Both ships were at times in flames together. After a hotly contested action, the *Serapis* struck her flag. Jones's own vessel was sinking, and sank the next day.† He had transferred his crew to the captured ship. The other British frigate surrendered to one of Jones's flotilla, and he sailed to the Texel‡ with his prizes. A bitter correspondence ensued between the British ambassador and the Dutch Government, and contributed to add Holland to the enemies of England.

77. The northern campaign was of little importance. An invasion of Canada was projected, but was discouraged by Washington. Stony Point and Verplanck's Point,

---

* John Paul, who assumed the name of Jones (1747–1792), was appointed to the sea in the Virginia trade. He became commander of a slaver. In 1773, he settled in Virginia. He was in France, on public business, in 1786–7. He was made Rear-Admiral of the Russian squadron in the Baltic, in 1788; but, as sixty British officers in that fleet refused to serve with him, he was employed against the Turks. He died in Paris.

† The officers of the *Bon Homme Richard* were Americans, but the crew were mainly English, Irish, Scotch, Portuguese, Norwegians, Germans, Spaniards, Swedes, "Indians and Malays," with a few Sandwich Islanders.

‡ The Texel is an island of the North Sea, near the coast of Holland.

on opposite banks of the Hudson, were taken by Clinton in order to open the navigation of the river. General Wayne recaptured the former by a midnight attack. A few days later, Paulus Hook, opposite to New York City, was surprised by Major Henry Lee,* a young officer of high promise. Connecticut was ravaged by Governor Tryon. New Haven and other towns were burnt.

78. **General Sullivan was sent** with five thousand men **against the Six Nations,** to punish them for the outrages in the Wyoming and Cherry valleys. He routed them near Elmira in the Genesee Valley, the rich and cultivated domain of the Senecas. Eighteen villages were burnt, many more were devastated. The crops and the fruit-trees were destroyed, and the beautiful region was left desolate. The Indian settlements along the Alleghany River were ravaged by another expedition.

79. **Spain joined the alliance against England** during the summer.† France had advised the colonies to propose terms of peace. This they declined to do, as Canada, Nova Scotia, and the Newfoundland fisheries were not embraced in the proposals suggested. The war thus went on. Jay was appointed as ambassador to Spain, to negotiate for the free navigation of the Mississippi, and for a loan of five millions of dollars, to replenish the empty Federal treasury.

THE REPULSE AT SAVANNAH.

80. **The French fleet, under D'Estaing, sailed for Georgia,** after capturing Grenada, in the West Indies. It was intended to make an attack on New York, in concert with Washington, as soon as Savannah was reduced. D'Estaing

* Major-General Henry Lee (1756–1818), usually known as "Light-Horse Harry," was the commander of "Lee's Legion." He delivered the funeral oration over Washington. He never recovered from the injuries received in suppressing a riot in Baltimore. In 1808, he wrote "Memoirs of the War" of the Revolution.

† This alliance furnished the occasion for the celebrated but unsuccessful siege of Gibraltar, by the Spaniards and French, 1779–1783.

invested the town, and Lincoln marched to his support. A demand for the surrender of the place was rejected. The siege lingered. The time for maritime enterprises was passing away. The impetuous Frenchman insisted that the city should be stormed, or the siege raised. The assault was made and repulsed. D'Estaing was wounded. Pulaski received a fatal shot.* Sergeant Jasper was killed while planting the flag of South Carolina on the ramparts. D'Estaing sailed sullenly away. Lincoln went back to Charleston.

1779. 9 Oct.

81. Clinton prepared to carry out his designs against the southern colonies as soon as the menace to New York was removed with D'Estaing's failure. Washington placed his men in winter quarters at West Point, on the right bank of the Hudson, and at Morristown, in New Jersey. The winter was of unusual length and severity ; † and was of itself sufficient to prevent any important military operations in the north ; especially as both armies were very low in numbers in that quarter.

SIXTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1780.

82. Clinton sailed from New York for Charleston in the last days of December. He took with him five thousand soldiers, two thousand marines, and a fleet. He invested the city and demanded its surrender. The demand was rejected and the place was bombarded. The demand was repeated and again refused. The city was again cannonaded for two days. It then capitulated. A promiscuous body of troops, five or six thousand in number, four hundred pieces of artillery, four frigates, and other prizes, fell into the hands of the British. Scarcely any hostile

12 May.

* There is a monument to Pulaski in Savannah.

† "A winter unequalled in that climate for its length and severity. * * * The North River, with the straits and channels by which they are divided and surrounded, were everywhere clothed with ice of such strength and thickness, as would have admitted the passage of armies, with their heaviest carriages and artillery."—*Annual Register*, 1780.

force was left in the province, the provincial cavalry having been routed a month earlier at Monk's Corner.

83. Clinton called for a loyal militia, to hold and secure his conquest. He promised amnesty to all who renewed their allegiance. He denounced confiscation and other penalties against those who failed to accept his offer. Troops were dispatched in various directions without meeting an enemy. Colonel Buford's regiment of the Virginia line alone remained with its colors. It turned back when Charleston fell. Colonel Tarleton * pursued it with furious haste, overtook it at the Waxhaws,† cut it to pieces, slew one hundred and thirteen of the force, took two hundred, and had only five of his own men killed and twelve wounded. By the end of May, South Carolina seemed to be effectually subdued. Clinton so informed the Home Administration. He returned exultingly to New York, leaving Cornwallis with four thousand men to retain and extend the conquest.

THE BATTLE OF CAMDEN.

84. The speech from the throne mentioned "the late and prosperous turn of affairs." The fruits of war often wither in the hands that gather them. Armed men sprang up suddenly from the soil, and found bold and earnest chiefs to direct them. DeKalb had been ordered with the Maryland and Delaware troops to the relief of Charleston. He was superseded by Gates, who reached **Camden** with little molestation. Gates had four thousand men, but his effective force was reduced by details and by sickness, caused by living during the march on green corn and unripe peaches. Cornwallis had barely half this number, but he had been joined by Lord Rawdon,‡ and

* Sir Banastre Tarleton (1751–1833), a man of savage temper, served only in America, and closed his military career at Yorktown.

† The Waxhaws was a settlement on Waxhaw Creek, close to the North Carolina line.

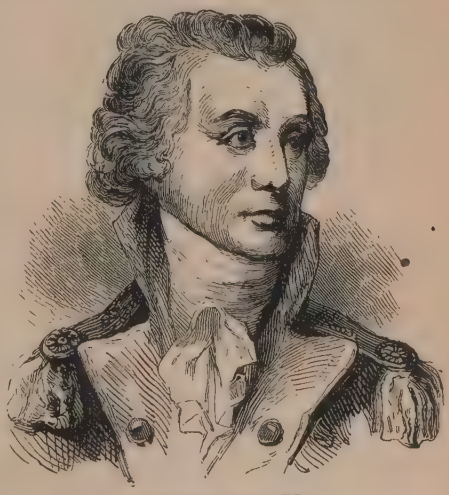
‡ Francis Rawdon Hastings (1754–1825), son of Earl Moira, was successively Lord Rawdon, Earl Moira, and Marquis of Hastings. He was Governor-General of India, 1812–1822.

concluded that "there was little to lose by a defeat and much to gain by a victory." Each commander planned a surprise in the darkness. About midnight the two armies blundered into each other. The battle opened at dawn. Most of the American militia ran at the first charge. DeKalb was slain, and the regulars were driven from the field. Two thousand of the vanquished were lost. Their artillery and baggage were abandoned. Gates escaped with a few companies to Charlotte, and thence hastened to Salisbury (*solz'ber-e*) and Hillsboro.

1780. 16 Aug.

THE GUERRILLA CHIEFS.

85. **General Sumter,*** a gallant leader of a partisan force, withdrew by rapid marches from an exposed position, on the flight of Gates. Tarleton pursued, scattered his eight hundred men by attacking them in the rear with one hundred and sixty. Gates was thus deprived of all hopes of rallying his forces. He had been followed by the remnant of the army defeated at Camden. He was brought to trial before a Court of Inquiry, and General Nathaniel Greene was named by Washington as his successor in command. The war was maintained in South Carolina only by Sumter, Marion, and other partisan chiefs.



GENERAL SUMTER.

* Thomas Sumter (1734–1832) was of Irish origin, and born either in Ireland, or in Albemarle County, Virginia, whence the family emigrated to South Carolina.

86. Francis Mar'ion* was a small, spare, silent, simple, hard-favored man; active, acute, and watchful. The swampy and sickly region between the Pedee and Santee rivers was the scene of his irritating warfare. From unsuspected hiding-places he darted upon weak posts or inviting convoys. General Sumter, who rendered almost equal service, was two years younger, larger, handsomer, and less cunning. General Andrew Pickens harassed the British stations and the loyalists round Augusta. These guerrilla chieftains were active along the border between the Carolinas.

FRANCIS MARION.

From such irregular warfare the Prussian Bulow conceived his ideal of an army of skirmishers.

THE BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

87. **The conquest of North Carolina was expected** to follow the recovery of South Carolina. Cornwallis advanced, spreading his troops abroad to repress patriotic movements,

---

*Francis Marion (1732–1795), "The Swamp Fox," as he was called, was almost uneducated. In 1759 he served against the Cherokees. He was in the battle on Sullivan's Island. He organized his partisan brigade after the battle of Camden.

When he first presented himself in the camp of General Gates, on the march to Camden, he and his motley followers presented a most uncouth and ludicrous appearance, and excited the laughter of the troops. His company consisted of twenty men and boys, white and black, with defective and grotesque equipments, wretchedly clothed, with small skin caps on their heads, but all of them mounted on horses as various, and, for the most part, as shabby as themselves.

and to quicken Tory zeal. On the left wing of his army, Colonel Ferguson, an officer of great energy and courage, assembled the Tories from the western and central districts of both provinces. He retired before Colonels Shelby,* Campbell,† and Sevier (*se-veer'*),‡ who were leading against him the musters from the Holston, Clinch, and New River valleys. He was assailed at **King's Mountain,**§ a strong position on the edge of the two Carolinas. Three assaults were repulsed with the bayonet; but one hundred and fifty of his best and bravest men fell by the rifles of the mountaineers. Ferguson was slain. The survivors, eight hundred in number, surrendered. Many of the captives were hanged. The left flank of Cornwallis was exposed by this event. He marched back to Winnsborough, in South Carolina. This was a heavy reverse. The partisan corps were cheered. Hope was revived throughout the land. Time was afforded for Greene to gather and reorganize his command.

1780. 7 Oct.

REINFORCEMENTS FROM FRANCE.

88. **The northern armies were greatly reduced** in numbers, and were almost idle during the season. Events of grave interest transpired. Lafayette returned home to accept a commission as Major-General in the army destined for the invasion of Britain, and to solicit increased assistance for the Americans. Count Rochambeau (*rosh-am-bō'*) brought to

* General Isaac Shelby (1750–1826) was originally from Maryland. He was with his father at the battle of Point Pleasant. He was the first governor of Kentucky, in 1802, and governor again in 1812.

† General William Campbell (1746–1781) was an officer of distinction, and of still greater promise. He died young. He died of fever in Hanover County, Va., on his way to join Lafayette before Yorktown.

‡ General John Sevier (1740–1815) was of French descent. The original family name was Xavier. He was in the battle of Point Pleasant. He was elected governor of the transitory "State of Frankland," and was the first governor of Tennessee.

§ King's Mountain received its name from a settler of the name of King, who dwelt at its foot. The range is a low elevation, running from north-east to south-west, partly in North Carolina, and partly in South Carolina. The ridge is sixteen miles long. The place where the battle was fought is in the north of York District, South Carolina, about a mile and a half south of the North Carolina line. The summit at that place is only sixty feet above the level of the country.

Newport harbor six thousand troops, and seven ships of the line, with frigates and transports. Six British men-of-war prepared to pursue them. On these Clinton embarked six thousand soldiers to assail the French at Newport. The troops were soon disembarked, from apprehension of an attack on New York by Washington. The fleet proceeded on its way, and blockaded the French vessels at their moorings. The second division of the French fleet was blockaded in the harbor of Brest. Little advantage had yet been derived from the French alliance. There was hazard that no American army could be raised for the next year. Washington, therefore, visited Rochambeau at Newport, to devise a plan for future operations.

GENERAL MORGAN.

ARNOLD'S TREASON.

89. Washington's absence was used for the execution of a treacherous design. General Arnold commanded the fort at West Point, which guarded the upper Hudson. He had won admiration and renown by his daring, and popular favor by his services and wounds. His character did not inspire confidence. He was a disappointed man; he was extravagant; he was greedy, and distrustful of the event of the struggle. He had already been in correspondence with Clinton. He had sought and obtained from Washington the command of West Point in order to betray it.

Major André* (*an'drd*), an amiable young officer of varied accomplishments, was persuaded to meet Arnold for the purpose of completing the arrangements for the betrayal of the fort. He was conveyed up the Hudson to the neighborhood of the American lines. He was induced by Arnold to enter the lines; and he imprudently delayed his return. The next night he could not reach the British sloop which was watching in the stream. He was forced to go back to New York by land, and in disguise. He had, apparently, passed all danger, when he was seized near Tarrytown, a place between the lines. Important papers, in regard to the delivery of the fort, were found in his stockings. He was detained. He was tried by court-martial, and was sentenced to be hanged as a spy. Clinton made every effort to save him. Every effort was vain, as he would not deliver up Arnold in exchange.† The sentence was confirmed. André was hanged, despite his entreaties to be shot as a soldier. Arnold heard of André's capture in time to make his escape. He entered the British service, lived in contempt, and died near London. His sons drew British pensions as late as 1838.

1780, 2 Oct.

GREAT BRITAIN AND HER ENEMIES IN EUROPE.

90. **Holland united her armies with the allied States** at the close of the year. This intervention in the war proved to be Holland's ruin, but was of slight advantage to the confederated colonies. The entrance of Spain into the conflict caused grievous losses to that country, and augmented Eng-

* John André (1757–1780) was of a Swiss family from Geneva. He was handsome, elegant, and abounding in wit and humor. The composition of "Yankee Doodle" has been ascribed to him. A monument in his honor was erected in Westminster Abbey by George III. The inscription declared him "universally beloved and esteemed in the army in which he served, and lamented even by his foes." His remains were removed to the abbey in 1821.

† It was between the capture and execution of André that Sergeant Champe, of Virginia, deserted, with the permission of Washington, and made a desperate attempt to kidnap Arnold in the city of New York. This daring adventure furnishes the foundation of Cooper's novel, "The Spy."

land's burdens, without producing any improvement in American affairs. The British and American armies were idle in the north. In the south, Georgia and South Carolina had been regained by the forces of Britain. Virginia might probably be recovered in another campaign. With the richer half of the Union shorn away, speedy and complete triumph might be anticipated. But Britain was at war with the world. She had to contend with France, Spain, and Holland, as well as with her own colonies. The northern powers assumed a hostile attitude towards her, by the Armed Neutrality,* which Catharine of Russia was tricked into signing, after having offered her aid for the subjugation of the American insurgents. The long and desperate siège of Gibraltar by the Spaniards and the French taxed the energies and consumed the resources of Britain. Her commerce was declining; her taxation becoming more burdensome; her crops had failed, and her financial condition was rendered alarming by the enormous growth of the national debt. The spirit of the people was profoundly depressed. The Americans had time, nature, extent of waste territory, and the chances of the future on their side. Their greatest difficulty and their chief danger lay in the worthlessness of their currency, and in the uncertainty of the State contributions to the expenses of the war.

PINE-TREE SHILLING.†

THE PAPER MONEY OF THE REVOLUTION.

91. The Revolutionary War furnished neither the first nor the last example of an attempt to sustain a gov-

* The Armed Neutrality was a coalition of the Northern States of Europe, in 1780, to resist any naval aggression on neutral rights. It was directed against Britain.

† No coins were struck by the General Government till after the Revolutionary War. The only metallic money previously made was the small coinage of Massachusetts, coined from 1652 to 1686, of which the "Pine-tree Shilling" was a part.

ment, and to maintain armies, by paper promises to pay specified sums, as soon as the uncertain issue of war might prove favorable. Such notes have always declined in value. The

The United Colonies
SIX DOLLARS
No 45541
SIX DOLLARS
THIS Bill entitles the Bearer to receive SIX SPANISH MILLED DOLLARS, or the Value thereof in GOLD or SILVER, according to a Resolution of CONGRESS published at Philadelphia Nov 2. 1776.
W Gibson
I Franklin
PERSEVERANDO
SIX DOLLARS
Continental Currency
SIX DOLLARS

CONTINENTAL PAPER MONEY.

United States began by issuing two millions of paper dollars in the summer of 1775. By the end of 1779 they had issued two hundred millions. The value of the notes was well kept up till twenty millions had been issued. When two hundred millions were abroad, thirty dollars of Continental currency were worth only one silver dollar. The old notes were called in, to be exchanged for **notes of a new tenor,** at the rate of forty of the old for one of the new.* The notes of the old and of the new tenor fell together. In 1781, one hundred dollars in paper were given for one dollar in specie; then, five hundred; finally, a thousand.† Both old and new vanished from circulation. The stoppage of hostilities by the surrender

* The procedure and experience of revolutionary currency was exactly paralleled by those of the French Revolution and of the Southern Confederacy.

† A tavern dinner cost $500; a pair of boots, $900; the shoeing of a horse, $700, and a sorry cow was purchased with a sulky-box crammed with Continental paper.

of Cornwallis, the promise of peace, and a return to a specie basis, slowly restored the finances of the country.

SEVENTH YEAR OF THE REVOLUTION, 1781.

92. **The last year of actual war opened with deepening gloom.** Officers were unpaid, and threw up their commissions. Veterans went home, and left their places to be ineffectually filled by recruits and raw levies. The soldiers refused the Continental currency, though unfed, unclothed, and unpaid. They had been without adequate supplies for months, and were aggrieved. The Pennsylvania regiments revolted in their winter quarters. Two Connecticut regiments did the same thing. A mutiny of the New Jersey troops was suppressed by Washington. It was impossible to keep up the numbers of the dissolving army. "The Articles of Confederation" were, however, at length accepted by Maryland, and the country had a Constitution and a prescribed form of government. Some improvement of the finances might also be hoped for, after Robert Morris * had been appointed to superintend them, and to restore transactions to a specie basis. A National Bank was also projected. Immediate wants were supplied by Morris, by an advance from the French military chest, and by a small Dutch loan.

93. **The important operations of 1781 were confined to the Southern country.** They were decisive. Three thousand British troops had been sent, the last autumn, to Norfolk, in Virginia, but had been ordered round to Charleston. In the first days of the new year, Arnold, now a British Major-General, sailed up James River with a small force, to aid the projected movements of Cornwallis. Richmond was occupied without a battle, and plundered. Mr. Jefferson, then

* Robert Morris (1733-1806) was born in England, but was brought to America in childhood, and was educated in Philadelphia. He acquired a vast fortune by mercantile pursuits, but died comparatively poor. He often raised on his own personal credit the means that Washington, or Congress, urgently needed.

governor, and most of the richer citizens, had promptly fled. The invaders fell back to Portsmouth. General Phillips came with additional troops and assumed the command. After a skirmish with Steuben and the militia, he occupied Petersburg, and destroyed much tobacco and other property. He moved on Richmond, but Lafayette had arrived with a body of regulars. He turned aside, devastated plantations, and died. Arnold resumed the command in Virginia, and waited for Cornwallis to arrive.

CORNWALLIS THREATENS NORTH CAROLINA.

94. **Cornwallis had spent the winter in preparing** for a renewed attempt **to subjugate North Carolina.** General Greene, after reorganizing the American forces, resolved to anticipate this attempt. He advanced to Cheraw, where he posted his main body, and stationed Morgan, with a thousand men, at the confluence of the Pacolet (*pak-o-let'*) with the Broad River. Tarleton hastened to dislodge this body Morgan withdrew to more favorable ground, at a place called **The Cowpens.*** The attack was boldly made and boldly repelled. Colonel Washington engaged Tarleton, hand to hand, and wounded him severely.†

THE CHASE OF MORGAN.

95. **Morgan hurried towards Virginia** with his prisoners. Cornwallis pursued. Morgan crossed the Catawba one morning. A heavy rain prevented Cornwallis from crossing in the evening. The British were similarly checked at the

* The name of The Cowpens was given to the scene of Morgan's exploit, because it was not distant from well-known inclosures, where the cattle, which had grazed through the summer on the abundant pastures of Thicketty Mountain, were collected by their owners in the fall of the year, to be sorted for slaughtering as beef, or for keeping through the winter.

† William Augustine Washington (1751–1810) was of Virginia, and a relative of General Washington. He settled in South Carolina at the close of the Revolution. Tarleton having spoken with contempt of Washington's inability to write, a lady replied that "he knew how to make his mark."

Yadkin. Greene spurred one hundred and fifty miles across the country, and joined Morgan before he had reached the Yadkin. He ordered his main force at Cheraw to hasten to Guilford Court-House. Here he joined it with Morgan's command. The retreat was continued beyond the Dan River. For the third time in this long race the Americans escaped, Cornwallis reaching the stream as Greene's rear-guard passed over. North Carolina seemed to be secured by the British.

BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURT-HOUSE.

96. **Greene fell behind the Dan** to gather from Virginia reinforcements, which made his army twice, perhaps more than twice, as large as that of his opponent. The hostile forces met at **Guilford Court-House.** The North Carolina militia, which included Tories forced into the ranks; the Virginians, and the Maryland line (Continental troops) were driven from the field. The rout was arrested by the other troops, and by Colonel Washington's horse. Greene withdrew. The doubtful victory did not benefit Cornwallis. His army was broken; his men were starving. He retired to Wilmington, and was harassed on his retreat by Colonel Harry Lee.

1781. 15 March.

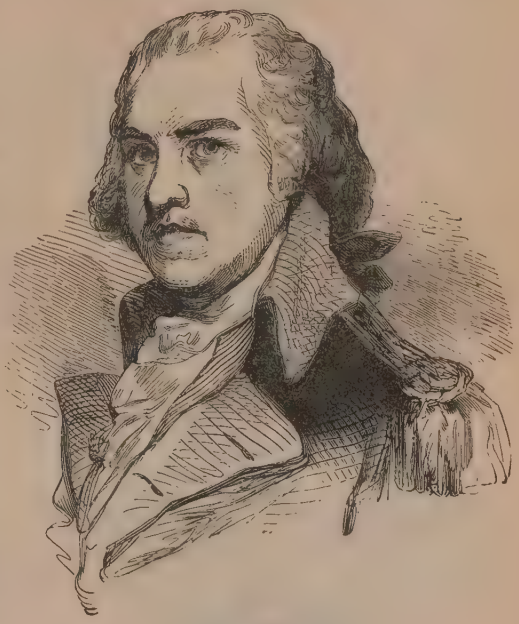
HOBKIRK'S HILL.

97. **A bold dash for the recovery of South Carolina** was made by Greene, as Lord Cornwallis was no longer in his front. He planted himself at **Hobkirk's Hill,** near Camden. Lord Rawdon, who had been left in charge of the Southern province, hoped to surprise him by a flank attack, but was foiled at first. The American centre was, however, crushed in, and Greene ordered a retreat. Rawdon was imperilled by the successes of Marion and Lee in his rear, and by the resumption of arms throughout the districts behind him. He returned to Charleston, and the country beyond the Santee was lost to him.

1781. 25 April.

THE EXECUTION OF COLONEL HAYNE.

98. The passions of Whigs and Tories rendered the war peculiarly violent and bitter in the Carolinas. Atrocities were committed on both sides. Colonel Isaac Hayne,* a gentleman of high character and position, was captured, accused of violating his pledges, and hanged without a legal trial. Greene threatened retaliation, but active hostilities were closed before the threat was executed.



COLONEL HENRY LEE.

THE BATTLE OF EUTAW SPRINGS.

99. Carolina did not remain much longer under British control. An indecisive action took place at Eutaw Springs † near the Santee River, between General Greene and Colonel Stewart, the successor of Rawdon. The forces were nearly equal, and the battle was hotly contested. Both sides claimed the victory;

1781. 8 Sept.

* Isaac Hayne (1745–1781) was a wealthy planter. He accepted British protection, and took the oath of allegiance. Summoned to take arms on the British side, he refused, and joined the patriot bands. He was captured and put to death.

† Eutaw Springs is the name given to a small stream, about two miles in length,

but Stewart was shut up within the narrow strip of land between the Ashley and Cooper rivers, and the war in this region was virtually ended.

THE FAILURE OF CORNWALLIS.

100. Cornwallis marched on Virginia when Greene proceeded southwards. He joined Arnold at Petersburg. He sent Simcoe and Tarleton to seize Governor Jefferson, break up the Virginia Assembly at Charlottesville, and destroy the public works on the Rivanna. From his residence on the summit of Monticello, which commanded a wide view of the surrounding country, Jefferson saw Tarleton's dragoons crossing the river below, and escaped. The Assembly adjourned to Staunton, beyond the Blue Ridge. Cornwallis drew down toward the seaboard, as the Americans gathered round him, and intrenched himself at **Yorktown,** where he had access to the sea, and awaited anxiously reinforcements from Clinton, and a British fleet.

CORNWALLIS.

101. The French fleet was also expected on the Amer-

---

which empties into the river Santee, near the north-western corner of Charleston district. It bursts out at the foot of a low hill, cold, clear, and sparkling, and in sufficient volume to turn a mill. After running fifty or sixty yards, it plunges into a cavern, and flows underground for about thirty rods, then reappears, and runs into the Santee.

ican coasts. An attack on New York was contemplated. It was abandoned, as the French admiral sailed for Chesapeake Bay. Washington, in consequence, determined to invest Cornwallis by land and by sea. Concealing his purpose and continuing his menaces against New York, he gathered the French and American forces at the head of the Chesapeake, and transported the greater part of them in French and other vessels to the neighborhood of Williamsburg.

102. **De Grasse* arrived in the Chesapeake** with twenty-eight French men-of-war, and reinforced Lafayette with three thousand French troops under the Marquis de St. Simon (*see-mong'*). A partial naval engagement enabled the French fleet from Newport to enter the bay in safety. After manœuvring for five days, the British admirals sailed away to New York to repair damages, and left Cornwallis to his fate. The outlet by sea was closed to him

THE SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

103. **He was shut up on the land side also.** He had about eight thousand men. He was closely invested by Washington and Rochambeau with sixteen thousand, exclusive of militia. Half of this investing force was French. The outworks were carried by a vigorous assault, in which French and Americans emulated each other.† Neither the promised aid from Clinton, nor the British fleet, came to the relief of Cornwallis. He made a desperate attempt to cross the York River, with the hope of cutting his way through to Clinton. A furious storm frustrated the bold experiment. He surrendered his

* Francis Joseph Paul, Count De Grasse (1723–1788). His flagship, the *Ville de Paris*, mounted one hundred and sixteen guns, and was the largest vessel afloat. He was utterly defeated next year, in the West Indies, by Admiral Rodney. He and his huge ship were captured. He was disgraced. The *Ville de Paris* foundered at sea.

† Alexander Hamilton led the American attack; Lafayette, the French.

Governor Nelson, who commanded the Virginia militia, five thousand in number, turned the batteries on his own house, the best in the place, supposing it to be occupied by Cornwallis.

whole army, and with it surrendered the last chance of recovering the insurgent colonies. The surrender took place on the 19th of October, 1781. Cornwallis gave sickness as an excuse for not appearing in person. General Washington, with fine feeling, deputed General Lincoln, who had capitulated at Charleston, to receive the sword of General O'Hara, who acted for the British commander.

1781. 19 Oct.

104. Clinton sailed from New York, on the day of the surrender, with seven thousand men and twenty-five ships of the line.* He was too late—and returned.

105. The war was over, though hostilities on a very small scale were still languidly continued. The stubbornness of George III., and the widespread contention with France, Spain, and Holland, prevented the prompt restoration of peace. It was at once recognized that independence must be conceded to the colonies in arms. Lord North's administration was terminated after twelve disastrous years. Provisional articles of peace between England and the United Colonies were signed at Paris. These were confirmed the next year, 1783, by the general Peace of Paris.†

1782. 30 Nov.

106. England had lost one hundred thousand men, and had increased her national debt $300,000,000, in the attempt to subdue her offended colonies. France had wasted much treasure, and hastened her own fearful revolution. Spain had displayed her utter impotence. Holland had ruined herself by her brief intrusion into the conflict. The United States were

---

* William IV., of England, then a midshipman, was with this fleet.

† The provisional articles were signed at Paris, 30th Nov., 1782; the preliminaries of peace at Versailles, 20th Jan., 1783; the definitive treaty at Paris, 3d Sept., 1783.

When Dr. Franklin proceeded to court to affix his signature, he dressed himself in the suit which he had worn when Wedderburn had so coarsely vituperated him in the Council Chamber, in London, 29th Jan., 1774.

The first man to welcome John Adams, the first U. S. ambassador to London, was General Oglethorpe, who had founded Georgia half a century before.

When Mr. Adams was presented as ambassador to George III., 1st June, 1785, the king said: "I was the last man in the kingdom to consent to the independence of America; but now that it is granted, I shall be the last man in the world to sanction a violation of it."

exhausted. They owed $5,000,000 to France, and $2,000,000 to Holland. They had a boundless country, a rich soil, energy, and confident hope—and they had won their independence.

WASHINGTON SURRENDERS HIS COMMISSION.

107. The cessation of hostilities was proclaimed on

MOUNT VERNON.

the anniversary of the battle of Lexington. Washington bid farewell to the officers of the revolutionary army, and gave back his commission as Commander-in-chief to the Congress assembled at Annapolis. He returned to his home at Mount Vernon, on the banks of the broad Potomac, to attend to his ample plantations

1783. 23 Dec.

and domestic interests, and to watch anxiously the progress of the States which his prudence and fortitude had made free. His private affairs required close attention, for he had declined all pay in his high and arduous office, and had accepted nothing beyond his actual expenses.

CONDITION OF THE COUNTRY.

108. The two years following the surrender of Yorktown had brought perils more alarming than the hazards of the battle-field. The public debt reached seventy millions of dollars, and there were no visible means of paying it. Eighty-four millions, at least, of Continental currency were worthless in the hands of the holders. The armies, still kept on foot, were destitute, and Congress was unable to satisfy their just demands. They proposed to assert their claims by arms. The troops at Newburgh offered the crown to Washington. It was quietly but firmly put aside. New disturbances were repressed by his care and resolution. Peace and independence were won ; but much was required before prosperity could be regained. The National Bank, lately established, afforded the prospect of some relief to the public finances, and to the miserable financial condition of the country.*

THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE UNITED STATES.—1783–1789.

109. Everything had been thrown into confusion by the war. Private and public fortunes seemed wrecked alike. The ties which feebly held together the confederated States snapped as soon as danger was removed. Each community

* The National Bank was projected by Robert Morris, in May, 1781. It did not go into operation till 7th Jan., 1782. Its constitutionality was questioned from the first.

II. SYNCHRONAL CHART OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.—1763–1783.

CONTEMPORANEOUS SOVEREIGNS OF EUROPE.

GREAT BRITAIN.	FRANCE.	SPAIN.	GERMANY.	PRUSSIA.	RUSSIA.
1760–1820, George III.	1715–1774, Louis XV.	1759–1788, Charles III.	1765–1790, Joseph II.	1740–1786, Fred'k. II.	1762–1796, Catharine II.
	1774–1793, Louis XVI.				

THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.—1763–1783.

THE UNITED COLONIES.	GREAT BRITAIN.	THE CONTINENT OF EUROPE.
1763. "The Parsons' Case." Patrick Henry.		
	1764. April 5, The Sugar Act.	
	1765. March 22, The Stamp Act.	
	1766. " 18, Repeal of the Stamp Act.	
	1767. June 29, Tax on Tea, Glass, etc.	1768–1774. War of Russia and Turkey.
	1768. Troops sent to Boston.	
	" May 10, The Wilkes Riots.	
	1769–1772. The Letters of Junius.	
	1770. Jan. 28, Lord North, Prime Minister.	
1770. March 5, "The Boston Massacre."	" Mar. 5, Repeal of duties, except on tea.	
1772. Massachusetts put under Martial Law.		1772. First Partition of Poland.
1773. Dec. 16, The Boston Tea Party.		
1774. Aug. 1, Non-Importation Agreement.		
" Sept. 4, The First Continental Congress.	1774. The Boston Port Bill.	
" Oct. 10, The Battle of Point Pleasant.	" The Quebec Bill.	

1775. Dec. 31, Attack on Quebec.
1776. March 4, Boston capitulated to the American troops.
" July 4, The Declaration of Independence.
" Aug. 27, The Battle of Long Island.
" Oct. 4, The Articles of Confederation.
" Dec. 26, The Surprise of Trenton.
1777. Jan. 3, The Battle of Princeton.
" Sept. 11. The Battle of the Brandywine.
" " 26, Philadelphia occupied by the British.
" Oct. 4, The Battle of Germantown.
" " 17, The Surrender of Burgoyne.
1777–1778. The Winter at Valley Forge.
1778. Feb. 6, The Treaty of Alliance with France.
" June 18, Philadelphia recovered.
" " 28, The Battle of Monmouth.
" July 4, The Massacre of Wyoming.
" Dec. 29, Savannah taken by the British.
1778–1779. The Conquest of Illinois by Clarke.
1779. Oct. 9, Attack of the Americans and French on Savannah repulsed

1778. War of Great Britain and France.

1779. War with Spain.

1779–82. The siege of Gibraltar frustrated.

1780. War with Holland.

1781. Florida conquered from the British by Spain.

1782. Mar. 19, Resignation of Lord North.
" April 12, Naval victory of Lord Rodney over the Count De Grasse.

1782. Nov. 30, Preliminaries of Peace between the United States and Great Britain.

1783. April 19, Suspension of arms.

1783. Sept. 3, Definitive Treaty of Peace between Great Britain, France, Spain, Holland, and the United States.

" Dec. 23, Washington surrenders his commission.

1788. Feb. 6, Treaty of Alliance with the United Colonies.

1778–9. War of the Bavarian Succession.
1779. French Scheme for the Invasion of England.
" June 16, Spain declares war against England.
1779–82. The siege of Gibraltar.

1780. The Armed Neutrality.

" Holland at war with Britain.

sought its own interest, careless of joint duties, joint obligations, and the joint welfare. France was sullen and jealous. England expected that the difficulties and necessities of the enfranchised confederation would compel it to renew the old allegiance. There was no central power. Congress was only a provisional arrangement. The "Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union" were impotent. There were no means of regulating foreign or domestic trade, of forming engagements with other governments, of enforcing general laws, of collecting taxes, imposts, or contributions, or of procuring a Federal revenue.

THE SHAYS REBELLION.

110. **A rebellion broke out in Massachusetts,** in consequence of the heavy taxes levied to pay off the debts of the State. Two thousand men, under Daniel Shays, a captain in the late war, took up arms and seized Worcester and other towns. They were promptly put down in a short winter campaign. This insurrection revealed the general anarchy and the general insecurity, and showed the need of a more settled organization for the whole country

THE NEW CONSTITUTION.

111. **Washington suggested,** and the Virginia Assembly recommended, a convention to devise a plan of regulating commerce. A few delegates met at Annapolis. Only five States were represented. The meeting separated in consequence, recommending another convention with larger scope and ampler powers. The second convention met in Philadelphia, under the sanction of Congress. After four months of anxious labors, the Constitution of the United States, nearly as it existed till 1861, was framed, and was directed to be submitted to a convention in each State for adoption.

1786. 11 Sept.

1787. 14 May.

112. **The Constitution was an assemblage of com-**

promises, unsatisfactory in divers particulars to the men who devised it, and containing many germs of future discords. It was anxiously discussed in the State Conventions. It was earnestly advocated by Hamilton,* Madison, and Jay, in a series of able essays, which were collected under the name of The Federalist. It was strenuously opposed in Virginia by Patrick Henry and George Mason; and in New York, by the President of its Convention, George Clinton, then Governor of the State.† Nine States were required for its ratification. This number was completed by the assent of New Hampshire. Virginia and New York followed; North Carolina ratified it conditionally a fortnight later; Rhode Island delayed her action for two years longer.

113. George Washington was chosen President by the unanimous choice of the electors. John Adams was elected Vice-President. The old Continental Congress was dissolved. The first Congress under the new Constitution met at New York, on the 4th of March, 1789.

THE NORTH-WESTERN TERRITORY.

114. The royal charters to the English colonies frequently extended their lines from the Atlantic to the Pacific. Virginia claimed the fertile region between the Ohio, the Mississippi, and the lakes as her own conquest. Conflicting interests and prospective dangers were thus presented. To preserve tranquillity and to promote the settlement of these wide lands, it was deemed expedient to transfer them to the general Government. The cessions were made. Virginia gave up her

---

* Alexander Hamilton (1757–1804) was highly distinguished from the opening of the Revolution. He was born in the British West Indies, and was sent to New York at an early age for his education. In 1777 he became aid to Washington. In 1789, he was the first Secretary of the Treasury. He was killed by Aaron Burr, in a duel, at Weehawken.

† "The great dread * * * seems to have been that the reserved powers of the States would be absorbed by those of the Federal Government, and a consolidated power established."—*President Harrison's Inaugural*, 1841.

conquest. An **ordinance** was drawn up, by Dane of Massachusetts, for the regulation of the territory north-west of the Ohio. The sixth of its provisions enacted that "there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in the said territory, otherwise than in punishment of crimes whereof the party shall be duly convicted."

115. **A stream of immigrants,** yearly increasing in numbers, had been flowing to the lands of this new territory. Before the Peace of Paris, an organized settlement of the inviting region had been contemplated by the soldiers of the Revolution. The pioneers on the Tennessee organized themselves into a State, by the name of Frankland. The south-western districts of Virginia displayed some inclination to unite with the new State. To counteract such designs the Virginia Legislature gave its consent to the creation of the State of Kentucky.

1784.

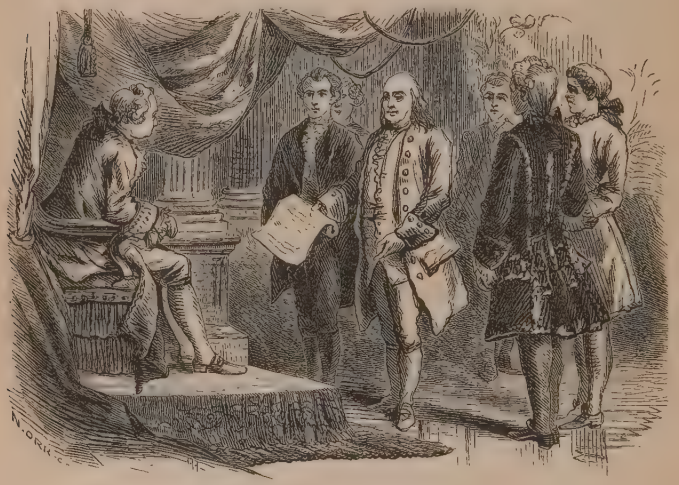
116. **Vermont and Kentucky,** when they applied for admission into the Union as new States, were required to wait for the action of the Congress assembled under the new Constitution.* The Mississippi was made the western boundary of the United States by the treaty with Great Britain. Its lower course was within the Spanish domain, which thus commanded the outlet from all its confluent waters. The free navigation of the river was the object of much negotiation, and of much debate. The question was not settled till the purchase of Louisiana.

THE DEATH OF FRANKLIN.

117. **Benjamin Franklin died** little more than a year after the institution of the new Government. His practical philosophy may be hard and selfish, but he had been one of the most prominent figures of the Revolution throughout its whole course. No other civilian had done as much as he to

* Vermont became a State in 1791, and Kentucky in 1792.

guide, to aid, and to accomplish it. He was a poor boy, and started in life as a very humble printer. He had risen by industry, energy, frugality, and sagacity. He had made the first important discovery in electricity. He had instructed the people in economy and self-reliance. He had offered the first efficient plan for the union of the colonies. He had been the agent in England of four of them at once. He had assisted in



FRANKLIN AT THE FRENCH COURT.

drawing up the Declaration of Independence. He had concluded with France the Treaty of Alliance which saved the colonies; and that with Great Britain which assured their independence. He had associated and contended with the most eminent statesmen. He had "stood before princes." He had been the admiration of courts, yet he had always retained a republican simplicity of thought, manners, and action.

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART III.

THE REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

Coming Revolution. 1. Consequence of expulsion of France. 2. Fears of British statesmen; expectations of French. 3. Grievances of the colonies; taxing America. 4. "Writs of Assistance." 5. Patrick Henry and "The Parsons' Case." 6. "The Sugar Act" opposed. 7. "The Stamp Act." 8. Colonial Convention—Petition and memorials; repeal of the Stamp Act. 9. Sundry duties imposed; Virginia; Massachusetts. 10. "The Boston Massacre." 11. Tea duty retained; Massachusetts under military government. 12. "The Regulators." 13. Daniel Boone. 14. The Princess Susanna. 15. "The Boston Tea Party." 16. The Boston Port Bill. 17. The Continental Congress. 18. Its proceedings. 19. General Gage at Boston. 20. Battle of Point Pleasant. 21. Population.

The Revolution: First Year. 22. Spirit of the British Ministry and of the colonies; Patrick Henry. 23. Lexington. 24. Capture of forts and arms. 25. Continental Congress; union of the colonies; preparation for war; Washington. 26. Bunker Hill. 27. Army before Boston. 28. Invasion of Canada. 29, 30. Attack on Quebec. 31. Lord Dunmore. 32. North and South Carolina.

Second Year of the Revolution. 33. Situation at Boston. 34. Boston regained. 35. British plan for the campaign. 36, 37. Fort Moultrie. 38. Sergeant Jasper. 39. Declaration of Independence. 40. Peace Commission. 41. Battle of Long Island. 42. Capture of New York; White Plains. 43. Retreat through the Jerseys; Congress leaves Philadelphia. 44. Passage of the Delaware; Trenton. 45. The army and the finances. 46. Arnold on Lake Champlain.

Third Year of the Revolution. 47. Aspect of affairs. 48. Battle of Princeton. 50. The United States flag. 51. Lafayette's arrival; DeKalb. 52. Pulaski, Kosciusko, Steuben. 53. Burgoyne's Invasion; Jenny Macrae. 54. Bennington; Oriskany. 55. Saratoga—Surrender of Burgoyne. 56. The battle of the Brandywine. 57. Germantown. 58. Valley Forge—the army. 59. Measures of Congress; Articles of Confederation; the Currency; State contributions.

Fourth Year of the Revolution. 60. Treaty with France; resolve to be independent. 61. Chatham's death. 62. Condition of Britain. 63. Howe's resignation; Lafayette's challenge. 64. Philadelphia recovered; battle of Monmouth. 65. D'Estaing against Newport. 66, 67. Massacre of Wyoming. 68. Clarke's conquest of the North-west. 69. War transferred to the South. 70. Savannah taken.

Fifth Year of the Revolution. 71. Character of operations. 72. Georgia subdued. 73. Charleston attacked. 74. Destruction at Norfolk. 75. American privateers, etc. 76. Paul Jones—the *Serapis*. 77. The Northern campaign. 78. The Six Nations punished. 79. Spain joins the alliance; France advises peace. 80. Attack on Savannah—repulsed. 81. Clinton's designs; the hard winter.

Sixth Year of the Revolution. 82. Clinton proceeds against Charleston, which surrenders; Monk's Corner. 83. Measures to hold South Carolina; the Waxhaws. 84. Battle of Camden. 85. Gates removed. 86. Marion; Sumter; Pickens. 87. Battle of King's Mountain. 88. French auxiliaries; Newport. 89. Arnold's treason; André. 90. Enemies of Britain; the belligerents in America. 91. Revolutionary currency.

Seventh Year of the Revolution. 92. The American army; the Articles of Confederation; the finances. 93. Operations of the campaign; in Virginia. 94. Cornwallis's advance; the Cowpens. 95. Morgan's retreat. 96. Battle of Guilford Court-House. 97. Battle of Hobkirk's Hill. 98. Colonel Isaac Hayne. 99. Battle of Eutaw Springs. 100. Movements of Cornwallis to Yorktown. 101. Washington's scheme. 102. The French and British fleets. 103. The surrender of Cornwallis. 104. Clinton too late. 105. The close of the war. 106. Condition of the parties. 107. Washington retires. 108. Condition of the country.

Establishment of the United States. 109. Failure of Articles of Confederation. 110. Shays' Rebellion. 111. New Constitution proposed. 112. Its character; its advocates and opponents. 113. The first President and Vice-President; the new Congress. 114. The North-west territory; ordinance for its regulation. 115. Frankland; Kentucky. 116. Vermont; Kentucky; the Mississippi. 117. Death of Franklin; his career and services.

PART IV.

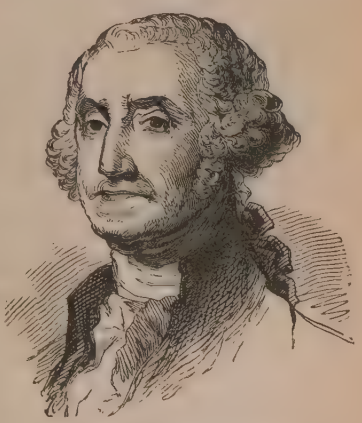
THE REPUBLIC ESTABLISHED.

FROM THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION TO THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE.

1789-1821.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.—1789-1797.

1. **Washington had a difficult task** before him as the first President of the new Government. His lofty character, his past services, and the favor of the people, afforded the best hope of success. He summoned able advisers to his councils. Alexander Hamilton was appointed Secretary of the Treasury; Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State; and Henry Knox, Secretary of War. Edmund Randolph was Attorney-General, and John Jay, Chief-Justice of the Supreme Court.



GENERAL WASHINGTON.

2. **A revenue** for the current expenses of the Government, and for the payment of the public liabilities, was the most urgent of all needs. The debt of the Union was very heavy; the debts of the individual States reached half the amount of the general liability. Direct taxes were inexpedi-

ent in the condition and temper of the country. Accordingly, taxes were imposed upon imports and distilled liquors.

3. **Hamilton devoted himself to the regulation of the finances.** The debts to France, Spain, and Holland could not be avoided. Proposals were made to scale or cancel much of the domestic debt. Such repudiation was earnestly opposed by Hamilton, who also recommended the payment of the State debts by the Federal Treasury. His views were adopted by Congress. Credit revived; all industrial pursuits flourished; the public revenues increased beyond the actual necessities of the Government.

4. **Hamilton,** furthermore, **encouraged the establishment of a National Bank.** The project was resisted as unconstitutional. It was sustained by Congress; but it became a source of much future discord. A mint was also instituted, and a Federal coinage was struck.

THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY DESIRED.

5. **Grave discords had been already excited** by the existence of negro slavery in the more Southern States, and by its absence or rapid extinction in the Northern. Franklin presented to Congress a petition for the emancipation of the negroes. Congress decided that it had "no authority to interfere in the emancipation of slaves, or in the treatment of them in any of the States." The question was not set at rest, but grew in bitterness with the growth of time. Slavery was not excluded from the territory south of the Ohio, which was organized in other respects as that north of the river had been.

1790. 12 Feb.

REMOVAL OF THE SEAT OF GOVERNMENT.

6. **The seat of Government was removed to Philadelphia** for ten years, and after that period to the banks of the Potomac, where a tract, ten miles square, was ceded to the general Government by Virginia and Maryland. This tract

received the name of the **District of Columbia.** The portion given by Virginia was, many years subsequently, retroceded to that State.

WAR WITH THE INDIANS.

7. War soon broke out with the Indians. They were instigated by the British to make the Ohio their boundary. They attacked boats on the river, and made raids into Kentucky. The Kentuckians marched to the Scioto against them, but accomplished nothing. In the fall of the year, General Harmar met with serious disaster, and fell into an ambush on the Maumee. General St. Clair was surprised and routed on the Wabash, in the next campaign. After the league had been abandoned by many tribes, the Miamis were defeated on the Miami by General Wayne.

1790.

GENERAL WAYNE.

THE FEDERALISTS AND ANTI-FEDERALISTS.

8. Two political parties—the Federalists and **the Anti-Federalists**—were bitterly opposed to each other. The Anti-Federalists called themselves Republicans, and were guided by Thomas Jefferson, a man of popular manners and great practical ability. He was an adherent of the principles of the French Revolution, which had broken out in the recent

years. Alexander Hamilton was regarded as the leader of the Federalists, and as partial to Great Britain and to monarchical institutions. Both were in the Cabinet of Washington, who was unable to prevent or to heal the dissensions between them.

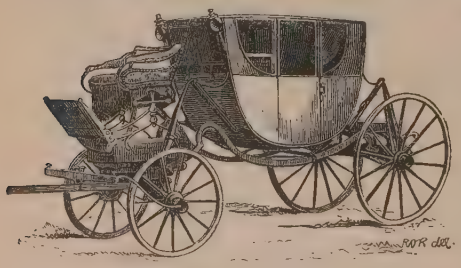
FRENCH INTERFERENCE.

9. The arrival and conduct of M. Genest (*jen-a'*), the revolutionary envoy from France, caused increased political acrimony. He had been directed to secure the coöperation of the United States with the French Republic. Neutrality was proclaimed about the time when he came. This he disregarded. He intruded himself into the political affairs of the country. He took an active part in the political rivalries. He attacked Washington and the Government. He commissioned privateers, which captured British vessels in American waters, and he prepared assaults on the Spanish possessions. Washington was under the necessity of demanding his recall.

THE WHISKEY INSURRECTION.

10. Another cause of discord was the excise, or tax on domestic products, which has been declared to be "the horror of all free States." The tax on spirits was violently opposed, especially in Western Pennsylvania. In the counties round Pittsburg the resistance to it grew into a serious insurrection. The law was powerless, and proclamations were of no avail. Washington determined to crush the insurrection at once. He called fifteen thousand militia to the field, under the command of General Henry Lee. The insurgents

1794.



WASHINGTON'S STATE COACH.

vanished as the army approached, and the "**Whiskey Insurrection**" closed without bloodshed.

DISPUTES WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

11. **France had excited discords and divisions.** The conduct of **Great Britain provoked dissatisfaction.** The provisions of the treaty of peace were not carried into effect. The military posts in the West were not surrendered. The negroes carred off from Savannah and other places were not paid for. British seamen were taken from American vessels, and the United States merchantmen were not permitted to trade with the British islands in the West Indies. An embargo* was laid on British ships by way of retaliation. At length a treaty with England was made by John Jay, who had been sent on an embassy, for the prevention of war. The treaty was unsatisfactory in America, and gave offence to France. James Monroe was ambassador to the latter country. He was rebuked by his own Government for "excess of fervor," and was finally recalled.

1795. 19 Nov.

TREATY WITH ALGIERS, Etc.

12. **An indiscreet treaty was made with the Dey† of Algiers,** to secure peace and the recovery of captives. A heavy payment, an annual tribute, and the present of a frigate, constituted the satisfaction accorded to that prince of pirates. The boundaries of Florida and Louisiana were settled, and the navigation of the Mississippi assured by a more judicious treaty with Spain.

RETIREMENT OF WASHINGTON.

13. In a farewell address, **Washington declined a third election to the Presidency.** He thus set an example

* An embargo is the detention of vessels—the prohibition of the departure of ships from the ports in which they happen to be.

† Dey originally meant, in Turkish, an uncle on the mother's side. It was the designation given to the Regents of the Barbary States under the Ottoman Sultan.

which has so far been imitated in practice. He advised the people to maintain "the unity of the Government," and to avoid any geographical division of parties. He pointed out the danger of innovations on the Constitution. Thoughts of the dissolution of the Union had already been frequent.

14. **John Adams, of Massachusetts, was the second President,** with Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, as Vice-President. Washington returned to Mount Vernon, his home in Virginia. He died between two and three years after his retirement. By request of Congress, his eulogy was pronounced by his friend and companion in arms, General Henry Lee; who declared him "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." He had seen the Government established and secured, largely by his own wisdom and conduct. The country was advancing rapidly in prosperity. The population had nearly doubled since the beginning of the Revolution. The revenue had more than doubled. The imports were almost one-half larger than they had been. The exports were trebled. The Union had been enlarged by the admission of three new States—Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN ADAMS.—1797-1801.

15. The new President and the new Vice-President represented adverse political factions. Adams was the leader of the Federalists; Jefferson of the Anti-Federalists, or Republicans. It was an awkward result of the original provision of the Constitution for the election of the highest executive magistrates.

RELATIONS WITH FRANCE.

16. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney was sent ambassador to France on the recall of Monroe. He was not received. John

Marshall* and Elbridge Gerry were joined with him as special envoys. They were refused a reception unless they would consent to pay a large sum of money. Pinckney said, "he would give millions for defence, not a cent for tribute."† American vessels had been already seized and plundered by the French, and fresh assaults on American commerce were now made. The United States prepared for war. General Washington was appointed Commander-in-chief of the American armies.

1798. 7 July.

JOHN ADAMS.

17. The war was confined to some slight actions at sea. It lingered on for more than three years. It was terminated by a convention with Napoleon Bonaparte, after he became First Consul of France. Claims for losses previous to this settlement occupied the attention of Congress more than seventy years later.

THE ALIEN AND SEDITION ACTS.

18. A stringent Alien Act was passed to guard against intrigues and dangers apprehended from French and other foreigners in the country. A severe **Sedition Law** was also enacted to restrain the press, and to check the disturbances

---

* John Marshall, of Virginia (1755–1836)—a jurist of the highest eminence—was Chief-Justice of the United States from 1801 to his death.

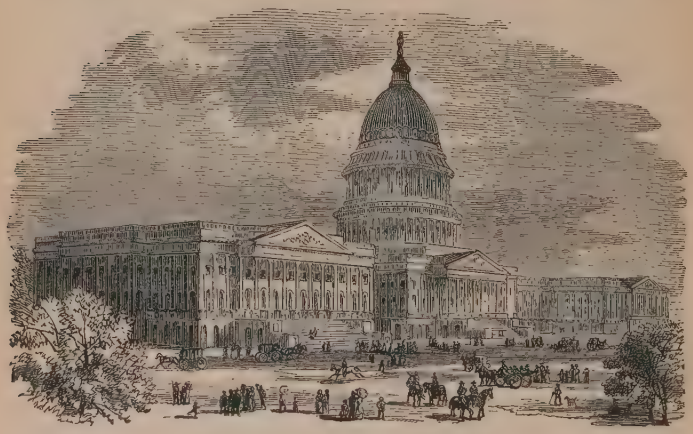
† Charles Cotesworth Pinckney (1746–1825), of South Carolina, gave utterance to this patriotic sentiment in response to the proposal of Talleyrand, to make a favorable treaty with the United States, on condition of a heavy loan to the French Government, and of a present of $240,000 to himself.

which it might produce. These measures provoked violent opposition. They were denounced by the **Kentucky Resolutions,** composed mainly by Mr. Jefferson; and by the **Virginia Resolutions,** drawn by Mr. Madison.

1798.

WASHINGTON CITY.

19. **The seat of Government was removed** to the



THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

site selected for it on the banks of the Potomac. The new capital was built in the woods. It was named **Washington,** in honor of the illustrious man who had died at the close of the previous year.* It has now become one of the most beautiful cities of the world. The removal and the choice of the location were the result of a compromise between the North and the South.

1800.

20. The third Presidential election was marked by the de-

* Washington died universally lamented. Even his bitterest assailants in his own country showed reverence for his memory. The British ships-of-war lowered their flags out of respect to his name. Bonaparte, on the eve of the campaign of Marengo, ordered the battle-flags to be put in mourning.

The first Congress assembled at the new capital provided for the erection of an imposing monument to commemorate his services. It is not yet completed.

feat of the Federal party. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr, both Anti-Federalists, received the largest number of electoral votes. Each, however, had an equal number. The House of Representatives was required by the Constitution to make choice between them. An effort was made to secure the election of Burr, by the aid of the Federalists. Jefferson was elected President; * Burr, of course, became Vice-President. An amendment to the Constitution was adopted to prevent the recurrence of such hazards.†

ADMINISTRATION OF THOMAS JEFFERSON.—1801–1809.

21. Jefferson entered upon his administration at a favorable time. The country was prosperous. The Federalists were overcome. Peace had been made with France. Jefferson affected extreme republican simplicity in dress and manners. The enthusiasm for French principles had been weakened by the late hostilities, and by the change in the French Government and policy.‡

THE PURCHASE OF LOUISIANA.

22. By the purchase of Louisiana an important extension of territory was acquired, and the whole course of the Mississippi secured. Napoleon could not hope to defend it at a time when he was engaged in great wars with Britain, and on the continent of Europe. He accordingly offered to sell it to the United States. He remarked, on signing the treaty by which it was transferred, that he thus raised up a rival to Eng-

* The election was made on the thirty-sixth ballot, after voting for seven days.

† Amendment XII., 1804. This secured the two highest magistracies for the same party.

‡ Elder John Leland, of Cheshire, Massachusetts, sent a huge cheese to President Jefferson. It weighed sixteen hundred pounds.

land, "which would, sooner or later, wrest from her the sceptre of the seas." The acquisition was very valuable. It was regarded by those who opposed the purchase as scarcely accordant with the tenor of the Constitution. James Monroe* was the agent for negotiating the treaty. The price paid for the territory was fifteen millions of dollars. A quarter of this sum consisted of American claims on France.

1803. 13 April.

THOMAS JEFFERSON.

WAR WITH THE BARBARY POWERS.

23. The piratical powers on the northern coast of Africa insulted and injured the vessels of the United States. Commodore Preble was sent to the Mediterranean, with a small force, to obtain redress. He forced the Emperor of Morocco to make terms, and proceeded against Tripoli. The *Philadelphia* struck on a rock and was captured. It was burnt in the harbor by the skilful daring of Lieutenant Decatur,† who was soon afterwards engaged in a

1803.

---

* James Monroe (1758–1831) was present at the battles of Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. He opposed the new Constitution. He was minister to the French Republic in 1794, and was sent again to France for the Louisiana purchase in 1802.

† Commodore Stephen Decatur (1779–1820). The burning of the *Philadelphia* was suggested by Capt. Bainbridge, then a prisoner in Tripoli. The combat with the Tripolitan captain, who was a very powerful man, occurred in August, 1804. In 1812, Decatur, in the *United States*, captured the British frigate *Macedonian*. In 1814, the squadron which he commanded was blockaded at New London by the British. In 1815, he was captured in the *President*. In the summer of that year he dictated

desperate encounter with a Turkish captain. The city was threatened by a land force under Capt. Eaton, formerly American consul at Tunis, and Hamet, the brother of the Dey of Tripoli. They had taken Derne (*der'ne*), with the aid of Commodore Barron * and the fleet. Tunis submitted on the appearance of the American flotilla. Further successes were prevented by the reëstablishment of peace.

AARON BURR.

24. The disappointed ambition of Burr produced disastrous consequences. He regarded Hamilton as the chief cause of his defeat. He challenged and killed him on the Jersey shore of the Hudson River, opposite the city of New York. Burr fell into greater discredit than before. When Jefferson was reëlected President, Burr was replaced as Vice-President by George Clinton. He engaged in lawless schemes in his bitterness and desperation. It is uncertain whether he designed the conquest of a part of Mexico, or the separation of the south-western territory and the creation of a new republic. He was arrested, conveyed to Richmond, and imprisoned. He was acquitted on his trial before Chief-Justice Marshall. His brilliant career ended in disgrace, obscurity, and despair.

1804. 11 July.

1807.

LEWIS AND CLARKE'S EXPLORATION.

25. Much of the territory included under the name of Louisiana was an unknown wilderness. Jefferson sent

---

peace to the Dey of Algiers. He fell in a duel with Commodore Barron, 22d March, 1820.

* Commodore James Barron (1768–1851) received his commission in 1798, on the formation of the United States navy. In 1807, the *Chesapeake*, commanded by him, was attacked by the British frigate *Leopard*, and surrendered. He was tried by court-martial, and suspended for five years. These transactions led to the duel with Decatur.

an expedition under Lewis* and Clarke to explore it. They were engaged in their difficult and hazardous journey two years and a half. They started from St. Louis, crossed the Rocky Mountains, and descended the Columbia River to the Pacific.

1804. 1806.

CONTROVERSIES WITH GREAT BRITAIN AND FRANCE.

26. **The interests of the United States at sea** were grievously harassed by the measures of both England and France. Long and anxious negotiations failed to secure redress from either. The British Orders in Council † and the Imperial Decrees of Napoleon ‡ were equally obnoxious. Jay's treaty had not relieved American vessels from impressment of British sailors, or from the seizure of enemies' goods on board. The orders of the British Government were executed in an arrogant and offensive manner, which inflamed the indignation occasioned by them.

THE CHESAPEAKE AND THE LEOPARD.

27. **The right of search § was enforced** by the British cruisers, which took from American ships all who were, or who were alleged to be, British seamen. These proceedings passed beyond endurance, when the *Chesapeake* was stopped off the capes of Virginia, fired into, and boarded by the British frigate *Leopard*. Four

1807. 22 June.

* Meriwether Lewis (1774–1809) was born near Charlottesville, Va. He was private secretary to President Jefferson, 1801–1803. In 1803 he was sent, with Capt. Wm. Clarke, on the exploring expedition. He is supposed to have shot himself in Tennessee, in a fit of despondency.

† The British Orders in Council were State Papers, issued by George III., "by and with the advice of his Privy Council," in retaliation for Napoleon's Berlin Decree. These orders prohibited all trade by neutrals with the ports of France and her allies. They were renewed with increasing stringency.

‡ These decrees were the Berlin and Milan decrees, designed to close the ports of the continent to British trade, and to exclude British products from the mainland of Europe. The Berlin Decree (21st Nov. 1806) declared the British islands under blockade, and authorized the seizure of all vessels coming from British harbors, and of British goods wherever they might be found. The Milan Decree repeated and extended these severe measures against commerce.

§ The right of search was the alleged right of stopping on the high seas vessels

men were carried off. The British ministry promptly disavowed the act. The indignity was left for several years unredressed. After the battle of Trafalgar, France had scarcely a ship-of-war on the ocean, and Great Britain was alone able to commit such offences.

THE EMBARGO.

28. An act prohibiting importation from England had been passed previous to this time. The President ordered all the war vessels of Britain from American harbors, and forbade intercourse with them. These measures proved insufficient. All efforts to secure a satisfactory treaty failed. An

1807. 18 Dec.

embargo was, therefore, passed, prohibiting the departure of American vessels from American ports. This act produced much injury and small benefit. The embargo was evaded. It was resisted by the Federalists, who acquired new strength from the ineffectual measures, which were ruinous to American commerce. The immediate consequence was the division of the political parties into the war party and the peace party. Unhappily, the division was, in the main, geographical. The agricultural States of the South formed the war party. The commercial States of the North were the party opposed to war.

CLOSE OF JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

29. The war did not break out during the Presidency of Jefferson. He retired to his home at Monticello, in Virginia, after declining, like Washington, a third election. He died on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence, on the same day with John Adams, his predecessor in the Presidency.

CONDITION OF THE COUNTRY.

30. The progress of the country under Jefferson's

sailing under a foreign flag, for the purpose of ascertaining whether they had persons or goods on board liable to seizure, or rendering the vessel liable to capture.

administration was surprising. Louisiana had been bought. Ohio had been received into the Union. The population exceeded seven millions. Steam had been applied to river navigation by Robert Fulton.* Industry of all kinds was flourishing. The exports had increased sixfold in sixteen years, and had risen to $108,000,000. Cotton was shipped to the amount of sixty-two million pounds.† The invention or improvement of the cotton-gin by Whitney ‡ enormously extended the manufacture and the culture of cotton. About the middle of Mr. Jefferson's second term the African slave trade was prohibited.

MONTICELLO.

---

* Robert Fulton (1765–1815) was a miniature painter, and was sent to London to be instructed by Gilbert West. Hearing of the experiments of Fitch and Evans, he studied mechanics and engineering, and constructed a steam-vessel. The success of his invention was established in 1807, by a voyage from New York to Albany and back, at the rate of five miles an hour. He afterwards turned his attention to torpedoes and marine batteries. Thomas Carlyle says Fulton derived his scheme from Miller's steamboat on the Thames, in 1793.

† The War of the Revolution broke up the trade of South Carolina and Georgia in rice and indigo, which were procured during that period from the East Indies. The raising and exportation of cotton seem also to have been abandoned, and not revived for some time. A Southern representative said in Congress, in 1789: "Cotton was in contemplation amongst them; and, if good seed could be procured, he hoped it might succeed."

‡ Eli Whitney (1765–1825) invented the cotton-gin, for separating the seed from the cotton, in 1793. A contrivance for the same purpose had been made by DuBreuil, in Louisiana, in 1752. Whitney was ruined by infractions of his patent, and engaged in manufacturing fire-arms.

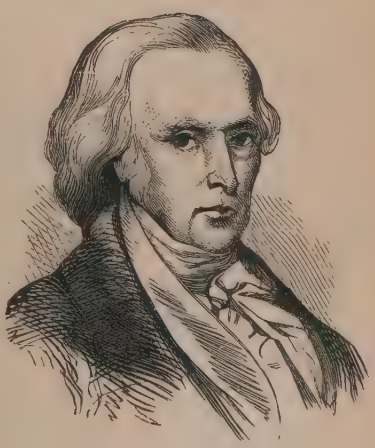
THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MADISON.—1809–1817.

31. James Madison,* of Virginia, **succeeded Thomas Jefferson** as President. George Clinton, of New York, was reëlected Vice-President. Public affairs were full of perplexity and alarm. The country was drifting into war with either England or France, perhaps with both. The measures adopted to avert the danger, and yet secure redress, produced no effect upon the adverse powers. They were very damaging to the United States. The embargo proved worse than useless. It was passionately opposed in New England and elsewhere.

THE "PRESIDENT" AND THE "LITTLE BELT."

32. The embargo was repealed. The repeal was followed by measures equally vain and equally annoying. Negotiations were kept up, and provoked fresh resentment. The sorest grievance was the seizure of seamen on American vessels. The *President* was ordered to sea for the protection of American sailors. It

1811. 16 May. chased and engaged the *Little Belt*, of less than half its force, and inflicted serious damage. This action became a new cause of controversy; yet war was still delayed.



JAMES MADISON.

* James Madison (1751–1836) was a member of the Virginia Convention of 1776; of that of 1788; and of that of 1829. He was a member of the Continental Congress in

WAR WITH TECUMSEH.

33. A great Indian war occupied the interval. It was ascribed to British instigation. A league of several tribes was formed by the Shawanee "prophet," and his brother Tecumseh—"the flying tiger." Tecumseh failed in a plot to seize General Harrison, the Governor of Indiana. He then went southward to draw the Creeks, Choctaws, and Chickasaws into the league. In his absence General Harrison marched towards the prophet's town, situated at the junction of the Tippecanoe with the Wabash. The prophet proposed a treaty. The Indians treacherously attempted to surprise the camp of the Americans before dawn. They were discovered, repulsed, and driven into the woods, after a bloody conflict.

1811. 7 Nov.

THE WAR OF 1812 WITH GREAT BRITAIN.

34. A tardy reparation was made for the attack of the *Leopard* on the *Chesapeake*. The Orders in Council were partially revoked in favor of the United States.* The insufficient redress came too late. The war party induced Mr. Madison, as the presidential election approached, to recommend Congress to declare war. A bill for the purpose was passed, and war was proclaimed about midsummer.

1812. 19 June.

1780; of the Constituent Convention of 1787; and of the National Congress in 1789. He strenuously advocated the new Constitution, and contributed most of the essays to the *Federalist*. He drafted the Virginia Resolutions of 1798–1799, and sustained them in an elaborate report. He was Secretary of State under Jefferson. After ceasing to be President, he remained tranquilly at Montpelier, his home, in Orange County, Virginia.

* The American envoy did not communicate, till 20th May, Napoleon's revocation of the Berlin and Milan decrees in favor of the United States.

Engraved for Holmes' History of United States.

INVASION OF CANADA.

35. Canada had always been coveted by the United States. The hope of its easy conquest had strengthened the desire for war. The campaign was planned for its acquisition. The command along the frontier, from Lake Champlain to Lake Superior, was distributed between Generals Dearborn, Van Rensselaer, and Hull.

36. General Hull * crossed the Detroit River as soon as his instructions reached him. He advanced in a hesitating manner. General Brock was approaching with a small British force. He was accompanied by Brant and the Mohawks, and by Tecumseh with the remnants of the Indian League. Hull returned to Detroit, and surrendered it after a slight attack.† He was tried, and condemned to be shot. The President pardoned him.

37. The invasion was resumed at the other end of Lake Erie. It had been delayed by an armistice, which was disallowed by the American Government. An attack was made on the British at **Queenstown,** on the Canada side of the Niagara River. The British were at first driven back. They were reinforced by General Brock, who was killed in the action. Other reinforcements arrived, and the Americans were forced to surrender, with Colonel Winfield Scott, their commander. The militia refused to cross the river, alleging that they were not bound to serve beyond the limits of their country. A few slight successes were gained by the Americans. They had to lament an atrocious massacre by the Pottawottomies (*pot'ta-wot'to-mes*), at Fort Dearborn, on the site of Chicago.

1812. 13 Oct.

---

* General William Hull (1753–1825) was in several battles of the Revolution. The injustice of the sentence of the court-martial, and of Hull's treatment, is now generally recognized.

† With Detroit the whole Michigan territory was surrendered.

‡ Colonel Winfield Scott (1786–1866) was born at Petersburg, Va. The leading incidents of his career are prominent in the subsequent history.

NAVAL EXPLOITS.

38. The navy had won gratifying triumphs. The American frigate *Essex* took the British sloop-of-war *Alert*. The *Constitution* escaped from a squadron by which it was surrounded, fell in with the *Guerriere* (*gher-yāre'*), and captured it. The *Wasp* boarded and took the *Frolic*, but both were captured two hours later. Decatur, in the *United States*, compelled the *Macedonian* to surrender, off the island of Madeira. The *Constitution*, in a second cruise, took the *Java*, near San Salvador. The prize was so much injured that it was burnt. Three hundred vessels were taken during the year, by the public vessels and the privateers of the United States.

39. Flotillas were prepared on Lakes Erie and Ontario for the next campaign, as the need of naval support had been seriously felt in the invasion of Canada. Madison had disarmed the opposition in his own party by adopting the war policy; and was reëlected President, with Gerry as Vice-President. Clinton, the former Vice-President, was dead.

PURPOSE OF THE SECOND CAMPAIGN.

40. The second campaign, like the first, was designed mainly for the conquest of Canada. The capture of Montreal was proposed. The American forces on the frontier were again divided into three bodies: the army of the West, under General Harrison;* the army of the Centre, and the army of the North, both under General Dearborn, who retained the chief command.

THE MASSACRE OF THE RIVER RAISIN.

41. The year opened with a horrible disaster. A

* General William Henry Harrison (1773–1841) was the son of Benjamin Harrison, Governor of Virginia. He was Secretary of the North-west Territory in 1797, and Governor of the territory of Indiana in 1801. He was elected President in 1840, and died a month after assuming his office.

detachment marched over the ice of Lake Erie, and drove the British from the **river Raisin.** General Winchester brought up reinforcements. The Americans were attacked and routed by Colonel Proctor, half of whose force consisted of Indians. Winchester, and his second in command, were captured.

1813. 22 Jan. Their troops surrendered, on Proctor's promise of protection and safety. The Indians began to plunder at once. They burnt the sick and wounded in the houses; threw others into the flames; tomahawked and scalped many more. Proctor did not interpose. Only thirty-three escaped out of a thousand.

42. The operations on the northern frontier were trifling, for the most part. General Harrison was besieged at the Maumee Rapids by Proctor and Tecumseh. He was relieved, but lost a detached body of eight hundred men. Toronto was taken and plundered by Dearborn. In the attack General Pike was slain, and two hundred men were killed or wounded by the explosion of a powder magazine, fired by the British on their retreat. Toronto was captured a second time during the summer, and much damage was inflicted.

BATTLES OF LAKE ERIE AND THE THAMES.

43. In the autumn more important successes were gained, at the upper end of Lake Erie. Commodore Perry,* with a hastily constructed fleet, completely defeated Capt. Barclay. He announced his victory to General Harrison in the words: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." The lake being cleared of the British, General Harrison and his army were carried to the Canadian shore by the American ships. They brought the enemy to an engagement on the river Thames. In five minutes the British regulars surrendered. In ten minutes the Indians were scattered. Tecumseh lay with the dead. Hull's disaster was retrieved.

1813. 10 Sept.

5 Oct.

* Oliver Hazard Perry (1785–1819) served under Preble against Tripoli. He died of yellow fever on his birthday.

44. The invasion of Canada on the line of the St. Lawrence failed. The several generals held different views and did not act in concert. Operations were delayed till so late in the season that storm and frost were added to the hazards of battle. The Americans encountered the British at Chrysler's Field. They withdrew in the night, after having been hotly engaged, in snow and sleet, for five hours.

11 Nov.

THE CHESAPEAKE AND THE SHANNON.

45. The Americans met with more disasters than advantages at sea this year. The coast of the United States was blockaded, and much of the navy was shut up in the harbors. Capt. Lawrence* attacked the *Peacock* off Demerara,

CAPT. LAWRENCE AND THE CHESAPEAKE.

* James Lawrence (1781–1813) also served against Tripoli. He commanded the *Hornet* when he captured the *Peacock*.

reduced her to a sinking condition, and compelled her to strike her colors. He was promoted, and appointed to the command of the **Chesapeake,** at Boston. Capt. Broke, of the **Shannon,** one of the blockaders of that port, challenged the *Chesapeake.* The challenge was accepted. The *Chesapeake* was rendered helpless in the action by damage to her rigging. Lawrence was mortally wounded. His last orders were: "**Don't give up the ship;** fight her till she sinks." Broke boarded her, took her, and carried her as a prize to Halifax.

1813. 1 June.

46. **A British attempt on Norfolk was foiled** by the fortifications of Craney Island, and by the determination of sailors from the *Constitution* and of the Virginia militia. A descent was made upon Hampton, which was plundered. Rapine and outrage were extended along the shores of Chesapeake Bay.

47. **The bloody war with the Creeks** began in this summer and continued through the next. During the same period, a proposal of mediation between the United States and England was offered by Russia.

THE THIRD CAMPAIGN.

48. **The overthrow and dethronement of Bonaparte** enabled the British to increase their energy in America. The United States had gained little, and had lost much by the war. The attempt to conquer Canada had been twice unsuccessful. The war vessels could scarcely venture out of port. The foreign trade of the country was destroyed. The taxes were heavily augmented; and the ability to pay taxes was diminished. The merchants, the ship-owners, and the Federal party had always opposed hostilities. Their dissatisfaction, especially in New England, was now heightened by past failures, by present distress, and by growing perils.

THE CREEK WAR.

49. **The Creek War** must be noticed at this point, as it

is closely connected with the later events of the war with Great Britain. The Indian war broke out during the previous summer, and was continued while military operations along the northern line were interrupted by the severity of winter. The Creeks had been aroused by a second visit from Tecumseh, after the fall of Detroit. The Creeks were divided. Those west of the Chattahoochee put on the war-paint. Those east of that river sought the protection of the United States. The war was waged without mercy on either side.

50. **Fort Mimms,** on the Alabama River, was taken by Weathersford, a fearless and powerful chief of the Creeks. Those found within the fort were massacred. They were not unavenged. Overwhelming forces were collected, and the hostile Creeks were assailed from several quarters at once. General Andrew Jackson held the chief commmand.* He advanced from Tennessee. Tal'lasehatch'e was taken and destroyed. Every warrior was slain. At Tal'lade'ga, a thousand Creeks were routed, and two hundred and ten of them slain, in a quarter of an hour. General Floyd, from Georgia, burnt Autoss'e, and slew two hundred Indians. General Claiborne and some Choctaws under Pushmataha (*push'-mat-a-haw*), came from Mississippi, defeated Weathersford, † and destroyed Eccanachaca (*ek-kan-a-chah'ka*), or "The Holy Ground," a town recently built by the Creek chief. The

1813. 9 Nov.

24 Nov. 23 Dec.

* General Andrew Jackson (1767–1845) and his widowed mother were driven from their home at the Waxhaws, in South Carolina, by the brutality of Tarleton's cavalry, in 1780. Boy as he was, he joined the army, and was taken prisoner the next year. He removed to Tennessee. After two terms as President, he returned, in 1837, to "The Hermitage," his home near Nashville.

† William Weathersford, or Weatherford, was a half-breed, the son of Charles Weathersford, a Georgian, long resident among the Creeks. When Weathersford came to deliver himself up, an altercation with "the Big Warrior" attracted Jackson to the door of his tent. Weathersford said: "General Jackson, I am not afraid of you; I fear no man, for I am a Creek warrior. I have nothing to request for myself; you can kill me if you desire; but send for the women and children of the war party who are starving in the woods." The crowd cried, "Kill him! kill him!" General Jackson sternly rebuked them, saying: "Any man who could kill as brave a man as this, would rob the dead." Weathersford died in 1826, greatly respected.

prophets had declared that no white man could approach it without sure destruction. Weathersford escaped by forcing his horse over a precipice and plunging into the river below.

51. **Tohope'ka,** or "The Horseshoe" of the Tallapoosa River, was a fortified camp, occupied by twelve hundred Indians. Jackson assailed them next spring with twice their number. The assault was begun in the rear, and the village was set on fire. The breastwork of logs across the neck of land on the front was stormed. Those who endeavored to escape were shot down. Those who sought refuge in the brushy undergrowth were burnt out and killed by the Tennessee riflemen. Nearly half the Indians were slaughtered. The Creeks begged for peace. They were ordered to give up Weathersford. One evening, as the sun went down, Weathersford rode into Jackson's camp, on the gray horse which had saved him at "The Holy Ground." All the lands of the Upper Creeks, except a tract of 150,000 acres, were ceded to the United States by the treaty of Fort Jackson, which closed the Indian hostilities for a time.

1814. **27 March.**

LUNDY'S LANE.

52. **The third campaign in the North** was a third attempt to conquer Canada. General Brown was the American commander-in-chief on the St. Lawrence. He crossed the Niagara, and took Fort Erie. General Scott was sent forward to meet General Riall, who was coming to its relief. They met at Chip'pewa (*-way*). The British were pressed back. Riall was joined by General Drummond, and Scott encountered the combined forces at **Lundy's Lane,*** a road between the Niagara and Lake Ontario. The actual battle began a little before sunset, and was prolonged till midnight.

1814. **25 July.**

The thunders of the Falls of Niagara blended with the roar of the cannon and the rattle of musketry. The smoke of bat-

* The battle of Lundy's Lane has also the names of Niagara and Bridgewater.

tle was lighted up by the moonlight and the flashes of the guns. The British were pushed from the field; but they returned and reoccupied the ground. The Americans fell back to Fort Erie, which was besieged. When winter came, the fort was abandoned and blown up.

THE BATTLES OF PLATTSBURG.

53. **Gratifying successes were achieved,** on land and water, at the eastern end of the line of operations. A descent on Canada, in that quarter, had failed in the spring. Towards the fall of the year, Sir George Prevost (*pre-vō'*), Governor of the province, invaded New York by way of Lake Champlain. General Macomb (*mak-koom'*) commanded the American land forces at **Plattsburg,** and Commodore McDonough the flotilla on the lake. Both were attacked on the same day. Both attacks failed. Downie, the British commodore, was killed early in the action between the fleets. His flag-ship surrendered, and another vessel was taken. Macomb repulsed every effort of the enemy to cross the Saranac, and the land force withdrew when the fleet was defeated.

1814. 11 Sept.

CAPTURE OF WASHINGTON.

54. **The blockade of the seaboard was maintained.** Admiral Cockburn was ordered "to destroy the coast-towns and ravage the country." He entered the Chesapeake, conveying a land force under General Ross. One part of the fleet sailed up the Potomac; the other continued to ascend the bay. Ross landed and marched on Washington. No effectual resistance was made to his progress, though the President appeared in person on the field of Bladensburg. **Washington was occupied.** The unfinished capitol and the public buildings were burnt. Next night the invaders withdrew. Alexandria was plundered

1814. 24 Aug.

BATTLE MONUMENT AT BALTIMORE.

by the fleet. Baltimore was next threatened. General Ross was killed, and the attack was frustrated.*

THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

55. The movements against Washington and Baltimore were designed to conceal **operations in the Gulf of Mexico.**

* Fort McHenry, at the mouth of the Patapsco, was bombarded by the guns of the fleet. "The Star-Spangled Banner" was composed during this bombardment, by Francis S. Key, who was detained on board of one of the British ships. A handsome monument was erected to the memory of those who had fallen in defence of the city.

The Creeks had been encouraged and aided in the Indian war by the British at Pensacola. An attack, by sea and land, on Fort Bowyer, near Mobile, was repulsed. General Jackson marched on Pensacola and forced the town and forts to surrender. He hastened back to Mobile, and heard that the British were threatening Louisiana. New Orleans was in danger of being given up. Jackson called for volunteers, established martial law, and welcomed La Fitte (*lah feet'*) with his pirates, or privateersmen, from Barataria.*

56. Louisiana was invaded by Sir Edward Pakenham (*pak'enam*) with eight thousand men and fifty ships, carrying a thousand guns. When the invaders landed, they were attacked by General Jackson. He then fell back to the plains of Chalmette (*shalmet'*), and there repulsed an attack of the British. Ten days later Pakenham repeated the onset. He was twice struck, and was mortally

OLD SPANISH HOUSE IN NEW ORLEANS.

* Barataria is an inlet of the Gulf, south of New Orleans.

While the city was under martial law, Judge Hall extended the protection of the civil law to an offender under military arrest. Jackson arrested and expelled the judge.

On the abrogation of martial law, Judge Hall brought Jackson before his court and fined him $1,000. The fine was paid at once. It was repaid by Congress thirty years afterwards.

During the proceedings the judge was alarmed by the display of enthusiasm in behalf of Jackson. The general cried out: "There is no danger here—there shall be none. The same hand that protected the city will shield and protect the court."

wounded.* General Gibbs, the second in command, was killed, General Keane, the third in rank, was wounded, and left the field. When the British reserves were brought up, they could only protect the retreat. The British loss was very heavy; the American was very slight.† **The battle of New Orleans** was the last and the severest battle of the war. Peace had already been made, but the news had not reached America.

1815. 8 Jan.

THE ESSEX.

57. **The daring cruise of the Essex,** under Capt. Porter, was the most remarkable naval event of the year. Porter had sailed from the Delaware in the previous autumn. He captured many prizes off the coasts of South America, Africa, and the islands of the Pacific. He pursued his lonely wanderings over the great ocean, and sailed for the western coast of South America. The *Essex* was taken, near Valparaiso, by two British sloops-of-war, which had been dispatched for its destruction.

THE HARTFORD CONVENTION.

58. **Peace was much needed.** The war had been very burdensome and very ruinous, without producing any result. Commerce was destroyed. Industry of all kinds was depressed. Taxes were increased. The public finances were in a deplorable state. The debt had risen to $150,000,000, and loans could be made only on the most disadvantageous terms. The discontent of the New England States menaced

---

* The forces engaged, and the losses sustained, have been variously stated. The British loss has been put as high as two thousand one hundred killed and wounded, besides five hundred prisoners. The American loss has been reduced as low as seventeen. There was certainly wide disparity in the losses. The Americans fought with the deadly Western rifle from behind breastworks. The English advanced over the open plain. It is popularly asserted that the barricades consisted of cotton bales. Only a few cotton bales were used.

† As the British approached the breastworks, Jackson called out to his men: "Don't waste your ammunition: see that every shot tells."

a serious revolt. The Massachusetts Legislature recommended a convention of the States opposed to the war. The convention met at Hartford, and demanded grave alterations in the Constitution. The return of peace put an end to the causes of complaint. **The Hartford Convention*** passed away, without having produced any action in accordance with the spirit displayed.

1814. 15 Dec.

THE TREATY OF GHENT.

59. **Conferences had been opened at Ghent,** with a view to the restoration of peace. The mediation of the Czar of Russia had been accepted by President Madison, in the second year of the war. It had been declined by England. After the overthrow of Napoleon, the conferences were held. The treaty signed there put an end to hostilities. None of the grievances which had caused the war were removed by it. The Senate ratified the treaty by a unanimous vote.

1814. 24 Dec.

THE BARBARY WAR.

60. **Algiers declared war,** and renewed its attacks on American commerce, soon after the peace with Britain. Capt. Decatur captured the largest vessel of the Algerine navy, and the Dey accepted terms creditable to the United States. Tunis and Tripoli were then compelled to enter into satisfactory arrangements.

THE RETURN OF PEACE.

61. **Manufactures to supply home wants** had engaged much attention during the war, after American ships had been driven from the ocean and foreign trade destroyed. The new

* The Hartford Convention consisted of twenty-six delegates, from Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Vermont. It adopted strong resolutions and recommendations to the other States, contemplating important changes in the Constitution and Government. An expectation prevailed at its adjournment that it would meet again for more definite and decisive action. The Treaty of Peace rendered this unnecessary.

factories and industries were endangered on the return of peace. Foreign goods could be introduced and sold at a lower price than the cost of making them in America. Protection against this danger was sought. Thus the tariff question* became prominent in politics. It has since divided parties and sections. The necessities of the Government were supposed to favor the demands of the manufacturers. Heavy duties were, in consequence, imposed on foreign commodities.

62. **A national bank,** chartered for twenty years, was instituted at Philadelphia two years after the war. The Colonization Society, to provide homes for free negroes and liberated slaves, was established. It resulted in the foundation of a black republic, called Liberia, on the western coast of Africa. The slave trade had been prohibited nine years before the close of Madison's administration. Two new States, one in the South, and one in the North—Louisiana and Indiana—were received into the Union while Mr. Madison was President.† He was succeeded in his high office by James Monroe.

THE FIRST ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MONROE—1817–1821.

63. **Monroe's administration was called the era of good feeling.** During this period the losses of the war ceased to be felt. The public revenues increased with the growth of the country. All branches of industry prospered.

* A tariff is a list of duties charged on enumerated commodities, when imported or exported.

The "tariff question" is the phrase employed in the United States to denote the controversy between those who favor the protection of American manufactures by heavy customs or duties on such articles when imported from abroad, and those who oppose such impositions and advocate low duties for the sake of revenue.

† In 1811, during Mr. Madison's Presidency, the trading post of Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia River, was established by John Jacob Astor, of New York. The breaking out of the war of 1812 necessitated the transfer of the settlement to the British Fur Company.

Party bitterness was for a time allayed. The moderation of the President conciliated opponents. The able men in his cabinet promoted his efforts to secure good-will.

INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS.

64. Monroe's first message recommended the construction of great roads, canals, fortifications, and other public works. The want of them had been experienced in the late war. They were required, also, to encourage the settlement of the new lands in the interior. The republicans (or democrats) denied their constitutionality. The question of **internal improvements** thus became, like the tariff, a ground of difference between the great political parties. The national road,* however, was extended. It had been begun under Jefferson's administration. The Erie canal was constructed by the State of New York. The internal taxes, levied during the war, were repealed, to the great relief and satisfaction of the people.

JAMES MONROE.

65. The piratical nests at Galveston, in Texas, and at Amelia Island, on the coast of Florida, were broken up. Swift vessels had issued from those retreats and had preyed upon the commerce of Spain and other nations, under pretence of bearing commissions † from the American republics which had revolted from the Spanish crown.

---

* The National or Cumberland Road extended from Cumberland, Md., to Wheeling, Va.

† These commissions were "letters of marque," or national licenses, authorizing private persons, at their own risk and expense, to seize the property of enemies at sea.

JACKSON'S INROAD INTO FLORIDA.

66. The Creeks had been driven into Florida by the overwhelming disasters of the Creek war. They stirred up the Seminoles to hostilities. With a force larger than the whole Seminole nation, Jackson drove the Indians before him, and seized St. Mark's. He hanged two British subjects, on the charge of having excited the Indians to war. He then took Pensacola, and received the submission of Fort Barrancas, to which the Spanish Governor had fled. As Florida belonged, at this time, to Spain, these procedures were in violation of international law. They were sustained, however, by a majority in the Lower House of Congress.

ACQUISITION OF FLORIDA.

67. The unscrupulous energy of General Jackson quickened the negotiations in progress for the acquisition of Florida, and for the determination of the western boundary of Louisiana. The Colorado had been proposed by Adams* as the frontier of that State. The Sabine was the limit fixed by the treaty. The Floridas were transferred to the United States in satisfaction of claims amounting to $5,000,000. These claims are not entirely settled yet.

1819. 22 Feb.

THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE.

68. The application of Missouri for admission into the Union aggravated the discords between the Northern and Southern States, which, after forty years of further contro-

* John Quincy Adams (1767–1848), the Secretary of State, was the son of President John Adams. At fourteen he was private secretary of Dana, United States Minister to St. Petersburg. In 1794 he was Minister to the Netherlands, and afterwards to Portugal and to Prussia. In 1809 he was Minister to Russia. He was chief Plenipotentiary to Ghent in 1814; and next year, Ambassador at London. He became President in 1825. He was elected a member of the House of Representatives in 1831, and remained a member till his death. His fatal attack seized him while occupying his seat in the House. He was carried to the Speaker's room, where he died, on the second day. His last words were, "This is the end of earth; I am content."

versy, produced the War of Secession. It caused a contest for power between the slave-holding and the non-slave-holding States. One party desired the exclusion of slavery from the new State; the other, its retention. The prospect of civil war was recognized. The question was revived with greater intensity when Maine applied for admission at the ensuing session of Congress. Thomas, of Illinois, proposed to allow slavery in Missouri, but to exclude it from the rest of Louisiana, north of the parallel of 36° 20′. This condition was adopted when Missouri was accepted as a State.* Maine was first admitted; Missouri had to wait another year.

1821. 21 Aug.

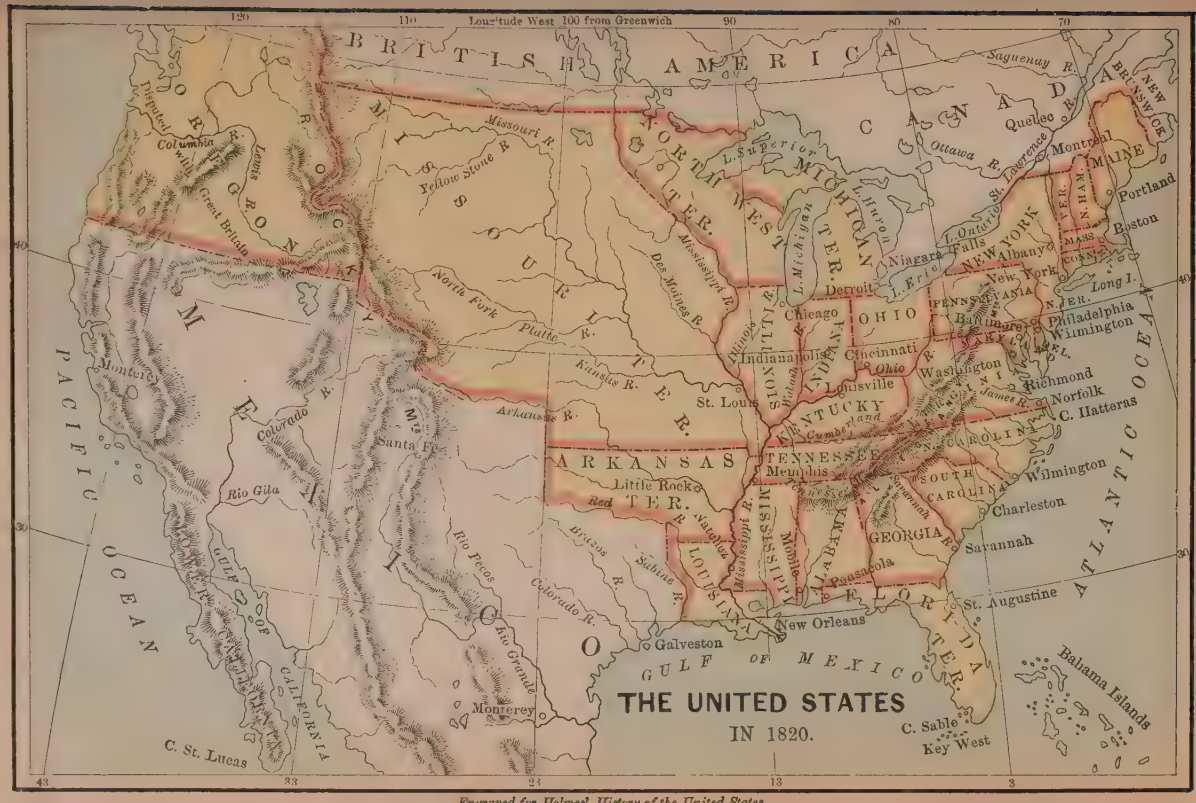
69. Mr. Monroe's second term of office began before the admission of Missouri. During his first term four States were received into the Union: Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, and Maine. Provision had been made for admitting Missouri also.

70. The Atlantic was first crossed by a steam vessel during this period. The **Savannah,** a very small craft, passed from Savannah, in Georgia, to Liverpool.† It pointed the way for the large and multitudinous steamships that now traverse the oceans in all directions.

1819. 20 July.

* This provision is known in the subsequent history as the "The Missouri Compromise." Louisiana here means the domain purchased from France (p. 171).

† Sails were used as well as steam. In bad weather the wheels were unshipped. The Savannah was twenty-five days, after leaving Savannah, before it came in sight of the coast of Ireland.



Engraved for Holmes' History of the United States

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART IV.

THE REPUBLIC ESTABLISHED.

Washington's Administration. 1. Washington's task; his Cabinet. 2. Raising a revenue. 3. Hamilton's policy. 4. A National Bank · a mint. 5. Anti-slavery petition; slavery south of the Ohio. 6. Washington City. 7. War with the Indians. 7. Federalists and Anti-Federalists; their leaders. 9. Genest and French interference. 10. The whiskey insurrection. 11. Disputes with Britain; the Jay treaty. 12. Treaty with Algiers; with Spain. 13. Washington's retirement. 14. His successor; Washington's death; progress of the country.

Administration of John Adams. 15. Antagonism of President and Vice-President. 16. Troubles with France. 17. War with France. 18. Alien and sedition laws; Kentucky and Virginia resolutions. 19. Washington the seat of Government. 20. Third presidential election; amendment to the Constitution.

Jefferson's Administration. 21. Aspect of affairs; Jefferson's manners. 22. Purchase of Louisiana. 23. War with Barbary States; Decatur; Eaton. 24. Aaron Burr; death of Hamilton; Burr's schemes. 25. Lewis and Clarke's expedition. 26. Controversy with Britain; orders in council and imperial decrees. 27. *Chesapeake* and *Leopard*. 28. Embargo. 29. Jefferson's retirement. 30. Progress made.

Madison's Administration. 31. Dangers in prospect. 32. *President* and *Little Belt*. 33. War with Tecumseh; Tippecanoe.

War of 1812. 34. British reparation; war declared. 35. Canada attacked. 36. Hull's failure; surrender of Detroit. 37. Battle of Queens town; massacre at Fort Dearborn. 38. *Constitution* and *Guerriere*; *Macedonian* and *Java*. 39. Madison reëlected.

Second Campaign. 40. Plan of campaign. 41. Massacre of the River Raisin. 42. The Maumee; Toronto. 43. Perry on Lake Erie; battle of the Thames. 44. Battle of Chrysler's Field. 45. *Chesapeake* and *Shannon*; Lawrence's last order. 46. Attack on Norfolk. 47. Creek War; mediation of Russia.

Third Campaign. 48. Relation of the belligerents. 49. The Creeks. 50. Fort Mimms; Tallasehatche; Talladega; Autosse; Eccanachaca. 51. Battle of the Horseshoe; Weathersford's surrender. 52. Battle of Lundy's Lane. 53. Battles of Plattsburg. 54. Capture of Washington; Alexandria; Baltimore. 55. Pensacola taken; New Orleans threatened. 56. Battles of New Orleans. 57. The *Essex*; its capture. 58. Hartford Convention. 59. Treaty of Ghent. 60. War with Barbary. 61. Return of peace; tariff question. 62. National Bank; Liberia; Louisiana and Indiana admitted.

Monroe's Administration. 63. The era of good feeling. 64. Internal improvements ; national road ; Erie Canal ; abrogation of taxes. 65. Suppression of pirates. 66. Jackson's invasion of Florida. 67. Florida acquired. 68. The Missouri compromise. 69. Four States admitted. 70. The *Savannah* crosses the Atlantic.

PART V.

PROGRESS OF THE REPUBLIC.

FROM THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE TO THE WAR OF SECESSION.

1821-1861.

MONROE'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION.—1821-1825.

1. **Mr. Monroe's second term as President** was a time of tranquillity and of general prosperity. The American republics which had revolted from Spain were recognized by the United States as independent governments. This occasioned the assertion of what has been called "**The Monroe Doctrine,**"* denouncing any further European acquisition of territory in America, or any European interference in American affairs. With the position thus assumed by the United States was closely connected the attitude of the Federal Government towards the proposed Panama Congress.†

1823.

1825.

OTHER NOTABLE EVENTS.

2. **The settlement of the Pacific coast** near the mouth of the Columbia River was urged by General Floyd, a member of Congress from Virginia. He gave the country the name of Oregon. An agreement made with Great Britain and Russia threw it open to settlement, though the last disputes in

---

* "The Monroe Doctrine" was announced in the President's annual message of 2d December, 1823. It was suggested by Canning, the British Secretary for Foreign Affairs, and much enlarged by John Quincy Adams, who wrote that part of the message.

† "The Panama Congress" was an intended meeting of plenipotentiaries from the revolted Spanish republics. An invitation to send representatives was accepted by the President. The Congress never assembled.

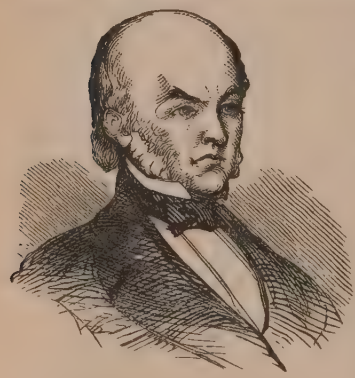
regard to its ownership were not closed till forty years later. A convention was made with Great Britain for the suppression of the African slave trade. Forty millions of the public debt were paid off during Monroe's administration. In his last year of office, Lafayette revisited the country, as its honored guest, and was received everywhere with enthusiasm.

1824.

3. At the next election, which was decided by Congress, **John Quincy Adams,** of Massachusetts, was chosen President. **John C. Calhoun** * was Vice-President. **Henry Clay,** † of Kentucky, one of the candidates for the Presidency, was appointed Secretary of State.

ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.—1825–1829.

4. **A serious controversy between the State of Georgia and the Central Government** early engaged the attention of Mr. Adams. It grew out of the measures taken by Georgia to extend its authority over the lands of the Cherokees.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

5. During Adams's administration two former Presidents—his father, John Adams, and Thomas Jefferson—died on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Indepen-

* John Caldwell Calhoun (1782–1850) was born in South Carolina. His parents had moved from South-western Virginia. He was Vice-President in 1825, and again in 1829. He resigned his office, and was elected United States Senator, in 1831. He advocated extreme State Rights doctrines (Calhoun doctrine), and was the leader of nullification in 1832. He was also regarded as the author of secession.

† Henry Clay (1777–1852) was a poor boy, born in Virginia. He settled at Lexington, Kentucky, in 1797. He was the strenuous advocate of a protective tariff, and of what was termed "the American System," favoring home productions.

dence. Another President, Mr. Monroe, expired five years later, on the same day of the same month.

6. Bitter opposition was provoked throughout the Southern States by an increase of duties on such imported articles as came into competition with home manufactures. South Carolina and Georgia denounced the **Tariff Act** as "unconstitutional, as well as unjust and oppressive, and consequently not obligatory on the States, if they thought proper to resist it." The feeling excited by this act threatened, a few years later, to divide the Union.

7. Mr. Adams was not elected President a second time. He was succeeded by General Jackson, who received more than two-thirds of the electoral votes.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JACKSON.—1829–1837.

8. Few of the Presidents since Washington produced such an enduring impression on the public mind as Andrew Jackson. He had already attracted notice by his conduct in the Creek War, and in the war with Great Britain. Indian wars were renewed under his administration. The Sacs and Foxes refused to surrender their hunting grounds. Black Hawk, the chief of the Sacs, was defeated, and his followers were transplanted to the further side of the Mississippi.

1832. 2 Aug.

ANDREW JACKSON.

The Cherokees were an offence to the people of Georgia,

who sought their removal. The harassed tribes claimed the protection of the General Government on the faith of treaty stipulations. A conflict arose between the State and the Federal authority. The Cherokees were compelled to exchange their home in the mountains of Georgia for a settlement on the rich lands west of Arkansas.

NULLIFICATION.

9. The recent tariff occasioned graver troubles. The opposing views of the Northern and Southern States were ably presented, in an earnest debate in the Senate, by Daniel Webster,* of Massachusetts, and Robert Hayne, of South Carolina. Words were ineffectual. South Carolina proceeded to action. Forcible resistance to the exaction of customs in the ports was ordered by a convention in that State, and an Ordinance of **Nullification** † was passed. President Jackson issued a proclamation declaring that "the laws of the United States must be executed." Actual violence was prevented by the mediation of Virginia. A compromise, proposed to Congress by Mr. Clay, postponed civil war for nearly thirty years.

1832. 19 Nov.

THE UNITED STATES BANK.

10. The renewal of the charter of the United States Bank occasioned bitter party feeling, after the nullification controversy had been quieted. The renewal was opposed by Jackson in his first annual message. When the charter was granted by Congress, he defeated the measure by his veto. He subsequently removed the public moneys from the keeping of that powerful corporation. A disastrous

1832–3.

---

* Daniel Webster (1782–1852) entered the House of Representatives in 1813. In 1828 he became United States Senator from Massachusetts. The debate with Hayne occurred in January, 1830. He was Secretary of State under Presidents Harrison, Tyler, and Fillmore.

† Nullification means rendering null and void, by State action, an act of the general Government.

financial crash followed some time afterwards, and may have
1841. been hastened by this transaction. The bank staggered on under a charter from the State of Pennsylvania, but failed in a few years.

11. **Jackson was reelected to the Presidency** while the anxious contentions were in progress. Martin van Buren* was chosen Vice-President, in place of Calhoun, who had resigned his office and become a Senator.

12. **The unsatisfactory negotiations with France,** in regard to the former spoliations of American commerce, were brought to a close by Jackson's decision. He presented the choice between immediate settlement or immediate war. The intervention of England prevented war and secured a settlement.

THE SEMINOLE WAR.

13. **A harassing Indian war** was caused by the attempt to remove the Indians from Florida and the South-west. The Seminoles refused to abandon Florida. They retired into the woods, jungle, and swamps, which cover millions of acres in the southern part of the country. It was difficult to follow them there, and easy for them to surprise their pursuers.
1836. Osceo'la, one of their chiefs, was put in fetters and was imprisoned. He had his revenge. Rushing from an ambush, near Tampa Bay, he slew all but one of a detachment of one hundred and seventeen men. The one survivor was mortally wounded. General Clinch was attacked at the passage of the Withlacoo'chee, and forced to retire behind the stream. Osceola was seized by General Jessup and confined at Charleston in Fort Moultrie. There he languished and died. Jessup thought that the war was at an end. It

* Martin van Buren (1782–1862), of New York, was the head of the political organization of the Democratic party in that State known as "the Albany Regency." He was Secretary of State in 1829. He became President in 1837. He held no office subsequently, though he continued to be prominent in public affairs.

went on. General Zachary Taylor* fell on the Seminoles at Lake Okeecho'bee and defeated them with such slaughter as to break their spirit.† This was the most decisive action of the war, but peace was not declared for three years more. The Seminole war cost thirty or forty millions of dollars, and had been carried on with twenty thousand white soldiers against seventeen hundred Indians and two hundred and fifty negroes. A summer's campaign subdued the Creeks, and they were removed to the West.

1838. 25 Dec.

14. The violence and bitterness of parties were greatly augmented by Jackson's administration.‡ The character of the questions in dispute had much to do with this unhappy altercation. The temper, manners, and morals of Jackson himself exercised a pernicious influence. He first employed the public offices distinctly as a reward for party services; and he acted on the maxim, since accepted in the place of political principle, "To the victors belong the spoils."§ Growing depravation of political sentiment has been the result.

PROSPERITY OF THE COUNTRY.

15. The country continued to make surprising progress. The population was nearly thirteen millions. The national debt was extinguished. Thirty-seven and a half millions of dollars—the surplus in the treasury—was distributed among the States. Virginia deemed the procedure contrary to the Constitution, and declined her share. The Indians were removed from the eastern side of the Mississippi. Two new States were added to the Union—Arkansas and Michigan.

---

* General Taylor (1784–1850) distinguished himself in 1812 by his defence of Fort Harrison, on the Wabash. He served in the Black Hawk War. He was in Florida from 1836 to 1840. In 1845 he was sent to protect Texas against Mexico. He became President in 1849, and died in office within a year and a half.

† The Seminoles had posted themselves on an island in the lake. The assailants waded through water breast-high.

‡ On the 31st January, 1835, an attempt to assassinate General Jackson was made, on the portico of the Capitol, by Richard Lawrence, an insane man.

§ This dangerous doctrine was ascribed to Gov. Marcy, of New York, through the misconstruction of a speech delivered by him in the United States Senate.

ADMINISTRATION OF MARTIN VAN BUREN.—1837–1841.

16. Martin van Buren was the first President of the generation born since the Revolution. Shortly after his inauguration the country was overwhelmed with general distress, the consequences of wild speculation in the recent prosperous years. The banks ceased to pay specie. Credit was everywhere denied. Failure followed failure in all branches of industry. The public revenue became insufficient for the public needs. Large foreign loans, contracted for the construction of railroads and other public improvements, went unpaid. Some States repudiated their obligations. Misery and impoverishment covered the land.

1837. 10 May.

MARTIN VAN BUREN

17. The outbreak of the Canadian rebellion exposed the Government to new anxieties in the midst of these financial disasters. Serious results were prevented by the prudence of General Scott, who was appointed to the command of the northern frontier.

THE MAGNETIC TELEGRAPH, Etc.

18. A patent was granted for Morse's magnetic telegraph in the first year of Van Buren's administration.* This was the beginning of those lines of telegraphic communication which

* Samuel Finley Breese Morse (1791–1872) was an artist, and acquired reputation as a painter. He visited Europe a second time in 1829, in prosecution of his studies; and on his return, in 1832, invented the magnetic telegraph. The patent was issued in 1837. The first line of wire was put up between Washington and Baltimore in 1843. The first message was sent 24th May, 1844. Morse laid the first submarine cable in October, 1842.

now cover the country, and almost the world, as with a net. The next year the first naval exploring expedition sent out by the United States sailed from Norfolk, under command of Captain Wilkes. The sixth census showed that the population had increased four millions in ten years. In the same year in which the census was taken, the **Anti-Slavery Society** was organized.

19. **Mr. Van Buren was not reelected.** He had gained the confidence of few. He had provoked the enmity of many. William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, was elected President, and John Tyler,* of Virginia, Vice-President. They were chosen as Whigs. This was the first Whig victory in general politics. The success was gained by new devices and new forms of popular excitement. The Republicans, who had latterly been called Democrats, had controlled the Government for forty years.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON AND JOHN TYLER.—1841–1845.

20. **President Harrison died** one month after being inaugurated. The Vice-President became President by the terms of the Constitution. He soon offended the Whig party, by which he had been elected, but from which he differed on the vital questions of the bank, the tariff, and State rights.

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

TYLER'S VETOES.

21. **Mr. Clay devised an act** for the establishment of **a National Bank.** It

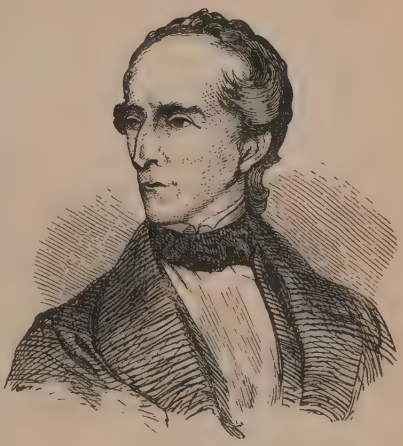
* John Tyler (1790–1862) was the son of Judge Tyler, who preceded President Mon-

was vetoed by the President. A second bill for the same purpose was met by a second veto. A tariff act was also vetoed. The veto was employed five times in eighteen months by Mr. Tyler. He was thus placed in entire opposition to his party, and was abandoned by them. His Cabinet resigned, with the exception of Mr. Webster, who retained the office of Secretary of State, to close the important negotiations in progress with Great Britain.

THE ASHBURTON TREATY.

22. **The questions** under discussion **had often endangered the peaceful relations** of the two countries. The gravest was the determination of the boundary of **Maine.** A treaty was happily concluded by Mr. Webster and Lord Ashburton,* who had been sent to Washington as Envoy Extraordinary for the purpose. This treaty is known as "**The Ashburton Treaty.**" It conceded, in the main, the claims of the United States.

1842. 20 Aug.



JOHN TYLER.

---

roe as Governor of Virginia. President Tyler was Governor of Virginia, 1825-1826; and was elected, over John Randolph, to the United States Senate in 1827. He withdrew from the Senate in 1836, when Virginia instructed her Senators to vote for Benton's Expunging Resolution. He became President in April, 1841, by the death of President Harrison. In 1861 he was President of "The Peace Conference," and was Senator in the Senate of the Confederate States.

* Lord Ashburton, an untrained diplomatist, is alleged to have been outwitted. A map was known to exist in the French archives, with a red line, drawn by Franklin, marking the boundary as it was asserted by the British Government to be.

THE DORR REBELLION.

23. **An attempt to change the constitution of Rhode Island** led, this summer, to a small civil war, in which one life was lost. The State was still governed by the charter of Charles II. The riot was designated **The Dorr Rebellion,** from Thomas W. Dorr, the governor elected by the insurgents. A new constitution, regularly framed, went into operation the ensuing year.

1842.

DISCOVERY OF THE SOUTH PASS.

24. **Capt. Fremont** * **discovered** about this time an easy pass through the Rocky Mountains for emigrant trains proceeding towards the Pacific coast. His discovery of **the South Pass** encouraged settlement in Oregon, and opened the way to regions of unexampled promise.

1842. 27 July.

ADMISSION OF TEXAS.

25. Texas was admitted into the Union, as a State, by a joint resolution of Congress, three days before the end of Mr. Tyler's administration.† A treaty for its admission had been rejected by the Senate in the preceding year. The new State had thrown off the yoke of Mexico, and won its independence by a series of surprising events. The territory had been first visited by La Salle, and claimed for France. It was reclaimed by Spain. The United States demanded it as a part of Louisiana, when Florida was acquired, but receded from their demand. Stephen Austin, and other settlers from the United States, prepared to separate it from Mexico. The Mexicans undertook the suppression of this rebellion. They were driven out of the country, and Texas declared its independence. Santa Anna, at the head of a Mexican army,‡ took

1845. 1 March.

1836. 2 March.

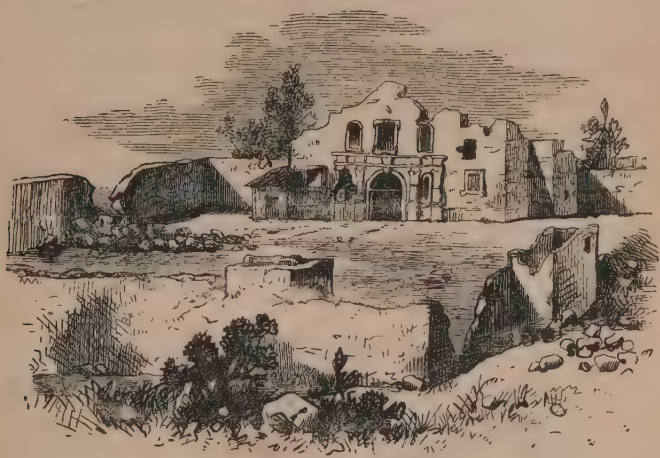
* For a notice of Fremont, see note to § 51, p. 219.

† The resolution was passed, to take the matter out of the hands of the Senate. It authorized the creation, out of the territory of Texas, of "new States, of convenient size, not exceeding four in number, in addition to the said State of Texas." * *

‡ General Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna (1798–1876) promoted the downfall of the

Fort Al'amo, and slew the garrison in the attack, or slaughtered them after the surrender. He defeated Colonel Fannin at Goliad, captured more than six hundred men, and murdered all but one. He was, however, himself defeated, and taken prisoner by General Houston,* at **San Jacinto.** Soon after this victory Texas was

1836. 21 April.



RUINS OF THE ALAMO.

recognized as an independent State by France, Great Britain,

Emperor Iturbide, and was made commander-in-chief. In 1833 he became President of Mexico. He lost a leg in the French bombardment of Vera Cruz, in 1838. He was banished for ten years, but was recalled in 1846, to resist the American invasion. After his successive defeats he resigned the Presidency. Maximilian made him Grand Marshal of the Empire.

* General Samuel Houston (1793-1863) was born near Lexington, Virginia. In 1807 his widowed mother, with her nine children, removed to Tennessee. In 1808 Samuel ran away, crossed the Tennessee, and lived with the Indians for three years. He was adopted by one of their principal chiefs, Oolooteka. In 1813 he served as a private under General Jackson, and was thrice wounded—it was supposed mortally. He was chosen Governor of Tennessee in 1827. Soon after his marriage, in 1829, he abandoned wife and home, and was formally made a Cherokee by the old chief Oolooteka. He removed to Texas about 1833. In 1835 he was appointed commander-in-chief of the army. He was severely wounded in the battle of San Jacinto. In September he was elected President of Texas; again in 1841; and Governor of the State in 1859. He was opposed to secession, and resigned the Governorship rather than take the oath of allegiance to the Southern Confederacy.

and the United States. **A lone star** was adopted as its emblem, and was placed upon its banners.

26. A year before the close of Mr. Tyler's administration, two members of the Cabinet, and other persons of distinction were killed by the bursting of a great gun, **The Peacemaker,** on board the *Princeton.* A brilliant company were on the vessel, having been invited to witness the performance of this novel cannon. The President narrowly escaped being one of the victims.

1844. 28 Feb.

27. **The Texan question determined** the election of a President to succeed Tyler. James K. Polk,* of Tennessee, who favored the acquisition of Texas, was elected over Henry Clay, the candidate of the Whigs, who was an earnest opponent of its reception. Florida also became a State during Mr. Tyler's term, and the admission of Iowa was provided for.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK.—1845–1849.

28. **Mexico had thrice declared** that she would regard the annexation of Texas as a cause of war. President Polk's administration, accordingly, began with the prospect, and almost the certainty, of hostilities. Texas accepted the terms of admission proposed, and called for protection. General Zachary Taylor was ordered to guard the frontier of the new State. A naval squadron was sent to Vera

JAMES K POLK.

* James Knox Polk (1795–1849) was born in North Carolina. He was Speaker of the House of Representatives, in Congress, in 1835. In 1839 he became Governor of Tennessee; in 1845 President of the United States. He died at the close of the summer following the completion of his term of office.

Cruz (*va'rah krooz*), and another to the Pacific, with orders to seize California * on the outbreak of hostilities. Proposals were, at the same time, made to Mexico for the purchase of California, and of the boundary of the Rio Grande.

THE MEXICAN WAR.

29. Next spring **General Taylor was directed to advance to the Rio Grande.** He encamped on the edge of the desert tract before Matamoras. Mexico declared war. A Mexican army crossed the river. It was met and defeated by General Taylor at **Palo Alto,** with little more than a third of the numbers opposed to him. The Mexicans received heavy reinforcements. They were routed again at Resaca de la Palma (*rā'sah-kah dā lah pal'mah*). Taylor occupied Matamoras, and awaited the arrival of the volunteers that had been called for.

THE OREGON TREATY.

30. **Important transactions took place** while Taylor lay idle at Matamoras. Oregon had been held by the United States and Great Britain, as joint occupants. Congress resolved to terminate this occupancy, and gave notice of its intention. A treaty was signed at Washington, settling the disputed claim to the territory. A cause of serious contention and danger was thus removed.

1846. 16 June.

SEIZURE OF CALIFORNIA.

31. **The designs of the United States upon California** were accomplished sooner than the Government expected, and by other means. Colonel Fremont was in the country, engaged in an exploring expedition. He was threatened by

---

* California is said to have been so named by Cortez, from the queen of the Amazons, Califa, in the Spanish romance of Esplandian, mentioned in Don Quixote. Texas possibly derived its designation from Tiquas, or Latekas, an Indian tribe.

THE GOLDEN GATE AS SEEN FROM SAN FRANCISCO.

the Mexicans. The Americans on the Pacific coast declared their independence. Monterey (*mont'a-rā*), San Francisco, and Los Angeles (*loz an'je-les*), were taken, and the United States flag was raised as soon as official intelligence of the war was received.

1846. July.

RESUMPTION OF HOSTILITIES.

32. General Taylor marched upon Monterey * when the volunteers had joined him. He stormed and took the town, after a stubborn fight. An armistice for eight weeks was concluded, but it was disallowed by the Government of the United States. A new danger was approaching. Santa Anna had been permitted to return from Havana, where he was living in exile. He became President of Mexico, gathered a formidable army, and marched against the invaders at Monterey.

33. General Worth was stationed at Saltillo, in advance of that place. He was joined by General Wool, and afterwards by General Taylor, whose force had been greatly weakened by drafts from it for the army of General Scott. Taylor took up

* There were two Montereys in Mexico; one west of the Rio Grande, one on the Pacific. See map, p. 194.

his position at **Buena Vista** (*bwa'nah vees'tah*), with only five thousand men. Santa Anna arrived with more than twice that number.* The Mexican summons to surrender was quietly refused. Next morning the battle began. It was kept up during the day. It had been gallantly maintained by Taylor's little army, and seemed to be lost when night arrested the combat. Taylor occupied the field, expecting the renewal of the battle with returning light.† The Mexicans had withdrawn in the darkness, to meet greater perils in the South.

1847. 23 Feb.

34. **The return of Santa Anna to Mexico,** and his energetic conduct, rendered a change in the line of operations expedient. He had deceived the Government of the United States, which had accorded him a passage through the fleet. Instead of promoting the restoration of peace, he inspired the Mexicans with increased determination. It was resolved to **strike at the heart of the Mexican Republic.** General Scott was placed in command of the main army, with orders to advance from the coast to the city of Mexico. This purpose left General Taylor and his troops in idleness. The border territory was, however, already occupied by the Americans.

VERA CRUZ AND CERRO GORDO.

35. **Scott's army was conveyed to Vera Cruz** by sea. That strongly fortified city was attacked from the water and from the land, and soon capitulated. After a fortnight's preparation, Scott advanced into the interior. At the foot of the mountains he found the heights above fortified and occupied by Santa Anna, who had got back from Buena Vista by a rapid march. The works at

1847. 29 March.

---

* The number is uncertain. It is usually put at over twenty thousand, on the strength of Santa Anna's declaration, when he summoned Taylor to surrender.

† To the last charge, directed by Taylor, belongs the once famous order, "Give them a little more grape, Capt. Bragg." There is no foundation for the story.

Cerro Gordo were turned by a road secretly constructed by
18 April. Capt. Robert E. Lee and Lieutenant Beauregard * (*bō're-gard*). The ridges were scaled, the intrenchments stormed, the Mexicans routed, and pursued almost to Jalapa (*hah-lah'pah*). Next day Jalapa was entered.

HALT AT PUEBLA.

36. Three days after the occupation of Jalapa the fortress of Perote (*pa-rō'ta*), on the summit of the eastern Cordillera,† was captured, with its guns and ammunition. In three weeks more the great and populous city of Puebla (*pweb'lah*) was taken. Here General Scott waited for reinforcements, as his numbers had fallen to four or five thousand men. During this interval of rest, Nicholas P. Trist, the special commissioner of the United States, vainly invited the Mexicans to make peace.

RENEWAL OF THE ADVANCE.

37. When his reinforcements came, **General Scott marched, by the National Road,** to the pass of the Rio Frio
7 Aug. (*ree'o free'o*), or Cold River, in the main chain of the Rocky Mountains. From the summit the city of Mexico was visible at the distance of forty miles. All the approaches along the road were fortified, and held by the Mexicans in force. Scott turned to the left, cut a road round the southern shore of Lake Chalco, and planted himself on the highway from Acapulco and the Pacific, nine miles from the city.

CONTRERAS AND CHURUBUSCO.

38. **Scott's position was extremely hazardous.** His army was small. He was in the heart of the enemy's country. His communications were long and exposed to interruption. The interval between him and the city of Mexico was rugged,

* These officers will be heard of again in other scenes.

† Cordillera, a chain, is the designation applied to the several ranges of the Rocky Mountains in North America, and of the Andes in South America.

difficult, and easily defended. The enemy before him was greatly superior in numbers, and was supported by a city vast in extent, in resources, and in population. Skill and daring were alike required. In front were the fortified heights of Contreras (*con-trā'ras*), the pass of San Antonio, and the strong fortifications of Churubusco (*choo-roo-boos'ko*). Two midnight attacks were made on Contreras. On the second, it was forced "in seventeen minutes," just as day dawned. The pass of San Antonio was carried, and Churubusco was stormed. Five victories were won on this day. Scott had less than ten thousand men; the Mexicans, thirty-two thousand. Scott, who was vainglorious by disposition, might well speak in his report of "this glorious army, which has now overcome all difficulties—distance, climate, ground, fortifications, numbers." Proposals of peace were again made and an armistice granted. The negotiations again failed.

1847. 20 Aug.

OCCUPATION OF THE CITY OF MEXICO.

39. The failure was followed by the resumption of hostilities. The approaches to the city were still commanded by the castle of **Chapultepec** (*chah-pool'ta-pek*). It stood on the summit of a bluff, one hundred and fifty feet high, within cannon-shot of the archbishop's palace, where Scott had his head-quarters. It could be assailed only on one slope, and was defended on that side by stone buildings and the intrenchments of **Molino del Rey** (*mo-lee'no del rā*). Santa Anna held these lines with fourteen thousand men; they were taken by Worth with thirty-two hundred. Chapultepec was next stormed. Its garrison was driven out and pushed over its rugged slopes. Next morning General Scott took possession of the city, and the flag of the United States was raised over the national palace. The war was ended, though some later actions occurred and Santa Anna experienced a last defeat before hostilities entirely ceased.

13, 14 Sept.

TREATY OF GUADALUPE HIDALGO.

40. **An irregular treaty was signed** by Mr. Trist, at **Guadalupe Hidalgo** (*gwah-dah-loo'pa ee-dal'go*). It was ratified by the Senate of the United States, after much discussion. Upper California, New Mexico, and the boundary of the Rio Grande for Texas, were gained. It was stipulated that Mexico should receive $18,250,000 as purchase money. The war had cost between $150,000,000 and $200,000,000, and upwards of twenty thousand lives. It had added more than a third to the previous territory of the United States.

1848. 2 Feb.

CALIFORNIA GOLD.

41. The existence of gold in the sands and rocks of California had long been known,* though known only to a few. A fortnight before the treaty with Mexico was signed, gold was accidentally discovered near the Sacramento River. The news flew abroad into all lands. Clouds of adventurers, of every color and from every land, flocked to the golden shores. The treasures of the world have been enormously increased by this and later discoveries of the precious metals. Trade, industry, finance, morals, and all social relations have been still more disturbed by their easy acquisition, and by the rapid enlargement of public wealth and of private fortunes. In the United States, party discords were grievously inflamed by the new object of contention.

1848. 19 Jan.

THE WILMOT PROVISO.

42. **The acquisition of California revived,** with greater virulence, the question involved in the Missouri compromise, and the opposition between the Northern and Southern States. Its veins of gold, and other surprising attractions, rendered the

* Gold was discovered at Capt. Suter's mill. Polk says in his message, 5th December, 1848, "It was known that mines of the precious metals existed to a considerable extent."

new domain a subject of acrimonious strife between the sections. A provison to exclude slavery from all new territory, called the **Wilmot proviso,** had been proposed in Congress two years before, but had been rejected. It indicated the purposes of a rapidly growing party, which assumed the name of the "Free-Soil Party."*

43. **The Irish famine** occurred while Polk was President. Large donations of food and other supplies were made by public and private charity for the relief of the starving people of Ireland. Two new States, Iowa and Wisconsin, were added to the Union, and a territorial government was given to Oregon.

44. Polk was not renominated to the Presidency, nor was Henry Clay. General Zachary Taylor was the candidate of the Whigs, with Millard Fillmore † as Vice-President. They were elected. The new party, the Free-Soilers, assembled at Buffalo, and proposed their own nominees. Thus began the final strife between the abolitionists, of various shades of opinion, and the slave-owners, supported by those who still adhered to the original compromises of the Constitution.

ADMINISTRATION OF GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR.—1849–1850.

45. **California presented a tempting battle-field** for

* The Free-Soil party laid down these principles: "1. That it was the duty of the general Government to abolish slavery wherever it could be done in a constitutional manner. 2. That the States within which slavery existed had the sole right to interfere with it. 3. That Congress can alone prevent the existence of slavery in the Territories. By the first of these principles, it was the duty of Congress to abolish slavery in the District of Columbia; second, to leave its regulation to the States where it existed; and third, to abolish it in territory now free."

† Millard Fillmore (1800–1874), of New York, was the son of poor parents, and never saw a grammar or a geography before he was eighteen years of age. He presided over the Senate with great impartiality during the angry discussion of "the Omnibus Bill." He was nominated for the Presidency in 1856, by the American, or "Know Nothing" party, but received only the electoral vote of Maryland.

political contention. Its gold mines were productive beyond all expectation. They drew multitudes from all quarters, and caused a sudden display of feverish activity along the Pacific shore. The recent acquisition soon sought admission into the Union. After violent debates, it was received as a State, from which slavery was excluded. Utah and New Mexico were organized as territories. Ten millions of dollars were awarded to Texas for the surrender of its claims in New Mexico. An act was passed for the recovery of fugitive slaves, and the slave trade was abolished in the District of Columbia. These measures constituted "Clay's compromise of 1850."* Mr. Fillmore said of them: "They are regarded by me as a settlement in principle and substance—a final settlement—of the dangerous and exciting subjects which they embrace." They were no settlement, but the seeds of fiercer discords.

ZACHARY TAYLOR.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF MILLARD FILLMORE.—1850–1853.

46. General Taylor died during these discussions. The Vice-President became President. Fillmore's efforts to enforce the late "compromise measures" were not successful. A Southern convention, composed of delegates from seven States, met at Nashville, to consider the dangers with which the institution of slavery

1850. 3 June.

* These several acts were at first included in one bill, nicknamed "the Omnibus Bill." They were founded upon resolutions introduced by Mr. Clay, 29th Jan., 1850.

was threatened, and to decide upon the remedy. Peaceable secession was proposed. No conclusion was reached.

47. **Cuba was twice invaded** by adventurers under General Lopez. He was captured and executed. Colonel Crittenden and his companions were shot. William Walker, of Louisiana, attempted the conquest of Lower California and Sonora, and, the next year, the seizure of Nicaragua. Efforts were made to ascertain the fate of Sir John Franklin, a daring English navigator, who had never returned from an arctic exploration undertaken eighteen years before. Dr. Kane was the most noted leader in these enterprises. The country was singularly prosperous. The public revenue exceeded the expenditures by nearly $18,000,000; and the treasury contained more than $32,000,000 surplus. The population was over twenty-three millions.

1851. 1853. 1854. 1853.

MILLARD FILLMORE.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF GENERAL FRANKLIN PIERCE.—1853–1857.

48. **General Franklin Pierce succeeded Fillmore** in the Presidency. The Whigs had nominated General Winfield Scott. Pierce was soon engaged in difficult negotiations with foreign powers—with Mexico, with Austria, with Great Britain, and with Spain. "The Gadsden Treaty" settled the Mexican

boundary for an additional payment of $10,000,000. "The Treaty of Washington"—a reciprocal treaty—closed the differences with Great Britain. "The Treaty of Ken-a-gaw'a"

FRANKLIN PIERCE.

1854. 23 Mar. opened Japanese harbors to American trade, and initiated the marvellous development of current civilization in Japan. Denmark was notified that "the Sound Dues"—a toll levied on ships entering the Baltic—would no longer be paid by American vessels.*

"BLEEDING KANSAS."

49. Domestic affairs were more important than foreign transactions at this time. The slavery question engrossed the attention of all parties. The Missouri compromise was abrogated by the bill of Senator Douglas † for the organization of the Kansas and Nebraska territories. Kansas lay in the same latitude with Missouri. The contending factions of the North and South hastened to seize it. A local civil war ensued. "Emigrant Aid Societies" in the Northern States sent Free-Soil "squatters" to engage in the war, and provided them with arms. "Blue Lodges" in Missouri, "Jayhawkers" along the border, and other armed bodies, were encouraged by the South. Skirmishes and raids, outrages and murders, were frequent. John Brown, of Os-sa-wat'o-mie,

* This notification led to the negotiations resulting in the treaty of 14th March, 1857, which put an end to the exaction of these duties. The treaty was made between Denmark and the commercial States of Europe, by which a large sum of money was paid in satisfaction of all such demands in future.

† Stephen Arnold Douglas (1813–1861) was born in Vermont, and settled in Illinois. At twenty-two years of age he was Attorney-General of the State. He was nominated for the Presidency in 1860.

rendered himself very prominent by his daring, energy, and fanatical determination.

50. **The war of the settlers produced anarchy** in Kansas, and alarm throughout the country. The territorial Legislature upheld slavery. The Free-Soil Convention at Topeka framed a constitution excluding it. Governor after governor tried vainly to establish peace and order. A Free-Soil Legislature, assembled at Topeka, was driven out of their legislative hall by Federal troops.

1857. 7 Jan.

51. "Bleeding Kansas" and "Kansas troubles" became party cries in the next election for President. The Free-Soilers, or Republicans, nominated John C. Fremont * as their candidate. The Whigs united with the new faction of the "Know-Nothings,"† or Native Americans, and put forward Millard Fillmore. The Democrats supported James Buchanan ‡ and John C. Breckinridge,§ who were elected as President and Vice-President respectively.

---

* General John Charles Fremont (1813-) gained much distinction by his explorations along the line of the Rocky Mountains, and beyond them, from 1842 onwards. He discovered the South Pass. His concern in the conquest of California has been noticed. He was a Major-General on the Union side in the war of secession. He was appointed Governor of Arizona Territory in 1878.

† "The Know-Nothings," or Native Americans, constituted a political party bound together by secret signs and passwords. They assembled in secret meetings. They were popularly designated "Know-Nothings," because they were directed to reply to all inquiries by the uninitiated, that they "knew nothing" of the order. The object of the party, from which it derived the name of Native Americans, was to withhold the elective franchise from foreigners settled in the United States till after a long term of probation. They arose as a distinct political party in 1853.

‡ James Buchanan (1791-1868), of Pennsylvania, had been so long engaged in public life (since 1814) that he was ridiculed as "the old functionary"—a designation which he had used in referring to himself.

§ John Cabell Breckinridge (1821-1875), of Kentucky, was the grandson of John Breckinridge, former Senator and Attorney-General of the United States. He was nominated for the Presidency in 1860. He resigned his seat in the Senate, and joined the Southern Confederacy, becoming a Major-General in its service. He was Secretary of War at the time of its overthrow.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN.—1857–1861.

52. **Mr. Buchanan entered upon his high office** with the earnest desire of destroying sectional parties, and with "the hope that the long agitation of the slavery question was approaching its end." Two days after his inauguration a fresh impulse was given to the opponents of slavery. The Supreme Court decided, in "the Dred Scott case," that a negro was not a citizen, and that the Missouri compromise did not accord with the Constitution.*

JAMES BUCHANAN.

KANSAS.

53. **Kansas necessarily attracted the close attention** of both the Government and the people. The Topeka Constitution was rejected by Congress on the score of illegality. The Pro-Slavery Constitution adopted at Lecompton was repudiated by the people. A constitution framed by a convention held at Wyandot excluded slavery. Under it Kansas was received as a State, on the eve of the great civil war.

UTAH AND THE MORMONS.

54. **Utah,** a desolate wilderness beyond the Rocky Moun-

* "The Dred Scott case" was an action instituted for the recovery of the freedom of himself and family, by Dred Scott, a negro slave, who had been carried to Illinois by his owner in 1834. The case was carried by appeal to the Supreme Court. Chief Justice Taney delivered the opinion of the majority of the court, dismissing the case for want of jurisdiction, on the ground that negroes were not citizens, and "had no rights which the white man was bound to respect."

tains, had been occupied by the Mormons. They were a strange people, with a strange creed and strange usages, who slighted the authority of the United States Government, under which they lived. The sect had arisen in New York in 1823. They had received their doctrine from their prophet, Joe Smith, who found a new revelation in certain "golden plates" —the Book of Mormon—which he discovered, dug up out of the ground, and interpreted. From New York they wandered to Missouri. They were expelled from the latter State. Their new settlement at Nauvoo, in Illinois, was attacked by Governor Ford and the militia. Joe Smith and his brother were murdered by the mob in the jail where they were confined. Brigham Young * became the Mormon leader. He guided his fellow-believers, with their families and flocks, by untrodden ways, across the desert and the Rocky Mountains, and settled them as a lone and exclusive community in the heart of the remote wilderness within the confines of Mexico.† Here they resisted the jurisdiction of the United States, and defied the officers of the Government. General A. S. Johnston‡ was sent with a military force to secure obedience. The Mormons made a doubtful submission when the army approached Salt Lake City, after many difficulties and delays.

1844. 27 June.

1857.

JOHN BROWN'S ATTACK ON HARPER'S FERRY.

55. A strange event quickened and maddened the

* Brigham Young (1801–1877) and Joseph Smith (1805–1844) were both born in Vermont. Young joined the Mormons in 1832, and was one of the twelve apostles in 1835. The migration to the Salt Lake Valley was made in 1846. A constitution for a State, to be named Deseret, was framed in 1849, but rejected by Congress. In 1852, Young proclaimed polygamy, announcing it as a revelation to Joe Smith, by whose family it was declared a forgery. Hence the Mormons are split into the Brighamites and Josephites.

† Utah was a part of the territory afterwards acquired from Mexico as one of the results of the Mexican war.

‡ General Albert Sidney Johnston (1803–1862) served in the Black Hawk war, and in 1836 entered the Texan army as a private. His appointment as commander-in-chief of that army led to a duel with his predecessor, General Felix Houston, in which he was severely wounded. When the war of secession broke out, he joined the Southern Confederacy, and was appointed to the full rank of General.

angry conflict between the North and the South. John Brown, of Ossawatomie, already notorious in the Kansas disturbances, with twenty-one followers seized by night the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry, on the northern border of Virginia. Wise, the Governor, called out a very large force of volunteers and militia. Before they could reach the scene, Brown and his companions were captured by Colonel Robert E. Lee and a body of United States marines. Brown's design was to kindle insurrection among the slaves of the South. He brought pike-heads and other weapons to arm them. He was desperately wounded before he was captured. Twelve others, including one of his sons, were slain. The surviving prisoners were tried, condemned, and hanged.

1859. 16 Oct.

56. The Southern States had reason to be alarmed, for Brown's designs, and Brown himself, had been encouraged by the earnest sympathies of prominent politicians and ot large numbers at the North. The Abolition and Free-Soil parties were, about this time, further exasperated by local attempts to revive the slave trade.*

THE PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION, 1860.

57. The slavery question became almost the sole issue regarded in the next Presidential election. Party relations were rendered uncertain by it, and old parties crumbled away beneath it. The Democrats separated into two wings, notwithstanding the dangers confronting the country. Each wing presented its own candidate. The two Democratic rivals were John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky, and Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois. The Union Whigs advocated the election of John Bell, of Tennessee. The Republicans, whose numbers were swelled by opponents of slavery from every quarter, suc-

* The yacht *Wanderer* landed more than three hundred Africans, from Africa, near Brunswick, Georgia, 28th November, 1858. Other cargoes of negro slaves were run in at other points on the southern coast.

ceeded in electing Abraham Lincoln,* of Illinois. Lincoln had a decided majority of the electoral vote, though little more than a third of the votes of the people.

58. **The election of Mr. Lincoln was the triumph of the North,** and of Northern sentiment on the subject of slavery. All of his electoral votes were from Northern States. The danger of a geographical division of parties, so sagaciously apprehended by Washington, had come upon the country. The necessity of withdrawing from the Union and of preparing for a separate existence, had been anxiously discussed at the South. President Buchanan, during his last months of office, was perplexed, uncertain, and helpless. His Cabinet fell away from him. He was unable to control the policy of his Government. All that he did was to declare that neither President nor Congress had the right to coerce a State.

SECESSION OF SOUTH CAROLINA.

59. **South Carolina took the first decisive action.** It passed an ordinance of secession, and "solemnly declared that the union heretofore existing between this State and the other States of North America is dissolved." In little more than a month the example was followed by six other States—Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas. Their representatives and senators withdrew from Congress on the secession of their respective States. Their withdrawal weakened the resistance to the party which was now dominant.

1860. 20 Dec.

THE PEACE CONFERENCE.

60. **The State of Virginia made the last effort to avert civil war.** A Peace Conference was proposed. Twenty-one States were represented at Washington, when it assem-

* Abraham Lincoln (1809–1865) was taken by his father from Kentucky to Illinois when only seven years of age. At nineteen he went as a hand on a flat-boat to New Orleans. At twenty-one he helped his father to clear, fence, and cultivate a crop at the new home to which the family had removed. He was President from 1861 till his assassination.

bled. Ex-President Tyler was chosen to preside over its deliberations. Its suggestions were rejected by Congress, as was also the Crittenden compromise which had been previously introduced.*

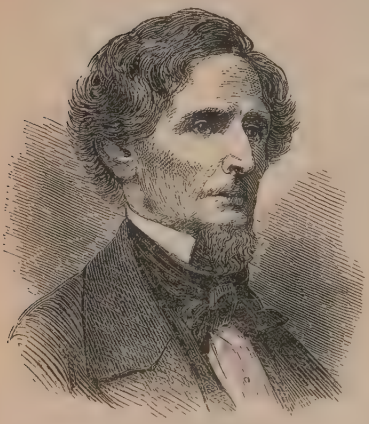
1861. 4 Feb.

THE FIRST HOSTILE ACT.

61. The civil war had, indeed, already begun. Fort Moultrie, in Charleston harbor, was occupied by Major Anderson and a small garrison. On the night after Christmas he abandoned it, and removed to Fort Sumter, which was more capable of defence. This movement was sustained by the President. Fort Moultrie was promptly seized by the South Carolina forces, and preparations were made for the reduction of Fort Sumter. The garrison was weak; the supplies were scanty. An attempt to increase its resources failed.

THE SOUTHERN CONFEDERACY.

62. The Confederate Congress met at Montgomery, the capital of Alabama, on the same day on which the Peace Conference assembled in Washington. The constitution adopted for the new confederation differed only in a few, but important, respects from that of the United States. Colonel Jefferson Davis,† late Senator from Mississippi, was elected Provisional President. Mr. Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, who had been



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

* "The Crittenden compromise" was presented 18th December, 1860, and rejected 3d March, 1861. John Jay Crittenden (1785–1863), its author, was from Kentucky, and had been Senator from that State almost continuously since 1835.

† Jefferson Davis (1808–), born in Kentucky, but a citizen of Mississippi, ac-

earnestly opposed to secession, was elected Vice-President.* General Beauregard was appointed General of the Provisional Army.

MR. LINCOLN'S INAUGURATION.

63. Mr. Lincoln left his home in Illinois, as Buchanan's term of office was drawing to a close. He moved slowly towards Washington. Rumors of intended assassination induced him to alter his proposed route to the Capitol. He left Harrisburg by night, and in disguise. He reached the seat of Government in safety. His inauguration was protected from all hazard of disturbance by the military arrangements of General Scott.

OTHER MATTERS OF NOTE.

64. An expedition was sent to Paraguay to obtain satisfaction for injuries committed. It was completely successful. General Scott visited Oregon to arrange a dispute with the British authorities of Vancouver's Island, in regard to the straits between that island and the mainland. The controversy was allayed for a time.

The first year of Buchanan's administration was marked by financial disaster, and the general suspension of specie payments. The disturbance scarcely extended south of the Potomac, and was speedily redressed by the magnitude of the cotton crop, which, in 1860, reached five million three hundred and eighty-seven thousand and fifty-two bales.

Three new States were added to the Union during these four years—Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas. The census taken in 1860 showed the number of the population to be

---

quired distinction in the Mexican war. He served under his father-in-law, General Zachary Taylor. He was seriously wounded at Buena Vista. He was Secretary of War under President Pierce.

* Alexander Hamilton Stephens (1812–1883), of Georgia, a member of the Lower House of Congress from 1843, except during the Southern Confederacy and the period of reconstruction, to Nov., 1882, when he became Governor of Georgia.

thirty-one million four hundred and forty-five thousand. There were little more than five million of white inhabitants in the States that seceded, while the number of the colored population exceeded four million.*

* The whole number of Africans imported, at all times, into the United States, was from three hundred and seventy-five thousand to four hundred thousand. From these all the rest descended.

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART V.

PROGRESS OF THE REPUBLIC.

Monroe's Second Administration. 1. Prosperity; the Monroe doctrine. 2. Settlement of Oregon; decrease of the national debt; Lafayette's visit. 3. Result of Presidential election.

Administration of John Quincy Adams. 4. The Georgia controversy. 5. Death of John Adams, Jefferson, Monroe. 6. Tariff of 1828. 7. Adams not reëlected.

Andrew Jackson's Administration. 8. Influence of Jackson's administration; Jackson's previous career; Black Hawk war; the Cherokees. 9. The tariff; nullification; Clay's compromise. 10. The United States Bank; removal of the deposits; failure of the bank. 11. Jackson reëlected; Martin van Buren. 12. Controversy with France. 13. The Seminole War; Osceola; Withlacoochee; Okeechobee; cost of the war; the Creeks. 14. Effect produced on the temper of parties. 15. Prosperity; extinction of the debt; distribution of the surplus in the Treasury.

Van Buren's Administration. 16. Van Buren marks the second generation; the great financial crash. 17. Canadian rebellion. 18. Magnetic telegraph; exploring expedition; increase of population; Anti-Slavery Society. 19. Whig triumph; character of the canvass.

Administrations of Harrison and Tyler. 20. Death of President Harrison; Tyler President; offends the Whigs. 21. Tyler's vetoes; the Cabinet resigns. 22. The Ashburton Treaty. 23. The Dorr Rebellion. 24. The South Pass. 25. Admission of Texas; Fort Alamo; San Jacinto; the Lone Star. 26. Bursting of the Peacemaker. 27. The Presidential election; Florida admitted.

Polk's Administration. 28. Prospect before it; preparations for war. 29. Taylor's advance; Palo Alto; Resaca de la Palma. 30. The Oregon Treaty. 31. Conquest of California. 32. Taylor storms Monterey; Santa Anna's return. 33. Buena Vista; Mexican retreat. 34. Plan of the campaign changed. 35. Vera Cruz; Cerro Gordo. 36. Puebla: long halt. 37. Scott's advance. 38. Perilous position of Scott; Contreras; Churubusco; proposals of peace. 39. Chapultepec; Molino del Rey; battle of Chapultepec; city of Mexico occupied. 40. Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo; increase of territory. 41. California gold; effect on politics. 42. "Wilmot Proviso"; "Free-Soil Party." 43. Irish famine; Iowa and Wisconsin admitted; Oregon organized. 44. The Presidential election; the Free-Soilers; the Abolition controversy.

Taylor's Administration. 45. California, its mines, population, ad-

mission ; Utah and New Mexico ; Texas ; fugitive slave law ; Clay's compromise.

Fillmore's Administration. 46. Death of General Taylor ; Fillmore's policy ; Southern convention. 47. Invasion of Cuba ; of Lower California and Sonora ; of Nicaragua ; search for Sir John Franklin ; expenditure ; population.

Pierce's Administration. 48. Pierce's opponent ; diplomatic proceedings ; Gadsden Treaty ; Treaty of Washington ; treaty with Japan ; Danish Sound dues. 49. Missouri compromise abrogated ; Kansas causes civil discord ; "Aid Societies" ; "Blue Lodges" ; "Jayhawkers" ; John Brown. 50. Topeka Convention ; Topeka Legislature expelled. 51. Presidential election ; "Know-Nothings."

Buchanan's Administration. 52. Buchanan's desire ; Dred Scott decision. 53. Topeka Constitution rejected ; Lecompton Constitution ; Wyandot Constitution. 54. Utah ; the Mormons ; their wanderings, murder of Joe Smith ; Mormons remove to Utah ; General Johnston's expedition. 55. John Brown's attack on Harper's Ferry ; Brown captured and hanged. 56. Brown's attempt alarms the Southern States ; the Abolition and Free-Soil parties enraged. 57. Presidential election ; breaking up of parties ; Abraham Lincoln elected. 58. Consequences of Lincoln's election ; Buchanan's difficulties. 59. Secession of South Carolina ; other States secede ; withdrawal from Congress. 60. "The Peace Conference." 61. The first step in the war ; Major Anderson and Fort Sumter. 62. Confederate Congress ; Jefferson Davis President ; Alexander Stephens Vice-President ; Beauregard General. 63. Lincoln inaugurated. 64. Paraguay expedition ; Scott's visit to Oregon ; financial distress ; Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas admitted ; the population ; population of Seceding States.

TO ILLUSTRATE

THE WAR OF SECESSION

Engraved for Holm

of the United States.

PART VI.

WAR OF SECESSION.—RECONSTRUCTION AND GROWTH.

1861–1881.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN.—1861–1865.

The First Year of the War, 1861.

1. The important period subsequent to the inauguration of President Lincoln is so recent, and so full of contending passions and prejudices, that it can be treated only lightly and with hesitation. The main facts may be given, but their details and circumstances are still disputed. Only a small part of the Federal and Confederate archives of the war has yet been published. The period is one of incessant conflict—military, political, and social. For more than a generation no agreement can be expected in regard to these grave transactions. A short and temperate statement of the leading events is all that will be attempted here. The true history of the times must wait till a later day, when par-

ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

tialities and antipathies have been mitigated by renewed harmony, or by other changes of sentiment.*

2. **The seeds of contention were introduced** into the country with the foundation of the colonies. Their active growth was displayed in the Continental Congress. They occasioned increasing discordance after independence had been won. Sooner or later, war between the North and the South —the trading and the planting—the free and the slave-holding States—was almost certain to occur. Actual hostilities had been with difficulty prevented during the last weeks of Buchanan's administration. They soon broke out after Lincoln assumed the reins of government.

CAPTURE OF FORT SUMTER.

3. **Fort Sumter, and Fort Pickens at Pensacola,** were the only fortified positions which the Federal Government retained in the seceding States.† The rest of the public establishments had been promptly seized by the several States as soon as they seceded. Sumter had been retained by Major Anderson's transfer to it of his scanty garrison from Fort Moultrie. The Federal authorities determined to send supplies and reinforcements to Fort Sumter: "peaceably, if they can; forcibly, if they must." Hereupon the Confederates bombarded the fort, which surrendered, after it was in flames. No life was lost on either side. President Lincoln at once called for seventy-five thousand troops, and expected a speedy suppression of all resistance.

1861. 13 April.

THE SECESSION OF VIRGINIA.

4. **Virginia refused to furnish troops** for war against her sister States. The State Convention was in session. It

* Neither perfect accuracy nor entire impartiality can be attained in the treatment of a period of such violent excitement and such unsettled events. An earnest desire to avoid misapprehension or misrepresentation is all that can be honestly promised.

† Fortress Monroe was in Virginia, which had not yet seceded. Fort Jefferson (Dry Tortugas) was on Federal domain.

passed an ordinance of secession, and seized the United States armory at Harper's Ferry, and the navy yard at Gosport. Both places were evacuated by their garrisons and damaged before evacuation. At Norfolk, several war vessels were burnt or sunk. One of them, the *Merrimac*, was raised by the Confederates and converted into the first ram * used in modern warfare.

OTHER STATES SECEDE.

5. **North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas followed the example of Virginia** in withdrawing from the Union. Kentucky sought to maintain a neutral position. Maryland and Missouri were restrained by Federal arms. A Massachusetts regiment, passing through Baltimore, was assailed by a crowd in the streets. General B. F. Butler occupied Annapolis, and afterwards Baltimore, and held Maryland by military force.

6. **The seat of the Confederate Government was removed to Richmond** after the secession of Virginia, as the first and heaviest blows of the war were sure to fall upon that State. As soon as the ordinance of secession had been adopted by the people of Virginia, Arlington Heights, opposite to Washington City, were occupied by Federal troops, and Alexandria was seized. Eighty-three thousand men had been ordered for the Federal army by this time, and a blockade of the whole southern coast had been proclaimed.

EARLY ENGAGEMENTS.

7. **The first movements of the war were desultory and disconnected.** It was designed to surround the Southern Confederacy, and crush it as in the folds of an anaconda. Its whole frontier was threatened ; and it was, in

* The designation of "ram" has been given to vessels of war armed with an iron prow or beak, for the purpose of butting, piercing, and sinking the ships of the enemy, after the fashion of the *triremes* and other war galleys of the ancients.

consequence, compelled to make dispositions to meet and repel every attack.* The first campaign opened in Virginia with small and ineffective actions. General Butler was repelled at Big Bethel, near Fortress Monroe. General McClellan † penetrated the mountains of Western Virginia, and defeated the Confederates at Rich Mountain and Carrick's Ford. General Wise retreated to Lewisburg, after having occupied and abandoned the Kanawha Valley. General Floyd was compelled to withdraw from Carnifex Ferry, on the Gauley River. West Virginia fell into the hands of the Federals. A Provisional Government was promptly organized for that part of the State. Unsuccessful efforts were made to regain what had been lost by the Confederacy in this quarter.

THE FIRST BATTLE OF MANASSAS.

8. **The chief battle of the year** was fought near **Manassas** junction, where the railroad from Lynchburg to Washington is joined by the branch line from Manassas Gap. The left wing of the Union army was repelled in a skirmish at the ford of Bull Run.‡ Three days later, the right wing nearly succeeded in turning and crushing the Confederate force opposed to it. The danger was checked by General Early. About the same time General Joseph E. Johnston § received further reinforcements from the Valley. The Federals were hurled back in disastrous rout and confusion, and rushed in dismay to Washington. It was in

1861. 21 July.

---

* Napoleon said : " In civil wars, it is the important points only which should be guarded."

† General George Brinton McClellan (1826–1885) was distinguished in the Mexican war. In 1855 he was sent to the Crimea as a Military Commissioner. He was nominated for the Presidency in 1864. He was elected Governor of New Jersey in 1878.

‡ Bull Run is a small stream which runs along the plains of Manassas. It gives the Federal name to the battle called by the Confederates Manassas.

§ General Joseph Eggleston Johnston (1807–) is still living He was the youngest son of Major Peter Johnston, the friend and companion-in-arms of General Harry Lee, in the Revolution. He served in Florida, and was highly distinguished in the Mexican war.

this stubborn conflict that General Jackson* obtained the honorable name of "Stonewall," from the steadiness of his men.

9. **The victory of Manassas rendered the South exultant,** and enraged the North, while it heightened its resolution. There was no longer any dream of terminating the war in a three months' campaign. Half a million of men and $500,000,000 were voted by the Federal Congress, for the subjugation of the seceding States. Scott resigned the office of Commander-in-chief, and General McClellan was summoned to that high position. He employed the autumn and winter in organizing and training the raw recruits of his vast army.

THE STRUGGLE FOR MISSOURI.

10. **The attempt to withdraw Missouri from the Union** was frustrated by the resolute energy of Capt. Lyon, and the prompt action of Francis P. Blair.† Lyon seized the arsenal at St. Louis. The militia at Camp Jackson, in the neighborhood, were forced to surrender. Governor Jackson called out fifty thousand militia, and named Sterling Price Major-General. Price withdrew to Booneville, where he was defeated by Lyon and Blair. He retreated to the South-west, and was defeated again at Carthage. Price and McCulloch gained a victory at **Oak Hill,** or Wilson's Creek; General Lyon was slain in the battle. At the close of the campaign, Price and the Missouri volunteers were pushed back to the Arkansas frontier.

---

* General Thomas Jonathan Jackson (1824–1863) served with credit in the Mexican war. He resigned his commission in 1852 to accept a professorship in the Virginia Military Institute, at Lexington. He was appointed to command the Virginia "Army of Observation" at Harper's Ferry, in May 1861, and was shot exactly two years afterwards, by his men, acting in accordance with his own instructions. At Manassas, General Bee, encouraging his men, said: "See Jackson standing like a stone-wall." From that time the name of "Stonewall" attached to Jackson, and to his brigade.

† General Francis Preston Blair (1821–1875), of Missouri, served in the Federal army during the war. He was the Democratic nominee for Vice-President in 1868.

11. **Missouri was retained in the Union** by the action of its Convention. The offices of the Government were filled by a new election. The remnant of the former legislature assembled at Neosho, and undertook to attach the State to the Southern Confederacy.

KENTUCKY.

12. **Kentucky was unable to maintain** even the appearance of neutrality. Bishop Polk, of Louisiana, who was a general in the Confederate service, took possession of Columbus, in Western Kentucky, and sent a detachment across the Mississippi to hold **Belmont.** This latter body was attacked by General Grant,* who gained some advantage at first, but was at last under the necessity of withdrawing. It was Grant's first action in this civil warfare.

7 Nov.

OPERATIONS ON THE SEABOARD.

13. **On the seaboard every advantage was on the side of the United States.** The great rivers gradually fell under their control. The South was without ships and without sailors, and was unable to confront the blockade of its harbors. The forts on Hatteras Inlet, in North Carolina, and those on Port Royal harbor, in South Carolina, were captured by Federal fleets and Federal forces. Fort Pickens, in Florida, was preserved to the Union, despite of formidable preparations to take it.

14. The endeavors of the Confederate Government to create a fleet, were, for the most part, fruitless. Their vessels were taken, or were burnt on the stocks before being launched. Confederate cruisers, the *Sumter* and the *Nashville*, had a brief career. They inflicted much damage upon Northern

* General Ulysses Simpson Grant (1822–1885) was in most of the battles of the Mexican war. He resigned his commission in 1854, and subsequently joined his father in a tannery, at Galena, Illinois. In 1861 he was appointed Colonel of Illinois volunteers.

commerce, and created wide-spread alarm. Swift steamers were procured for the purpose of running through the blockading fleets. These continued to exchange the cotton and tobacco of the South for indispensable foreign supplies.

THE CONFEDERATE COMMISSIONERS.

15. The Southern people had deemed cotton so necessary to the great nations of Europe as to insure the early support of England and France. They had long repeated the saying: "Cotton is King." They were disappointed. The Commissioners to England and France, Mason and Slidell, were taken off the British steam-packet *Trent*, by Capt. Wilkes, of the *San Jacinto*. England demanded their release, and was sustained in the demand by France. Mr. Seward,* the Secretary of State, ordered them to be replaced under British protection, and thus avoided a foreign war.

8 Nov.

THE RESULTS OF THE YEAR.

16. Nothing had been achieved by the first campaign. The honors were with the South. The substantial advantages were with the North. Both sections had been obliged to suspend payments in specie, and to substitute Government paper (Treasury notes) for coin. Confiscation acts were passed by both the Federal and the Confederate Congress. The purpose of abolishing slavery had been frequently denied by the Federal authorities. Their action was changed on the score of military necessity.

THE SECOND YEAR OF THE WAR, 1862.

17. A series of disasters befell the Confederates in

* William Henry Seward (1801-1872), of New York, proclaimed "the irrepressible conflict" in 1848, and "the higher law" in 1850. His name had been the most prominent for the nomination for the Presidency when Lincoln was nominated. He was Secretary of State under Lincoln and Johnson. He made a journey through California and Mexico in 1869, and a tour round the world in 1870-1871.

the first months of the second year of the war. Generals Crittenden and Zollicoffer were routed at **Mill Springs,** on the southern border of Kentucky. Generals McCulloch and Price were defeated at **Elk Horn** (Pea Ridge), in Arkansas.

1862. 16 Feb. Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland, were taken by General Grant, supported by gun-boats under Commodore Foote. The loss of these forts necessitated the abandonment of Kentucky and of Nashville. Columbus, on the Mississippi, and

8 Feb. Island No. 10, were given up. Roanoke Island, on the coast of North Carolina, was taken by General Burnside, with the aid of a strong naval squadron. Norfolk was thus threatened from the rear. A trifling victory, unproductive of success, at Valverde (*val-vair'da*), in New Mexico, was the only Confederate success.

INAUGURATION OF JEFFERSON DAVIS.

18. **The frontier of the Confederacy was thus pushed back** in the West to Arkansas and Tennessee, and the coast of North Carolina passed into Federal occupation.

1862. 22 Feb. On a gloomy day in this time of gloom, Jefferson Davis was inaugurated as the regular President of the Southern Confederacy. The armies were reorganized, and a Conscription Act passed, to fill up the ranks, as the early enthusiasm was already declining under the stern trials of actual military service.

19. **The South was waging a defensive war.** Its movements were, therefore, determined by the movements of the Northern armies. The war was still conducted by the North without unity of plan, without due combination, and was pressed on every frontier. It was, however, less desultory than it had been in the previous campaign.

THE VIRGINIA AND THE MONITOR.

20. **General McClellan lay round Washington** with

nearly two hundred thousand men. He was confronted by General Joe Johnston with less than one-third of that number. Before the campaign opened on land, a remarkable conflict occurred in Hampton Roads, between Norfolk and Fortress Monroe. The frigate *Merrimac*, as has been mentioned, had been raised by the Confederates, plated with railroad iron, and armed with a beak, or ram. She was re-named the **Virginia.** She attacked the Federal fleet, sank the *Cumberland*, and captured the *Congress*, which was burnt. Next day she encountered the iron-coated, turreted **Monitor,** which had just arrived from the North. The combat between these strange war monsters was undecided, the *Monitor* retiring into shoal water, and the *Virginia* withdrawing to Norfolk to repair damages. Two months later, the *Virginia* was blown up by her commander. The *Monitor* was lost in a storm on the last day of the year.

8 March.

THE WAR IN THE PENINSULA.

21. **McClellan made a feint against Johnston's lines** before Washington, and then rapidly threw his army round by water to the Peninsula between the York and the James Rivers. His design was to move on the Confederate capital by a shorter land route. He was arrested by a small force under General Magruder, while General Johnston marched his army to the scene. When McClellan advanced, Yorktown and Norfolk were evacuated, and a spirited action occurred at Williamsburg. Slowly he followed Johnston towards Richmond, which was, at the same time, threatened by McDowell at Fredericksburg, and thrown into consternation by a Federal fleet on James River.

THE BATTLE OF SEVEN PINES.

22. Johnston fell suddenly upon McClellan at Fair Oaks and **Seven Pines,** while the Union army was divided by the stream and swamps of the Chickahominy. McClellan was driven back with heavy

31 May. 1 June.

loss. The Confederate commander was severely wounded, and was long unfit for service. He was succeeded by General R. E. Lee,* who remained at the head of the army of Northern Virginia till the end of the war.

JACKSON'S CAMPAIGN IN THE VALLEY.

23. The army defending Richmond was strongly reinforced. It was joined by General (Stonewall) Jackson, after a series of rapid movements and brilliant successes, which were among the most striking operations of the war. He had been employed in the Valley of Virginia, where he was threatened by three converging columns :—by Banks from Winchester, by Fremont from West Virginia, and by McDowell from Fredericksburg. Jackson checked Fremont at McDowell; turned against Banks and drove him down the Valley, then forced him out of Winchester and across the Potomac. Retracing his steps, he gave a second check to Fremont, and, next day, routed at Port Republic General Shields, who had been detached against him by General McDowell. By these successes, he prevented Banks and Fremont from influencing approaching events, and McDowell from uniting with McClellan, while he was himself enabled to strengthen Lee.

ROBERT E. LEE.

* General Robert Edward Lee (1807-1870) was the son of "Light-Horse Harry" of the Revolution. At the outbreak of the Civil War he was recognized as the ablest officer in the United States army, and as the destined successor of General Scott. Every effort was made to retain him in the Federal service. He had been highly distinguished in the Mexican war. He surrendered a large fortune by joining the Confederacy. After the war he accepted the Presidency of Washington College, at Lexington, Virginia.

THE SEVEN DAYS' BATTLE.

24. General J. E. B. Stuart* made a cavalry reconnoissance completely round the Union army, which was still divided by the Chickahominy. McClellan was attacked on the right wing, as he was preparing to assume the offensive.† Next day General A. P. Hill carried his position at Gaines's Mill, and Jackson, with timely aid from Longstreet, crushed his lines at **Cold Harbor**. McClellan drew back his army to the James River, where he was protected by his gun-boats. The Confederates rashly attacked him in his strong position at **Malvern Hill**, and were repulsed with great slaughter. Richmond was relieved. The Federal attack had utterly failed.

26 June. 1 July.

25. In the six weeks ensuing, President Lincoln ordered a new levy of six hundred thousand men, and appointed General Halleck Commander-in-chief, in place of McClellan. During the same anxious period, he sought to distract the South by proposing the emancipation of the slaves, with the payment of an arbitrary price for them.

22 Sept.

THE SECOND BATTLE OF MANASSAS.

26. A new army was formed, by combining separate divisions, while McClellan's host lay shattered and dispirited on the banks of the James. It was put under General Pope, with instructions to fall upon Richmond from the North. The advanced division of this army, under Banks, was met and defeated by Jackson at **Cedar Mountain**. Lee brought up his

---

* Major-General James E. B. Stuart (1832-1864), of Virginia, was the most dashing officer of the Confederate cavalry. He fell mortally wounded at the Yellow Tavern, near Richmond.

† Lee's force in the Seven Days' Fight was under eighty thousand, with one hundred and fifty guns. General Early states it to have been "the largest army Lee ever commanded." McClellan placed his force at one hundred and five thousand eight hundred and twenty-five present, fit for duty, with three hundred and forty field-pieces, besides siege guns.

General Heth put the Federal numbers at one hundred and fifteen thousand.

main body from Richmond, got in the rear of Pope by a daring and brilliant manœuvre, and utterly routed him in the

30 Aug. **Second Battle of Manassas**. Pope, after suffering further losses on the retreat, found safety within the lines of Washington. McClellan was restored to the command.

LEE'S INVASION OF MARYLAND.

27. When Pope retired, **Lee crossed the Potomac,** to procure needful supplies, and to relieve Virginia from the enemy by threatening Washington. Nearly twelve thousand Federal troops, with seventy-five guns and ample stores, surrendered at **Harper's Ferry** to a detached force under Jackson. Meanwhile, Lee was forced from his position at South Mountain, and retreated to **Sharpsburg.** Here Jack-

17 Sept. son rejoined him, and a general action took place on **Antietam** (*an-tē'tam*) Creek. The battle was stubborn, and attended with heavy loss on both sides. After waiting a day, in expectation of a renewed attack, Lee crossed the Potomac in the night, and was followed by McClellan.

THE BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.

28. **General McClellan was again displaced.** General Burnside reluctantly accepted the chief command of "the Army of the Potomac." He determined to move straight on Richmond by way of **Fredericksburg.** After long prepara-

12, 13 Dec. tion, the Rappahannock was passed below the town, and the town was subjected to a heavy cannonade. The Federal columns gallantly assaulted Marye's (*mar-eez'*) Hill, but were hurled back with frightful slaughter on every attack. Burnside returned to the northern shore of the river, and was superseded by General Hooker—"Fighting Joe Hooker," as he was called in the army.

THE BATTLE OF SHILOH.

29. **The Confederate disasters in the West** almost

outweighed the successes in Virginia. The Union army, after gaining Fort Donelson and Nashville, pressed on towards Mis-

6, 7 April. sissippi. At **Shiloh** Church, near **Pittsburg Landing,** General Albert S. Johnston fell upon Grant, and drove him to the Tennessee River, under shelter of the gunboats. At this moment Johnston received a mortal wound. During the night General Buell joined Grant, and their combined forces renewed the battle next morning. General Beauregard,* who was now in command of the Confederates, withdrew to Corinth. That place was abandoned on the approach of the Federal army, of more than one hundred thousand men, under General Halleck. A week later, Memphis was captured by the Federals, and the whole course of the Mississippi above Vicksburg fell into their hands. An unsuccessful attempt on the latter city was made by General Grant and General Sherman,† in December.

THE CAPTURE OF NEW ORLEANS.

30. **A more important conquest had been made by the Federals** on the lower Mississippi, six weeks before the

25 April. fall of Memphis. As the forts which defended the river approach to New Orleans did not yield, when bombarded by Admiral Farragut, he cut the chain which barred the passage, led his fleet past the guns, and appeared before the city. It was wholly defenceless, and capitulated at once. A week after, General Benjamin F. Butler arrived with the land forces, and took military possession of the place, which he ruled with coarse severity. The upper and the lower course of the Mississippi was lost to the Southern Confederacy, with nearly all Louisiana.

BATTLE OF PERRYVILLE.

31. The Confederate invasion of Kentucky failed

* General Pierre Gustave Toutant Beauregard (1818–) was promoted for gallant service in Mexico, and became a full General in the Confederate service.

† General William Tecumseh Sherman (1820–) served in the Seminole War. He

entirely. Some slight successes were gained at first. Buell reached Louisville before General Bragg, who was advancing to seize it. Bragg fell back, and was joined by General Kirby Smith with the other invading column. An engagement took place at **Perryville.** The Confederates gained the advantage, but were unable to profit by it. Buell was removed from command, and General Rosecrans was appointed in his place.

8 Oct.

BATTLES OF MURFREESBORO.

32. **Rosecrans followed Bragg into Tennessee,** and fought two battles with him at **Murfreesboro.** On the last day of the year his right wing was driven back. He maintained his ground, and renewed the battle on the second day of the new year. The fighting was desperate, the slaughter great, the other losses very heavy.* Bragg retired southwards.

31 Dec.
2 Jan., 1862.

NAVAL OPERATIONS.

33. **The Federal blockade was strengthened.** The islands along the coasts of Georgia and Florida were captured. The attacks, by sea and land, on the city of Charleston, met with no success, nor had any attended the malicious scheme for ruining its harbor.† It was still reached by daring blockade-runners. Wilmington was the only other port on the Atlantic coast that remained accessible to Confederate intercourse with foreign countries.

1861.
1862.

THE EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION.

34. At the autumnal equinox President Lincoln announced his purpose of declaring the slaves free, wherever the Federal

---

was head of the Louisiana State Military Academy when the war broke out. He gave up his position and joined the Union army. He succeeded Grant as General of the army.

* The killed and wounded on each side exceeded nine thousand.

† Towards the end of the preceding year seventeen vessels loaded with stone were sunk in the harbor. The obstruction deepened another channel.

authority continued to be resisted after the close of the year.* No attention was paid to the threat. An Emancipation Proclamation was, accordingly, issued on New-Year's Day. It produced no immediate effect.

MEDIATION ATTEMPTED.

35. **Louis Napoleon,** the Emperor of France, **invited England and the Czar of Russia** to join with him in offering mediation between the warring sections of the disunited States. The invitation was declined by England, and the project could not be prosecuted. At the beginning of the next year a direct proposal was made by the Emperor alone. It was declined.

CONDITION OF THE BELLIGERENTS.

36. **The war was sustained on both sides by Government currency.†** The value of the paper money declined, but much more rapidly at the South than at the North. The credit of the Federal Government was upheld by trade, manufactures, exports, and accumulated capital; by heavy taxes on imports, on domestic products, on business transactions, and on everything that could be taxed. The Confederacy was weakened by the rigorous blockade, by the various interruptions of industry, by the loss of whole States, or parts of States, and by the Federal control of the Mississippi and its great tributaries.

THE THIRD YEAR OF THE WAR, 1863.

37. The nations of Europe had witnessed with interest and concern the progress of the intestine war in America. The British manufacturers, both employers and factory hands, suf-

* Captured and runaway slaves had been freed before this time, as property "contraband of war." This device had been adopted by General Butler at Fortress Monroe.

† The notes issued by the Confederate Government promised to pay the amounts specified on their face "two years after the conclusion of a Treaty of Peace with the United States."

fered severely from the stoppage of the usual supplies of cot ton. Other classes suffered in connection with them. Recognition of the Confederate States was proposed. There was a wide division of sentiment on the subject. Hostilities proceeded with increased virulence, and the United States put into the field armies larger, more disciplined, and better equipped than before. The military operations continued to be disconnected, and may be distributed, according to their occurrence :—in Virginia ; on the Mississippi, or beyond it ; in Kentucky, Tennessee, and Georgia ; and on the coast. The year was notable for numerous raids conducted on a large scale.

THE BATTLE OF CHANCELLORSVILLE.

38. **"The Army of the Potomac" numbered one hundred and thirty-two thousand men.** Lee's force was little more than one-third as many. Hooker dispatched General Sedgwick to watch, and to threaten, the Confederate right at Fredericksburg, while he moved up the Rappahannock with the main body. Hooker crossed the river, and took up a fortified position at **Chancellorsville.** General Jackson marched with a large part of the Confederate army, from its extreme right, across the front of the whole Federal army, turned Hooker's flank, and suddenly crushed in his right wing. He received several wounds in the darkness from his own men, while preparing to push the great advantage which he had gained. In eight days he was dead.

2 May.

39. The advantage was not wholly lost by Jackson's removal from the field. The Federals were closely "pressed," the next day, by Lee in front, and by Stuart in flank, and were forced back to the river. Lee was recalled from the scene by the necessity of meeting Sedgwick, who was coming up on his rear. Sedgwick was repulsed, but made good his retreat across the Rappahannock. The river was repassed by Hooker also, and rose so much from recent rains as to render pursuit hazardous.

INVASION OF PENNSYLVANIA.

40. **General Lee crossed the Blue Ridge into the Valley,** when relieved from the enemy in his front, and led sixty thousand men into Pennsylvania. The cavalry protecting the rear of both armies and concealing their movements, engaged in a long and repeated combat on the broad plains near Brandy Station (**Battle of Fleetwood**). This was the greatest cavalry action of the war. Winchester was surprised and captured, and Lee poured his army across the Potomac. One hundred thousand Union volunteers were suddenly called for to meet the imminent danger.

THE BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG.

41. **Hooker resigned the command of the Army of the Potomac,** and was succeeded by General Meade. The

1-3 July. Federal and Confederate armies stumbled upon each other at **Gettysburg,*** and the fiercest, the most obstinate, and the bloodiest battle of the war occurred. On three successive days the Confederates endeavored to storm the strong Federal positions on the heights above the town. On the third day, a furious assault was made on the Union centre by Pickett's division and other troops.† The assailants, broken and torn by the murderous cannonade to which they were exposed, reached the intrenchments, and many fell between the guns on the ramparts. They were not effectually supported, and were driven back with fearful loss. Lee waited a day to be attacked, and offered battle on his sturdy retreat. The battle of Gettysburg was the turning event of the war. The Confederates who fell there were never replaced.

42. **Lee returned across the Potomac** into the Valley of Virginia, and was followed by Meade.‡ He fell back slowly

---

* "Meade's army numbered at least 100,000 men; Lee's, less than 60,000 of all arms."

† The attack under Pickett was made by Kemper's and Garnett's brigades, supported by Armstead's. On their right was Wilcox's brigade; on their left, Heth's division, composed chiefly of North Carolinians, under Pettigrew.

‡ On his return to Virginia, after the Gettysburg campaign, General Lee tendered his resignation to President Davis. It was not accepted.

to the Rapidan. By a bold dash, he nearly succeeded in cutting Meade's communications with Washington. He subsequently defeated, at **Mine Run,** an effort to turn his flank and get in his rear.

30 Nov.

SIEGE AND CAPTURE OF VICKSBURG.

43. **A second attempt was made** in the spring **to take Vicksburg,** and thus secure control of the whole course of the Mississippi. A canal, designed to reach the river below, and to change the course of the stream, was dug across the neck of a great bend opposite the city. It was destroyed by a flood. Grant, who was in command, then changed his plans. The Federal iron-clads and transports passed the batteries of Vicksburg in the night. Grant led his army down the right bank of the river, crossed it, and prepared to attack the city from the rear. He took Jackson, the capital of Mississippi, tore up the railroads, inflicted other injuries, routed General Pemberton at **Baker's Creek (Champion Hill),** shut him up in Vicksburg, and invested it.

14 May.

44. **General Joe Johnston,** the chief Confederate commander in Mississippi, **was too weak to** interrupt the siege. Two attempts were made to take the place by storm. They were repulsed with great slaughter. The city was surrendered on the 4th of July. Thus, in the same days, the Confederacy was mortally wounded in the East and in the West. The whole course of the Mississippi was recovered for the Union, and the country beyond it was almost entirely severed from the rest of the Confederacy.

4 July.

STREIGHT'S RAID.

45. **The severity of winter kept the armies in Tennessee inactive.** In the early summer a raid, for the purpose of cutting the railroads, was made by Colonel Streight, and a picked body of Federal cavalry. They were captured by General Forrest, on the border of Alabama and Georgia.

3 May.

MORGAN'S RAID.

46. **General Morgan with his cavalry made a like raid** northwards and across the Ohio. He crossed Kentucky, passed the Ohio below Louisville, swept round Cincinnati, and after vain attempts to recross the Ohio, surrendered with five hundred men, near the upper bend of the river. These prisoners were confined in the Penitentiary.

26 July.

BATTLE OF CHICKAMAUGA.

47. Morgan had failed to receive support, as General Rosecrans had advanced from Murfreesboro on General Bragg at Tullahoma. Bragg withdrew to Chattanooga. This he abandoned when Rosecrans approached. Both armies were strongly reinforced. Bragg fell upon Rosecrans on **Chickamauga** Creek, and drove him, with heavy loss, back into Chattanooga.* An utter rout was prevented only by the steadiness of General Thomas and the left wing of the Union army.†

19-20 Sept.

BATTLES OF LOOK OUT MOUNTAIN AND MISSIONARY RIDGE.

48. **Grant was now appointed** to the command of the Federal armies on the Tennessee. He brought strong reinforcements to the relief of Rosecrans, who was cooped up in Chattanooga, with his communications by river and rail all broken. By Hooker's capture of **Look Out Mountain** (the Battle of the Clouds),‡ and by Sherman's victory next day at **Missionary Ridge,** Bragg was forced out of his strong position, and Rosecrans entirely

24, 25 Nov.

---

* Chickamauga—"the Dead River"—twelve miles from Chattanooga.

† General Garfield, afterwards President, joined Thomas in this stubborn retreat, after the body to which he had been attached was scattered.

‡ "The Battle of the Clouds" never occurred. There was only some skirmishing. It was fog in the valley, not cloud on the mountain, that hid Hooker's movements.

relieved. General Bragg had seriously weakened himself by sending General Longstreet and his corps against Burnside at **Knoxville**, which they besieged. A rash attempt to storm the town was disastrously repulsed.

29 Nov.

BOMBARDMENT OF FORT SUMTER AND CHARLESTON.

49. **No serious change resulted from the operations on the coast** this year. The Confederates recovered Galveston, in Texas, on New-Year's Day. The most important transaction was the renewed attack on Charleston, S. C. An assault on Fort Sumter, by iron-clad war vessels, was defeated with heavy damage to the assailing fleet. Attempts to surprise the fort were foiled. Its walls crumbled under the furious tempest of shot and shell to which it was exposed. Its ruins rendered it invulnerable. Shot and shell plunged harmlessly into the rubbish with which it became encased. The besiegers slowly worked their way closer to the city, by land. Fort Wagner was evacuated after a siege of fifty-seven days. A heavy "Parrott gun" was planted in the swamps, and called "The Swamp Angel." Shells were thrown by it into the city, which had been damaged and set on fire by a previous bombardment.

THE ALABAMA.

50. **The Confederate cruisers,** and especially the **Alabama,*** under Capt. Semmes, inflicted very great damage upon the shipping and commercial interests of the Northern States. These injuries occasioned the demands subsequently made on Great Britain, under the designation of the **Alabama Claims.**

---

* The *Alabama* was built and equipped at Birkenhead, one of the suburbs of Liverpool. It sailed under the name of the "290," being the 290th vessel constructed by the Messrs. Laird. Her armament and stores were sent in advance of her, in a transport, to the Azores. A sharp correspondence took place between Mr. Adams, the United States Ambassador, and Lord John Russell, on the subject of her detention.

WEST VIRGINIA.

51. **West Virginia,** which had been torn off from Virginia in the early period of the war, was admitted into the Union as a separate State, during the year.

CONSEQUENCES OF THE CAMPAIGN

52. **The Southern Confederacy was cut in two** by the loss of the Mississippi. Tennessee was wrenched from it, and its available domain was greatly contracted. It was declining in extent, in resources, and in strength. Its currency was almost worthless, and every project entertained for its improvement quickened its depreciation. The Federal finances were sustained by European loans, and by Secretary Chase's scheme of **National Banks** and **National Currency.** The burdens of war weighed upon the mass of the people, but war produced its own interests and opportunities, and vast fortunes were rapidly made. The territories along the Rocky Mountains were filling up with a busy population, while the older States were involved in bloody strife. Nevada was already beginning to add her treasures to the silver of the world.

25 Feb.

A Conscription Act was passed in the spring by the Congress of the United States. The Union armies needed recruits, and three hundred thousand more men were ordered to the field. This act was resisted in some places, and the conscription caused a desperate riot at New York.

THE FOURTH YEAR OF THE WAR.—1864.

53. **A million of men were in the Federal armies** in the fourth year of the war. The Confederate forces scarcely reached a quarter of that number. The interest is concentrated on two lines of operation: the advance on Richmond in the East, and on Atlanta in the South-west.

Some transactions elsewhere require previous notice to avoid confusion.

54. **General Seymour invaded Florida,** to reclaim it for the Union before the Presidential election. He was utterly defeated at **Olustee (Ocean Pond).** Sherman marched from Vicksburg, to drive the Confederates out of Mississippi. He destroyed the railroads round Meridian, and marked his track with ravage. A cavalry raid was intended to support this movement, but it was arrested by General Forrest at Okalona. Forrest made an attempt on Padu'cah, Ky. He failed there, but stormed and took Fort Pillow.

20 Feb.

55. **General Banks,** with a part of his own and of Sherman's command, undertook an expedition up the Red River, in Louisiana. He was defeated near **Mansfield,** was attacked next day at Pleasant Hill, and driven to the protection of his gun-boats.

8 April.

In North Carolina the Confederates gained an advantage at Newbern, and that town and Plymouth afterwards fell into their hands.

KILPATRICK'S RAID AND DAHLGREN'S DEATH.

56. **The Fourth Campaign in Virginia was more stubborn and more desperate** than any previous one had been. While the armies still watched each other on the Rapidan, Kilpatrick led his cavalry round Lee's right flank, to cut the railroads and surprise Richmond. Colonel Dahlgren, who accompanied the expedition, had undertaken to liberate the Union prisoners on the further side of James River, and, it is asserted, to burn Richmond and to massacre the high officers of the Confederate Government. He could not cross the river, and was killed on the retreat.

GRANT COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF.

57. General Grant, now commander-in-chief of all the

armies of the United States, passed the Rapidan, in the beginning of May, with one hundred thousand men, having forty thousand more under his immediate orders. Lee encountered him with less than thirty thousand, but was joined by Longstreet and other detachments, in the second day's battle. Butler proceeded up the James River, against Richmond and Petersburg, with more than thirty thousand men. Other Federal bodies were distributed in other quarters, to divide the Confederate forces or to distract their attention.

THE BATTLES OF THE WILDERNESS.

58. **Lee,** with his weak force, **engaged at once the great army of Grant,** on its march through the thickets and woods of the **Wilderness.** Longstreet arrived on the second day, but was seriously wounded by his own men, and continued long unfit for service. The desperate fighting lasted, with few interruptions, for a week or more. Grant was constantly reinforced, and steadily endeavored to turn the right flank of the Confederates. He found Lee always in his front, and he was always compelled to edge off in the direction of his own left. A fierce struggle took place at Spottsylvania Court-House, when an advanced work of the Confederates was carried in the early morning by the Union troops.* No permanent advantage was thus gained. Grant continued to slide down Lee's right flank towards Richmond. He had lost, in the repeated engagements, as many men as were in Lee's whole army.

5 May.

12 May.

DEATH OF GENERAL STUART.

59. **General Sheridan made a rapid raid,** to cut the railroads behind Lee, and fall unexpectedly upon Richmond. He pierced the outer defences of the city, but met with opposition, and returned to the main army.

11 May.

* Here, and on another occasion, a few days previously, General Lee had placed himself at the head of his column, and was forced back by the cry of his men: "General Lee to the rear! General Lee to the rear!"

The Confederate General, J. E. B. Stuart, was slain in an encounter with this force.

60. General Butler had disembarked below Richmond, at the confluence of the Appomattox with the James. He was driven into his intrenchments and shut up in his lines by Beauregard :—"bottled up," as General Grant afterwards said.

THE FEDERAL INROAD INTO THE VALLEY.

61. In the Valley, Sigel (*see'ghel*) was routed by Breckinridge, at Newmarket, a victory decided by the Cadets of the State Military Institute. Sigel was replaced by Hunter. The latter was joined by Averill from the Kanawha, and by Cook, who had gained a victory at Dublin, and destroyed the bridge, in that neighborhood, over New River. The united force entered Lexington, burnt the Military Institute, where "Stonewall" Jackson had been a professor, and other buildings. They then crossed the Blue Ridge by difficult paths, and appeared before Lynchburg. Here they were met by Early and Breckinridge. They retreated in ruinous disorder to the Valley of the Kanawha, and were hotly pursued for a time.

15 May.

THE SECOND BATTLE OF COLD HARBOR.

62. **Grant was still edging towards Richmond** while these movements were proceeding elsewhere. He attempted to carry the Confederate works at **Cold Harbor,** but was hurled back with such horrid slaughter that his men refused to repeat the attack. In ten minutes he had sacrificed more than thirteen thousand of his troops. He then transported his army to the southern bank of James River. General Sheridan was dispatched with the cavalry to seize Gordonsville and Charlottesville, but was defeated at Trevillian's Station by General Hampton with a greatly inferior force.

3 June.

THE SIEGE OF PETERSBURG.

63. Grant threw up intrenchments along the whole front of his new position. He was protected on the wings and rear by the James and Appomattox rivers. He still endeavored to turn Lee's flank. The subsequent operations of the campaign took place, in consequence, mainly around **Petersburg.** A fort in front of that city was mined, and blown up, with damage only to the assailants, four thousand of whom perished. The scene of the disaster received the name of "**The Crater.**" Grant continued to extend his lines to the left. He gained the Weldon Railroad, and pushed beyond it. He thus threatened more and more the right and rear of the Confederates, and captured or menaced the railroads which brought their supplies from the South and the South-west. Other attempts were made in other quarters to break or to turn Lee's thin lines. General Butler endeavored to divert the course of the James River, by digging a canal at "Dutch Gap," across a neck of land, at a great bend of the river *

30 July.

ADVANCE ON WASHINGTON.

64. Early and Breckinridge were ordered across the Potomac, when the Valley of Virginia was cleared by Hunter's retreat from Lynchburg. It was intended to threaten Baltimore and Washington, in the hope that Grant would be thus recalled from Petersburg. Grant did not move. The Confederates gained a victory on the Monocacy, and turned towards Washington. Strong reinforcements arrived from Grant, and Early retired. In passing through Pennsylvania, Chambersburg was burnt in retaliation for Hunter's wanton destruction in the Valley.

11 July.

SHERIDAN IN THE VALLEY.

65. The Confederates were followed into Virginia

* The cut has been completed since the war, with benefit to the navigation.

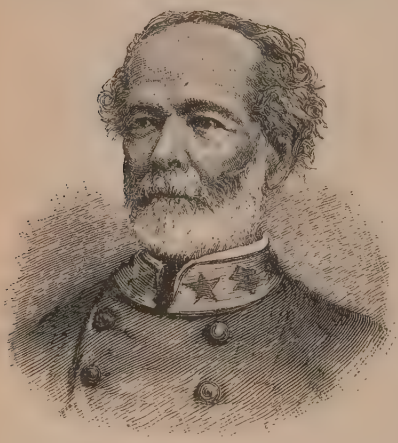
by Sheridan, with more than thrice their numbers. They were attacked at **Winchester,** and at Fisher's Hill. Sheridan pushed on, burning barns, mills, and houses, and rendering the country "so bare that a crow could fly over it without finding food." His main body was routed at **Cedar Creek,** but he arrived in person on the field, and converted defeat into victory.

19 Sept.

19 Oct.

SHERMAN'S ADVANCE ON ATLANTA.

66. **Sherman received the chief command of the Union armies on the Tennessee** when Grant went to Virginia. General Joe Johnston was the Confederate commander in that quarter, in place of Bragg. Sherman advanced in three columns, which threatened Johnston in front and on both wings. Each column was but little inferior to the whole Confederate force. Johnston slowly and skilfully retired, as his successive positions were in danger of being flanked. A general engagement, under ordinary circumstances, would have been ruinous to him. Skirmishes and combats were frequent, and at **Kenesaw Mountain** assumed the proportions of a battle. Johnston fell back to Atlanta, and was removed by President Davis from the command. General Hood, "more bold and rash," was appointed in his stead.



JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

17 July.

HOOD'S CAMPAIGN.

67. **Hood assailed Sherman four times in front of**

Atlanta, and was on each occasion repulsed with disastrous loss. He gave up the city, and marched northwards, breaking the railroad at Big Shanty and Resaca. He was pursued. He then turned to the West. For some time nothing was heard of him. Generals Thomas and Schofield were sent to oppose him in Tennessee. A severe skirmish took place at Columbia. A victory was gained by Hood at Franklin, and he pushed on to the heights of **Nashville.** Here a decisive action occurred. The Confederates were utterly routed, and the scattered remnants of that army never reassembled.

2 Sept.

15, 16 Dec.

SHERMAN'S "MARCH TO THE SEA."

68. **Sherman returned to Atlanta** before Hood turned aside to Alabama. He resolved to force his way to the Atlantic coast. The inhabitants of Atlanta were driven out and the city destroyed. Sherman moved southwards by easy marches, leaving desolation behind him over a breadth of eighty miles.* No force opposed him. One attack was made by Wheeler's cavalry. It produced little effect. The Confederates withdrew into the lines of Savannah. Communications were opened with the United States fleet. Fort McAllister, which commanded the Ogee'chee, was stormed. Savannah was occupied in little more than five weeks after

WILLIAM T. SHERMAN.

* General Sherman characterized the "March to the Sea" as "our rather Vandalic march."

the departure from Atlanta. It was offered to President Lincoln as a "Christmas gift." The shrunken territory of the Confederate States was again cut in two.

21 Dec.

CONFEDERATE DISASTERS ON SEA AND COAST.

69. **The Confederate disasters on the sea and along the coast** corresponded with the misfortunes on land. The noted cruiser **Alabama** was shattered and sunk by the *Kearsarge*, off Cherbourg (*shair'boorg*), in France. The *Florida* was seized by the *Wachu'setts*, in the neutral harbor of San Salvador, in Brazil. It was conveniently run into by a United States vessel, and sunk in Hampton Roads. The harbor of Mobile was gained and closed by Admiral Farragut, with a Federal squadron. The Confederate ram *Tennessee* was disabled, and reduced to surrender. **Fort Fisher,** at the mouth of the Cape Fear River, constructed and defended by Colonel Lamb, was vainly attacked by General Butler, supported by a powerful fleet. The fort was taken, early in the next year, by an increased force, on land and sea.* With its fall, Jan. 15th, blockade-running ceased, and Wilmington was evacuated Feb. 22.

19 June.

7 Oct.

24, 25 Dec.

REËLECTION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

70. **A Presidential Election occurred during the year.** Lincoln was reëlected by a small majority of the popular vote, which included the votes of the soldiers in the army and navy. Andrew Johnson,† of Tennessee, was elected

* Fort Fisher defended the last gateway of the Confederacy. General Lee had sent word to Colonel Lamb, that if it fell, the army could not be subsisted. After a bombardment of three days and two nights, the fort was assailed by overwhelming numbers. The garrison struggled for five hours after the works had been entered. Their ammunition was exhausted, and their commander desperately wounded.

† Andrew Johnson (1808–1875), born in North Carolina, was apprenticed to a tailor in early life. He taught himself to read. He migrated to Tennessee in 1826. He was United States Senator at the breaking out of the war. Lincoln made him Provisional Governor of Tennessee. He became President on Lincoln's assassination. He was United States Senator when he died.

IV. SYNCHRONAL CHART OF THE WAR OF SECESSION.

CONFEDERATE STATES.	UNITED STATES.	GREAT BRITAIN.	OTHER FOREIGN AFFAIRS.
			1859. Oct. 22, War of Spain and Morocco.
1859. Oct. 16, John Brown seizes Harper's Ferry.			
1860. Dec. 20, Secession of South Carolina.	1860. Nov., Abraham Lincoln elected President.		
1860. Dec. 26, Major Anderson removes to Fort Sumter.			
1861. Feb. 4, Southern Confederacy.	1861. Feb. 4, Peace Conference.		1861. Jan. 28, Insurrection in Herzegovina.
" Feb. 9, Jeff. Davis, Provisional President.	" March 4, Inauguration of President Lincoln.		" March 3, Emancipation Proclamation of the Czar of Russia.
1861. April 12-13, Bombardment of Fort Sumter.			
" April 17, Secession of Virginia.			
" May 22, Confederate Government removed to Richmond.			
1861. May 24, Alexandria, Va., occupied by the Federals.			
" June 10, First action; at Big Bethel.			1861. June 30, Juarez, Dictator of Mexico.
" July 21, First Battle of Manassas.			" July 27, Rupture of Mexico with Spain, France, and Britain.
" Nov. 8, Seizure of Mason and Slidell.		1861. Nov. 30, Great Britain demands the restoration of Mason and Slidell.	
1861. Nov. 30, Jeff. Davis elected President.			
	1861. Dec. 28, Mason and Slidell surrendered to Great Britain.		
1862. Feb. 16, Fort Donelson taken by General Grant.		1861. Dec. 14, Death of Prince Albert.	
" April 6-7, Battle of Shiloh.		1862 Jan., Cotton famine.	1862. April 8, Conference of Orizava. Britain and Spain withdraw from the war.
" " 25, Capture of New Orleans.			
" May 31, June 1, Battle of Seven Pines.			
" June 26, July 1, Seven Days' Battle.			
" July 29, Escape of the *Alabama* from Liverpoo			

Dec. 30–31, } Battle of Murfreesboro.
1863. Jan. 2, }
" Jan. 1, Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation.
" May 2–3, Battle of Chancellorsville.
" July 1–3, Battle of Gettysburg.
" " 4, Surrender of Vicksburg.
" Sept. 19–20, Battle of Chickamauga.
" Nov. 25, Battle of Missionary Ridge.
1864. May 5–9, Battle of the Wilderness.
" July 20, 22, 28, Battles of Atlanta.
" Sept. 2, Surrender of Atlanta.
" Dec. 21, Capture of Savannah.
1865. Jan. 18, Reciprocity Treaty abrogated.
1865. Feb. 1, XIII. Constitutional Amendment.
1865. Feb. 2, Conference at Fortress Monroe.
1865. March 3, Freedmen's Bureau.
" April 1, Battle of Five Forks.
" " 2–3, Richmond and Petersburg evacuated.
" " 9, General Lee surrenders at Appomattox.
1865. April 14, Assassination of President Lincoln
1865. April 18, Convention at Durham's Station.
" " 26, Surrender of General Joe Johnston.
" May 10, Capture of President Davis.

1865. May 29, First Amnesty Proclamation.
1866. April 2, Suppression of Secession proclaimed.
" June 13. XIV. Constitutional Amendment.
1866. July 27, Transatlantic Cable laid.
1867. May 13, Jeff. Davis admitted to bail.
" June 20, Alaska purchased from Russia.
1869. Feb. 23. XV. Amendment to the Constitution.

1865. Oct. 7, Insurrection in Jamaica.
1866. Fenian conspiracy.

1863. Jan. 14, Insurrection in Poland.
1863. Aug. 17, Congress of Frankfort.
" Oct. 3, Maximilian, Emperor of Mexico.
1864. Jan. 3, Schleswig-Holstein War. Prussia, Austria, Denmark.
1866 Austro-Prussian War.
" July 3, Battle of Sadowa.
1867. June 19, Emperor Maximilian shot at Queretaro.
" Nov. 4, Garibaldi defeated at Mentana, and captured
1868. Revolution in Japan.

Vice-President. General McClellan was the candidate brought out in opposition to Lincoln. On the eve of the election, Nevada was welcomed into the Union as the thirty-sixth State.

FEDERAL AND CONFEDERATE CURRENCY.

71. **The Federal currency sunk to one-third of its nominal value,** in consequence of the large amount of paper money issued. The Federal debt reached eighteen hundred millions of dollars. The Confederate debt was not much less, but cannot be estimated, as the value of the currency had sunk below a twentieth of the promises on the face of the notes.* The old currency, too, had been called in; and "a New Issue" ordered, which only hastened the progress of decline. Additional taxes were imposed; but the territory of the Seceding States was shrivelled up, and their resources exhausted.

CLOSE OF LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.—THE END OF THE WAR.—1865.

72. **The fifth spring saw the close of the war.** The main operations occurred between the Savannah and the James River. Military movements took place beyond these narrow limits, but they were on a small scale, and had little influence on the final result. The death struggle was fought within closed lists. The Federal armies numbered more than a million of men. The South was drained of men, of means, and of supplies.† It brought into the field barely one hundred and fifty thousand soldiers—ragged, shivering, hungry, gaunt—whose families were starving at home. Numbers of its veterans were famishing in Northern prisons; for the exchange of prisoners had been stopped.

73. The end was manifestly near at hand. Irregular pro-

* A barrel of flour sold for $400, and a pair of boots $800.

† General Grant said the Confederacy "had robbed the cradle and the grave" to fill its armies.

posals for the restoration of peace were made. President
2 Feb. Lincoln met three Confederate Commissioners near **Fortress Monroe.** Their instructions rendered any settlement by conference impossible. The previous day, the **Thirteenth Amendment** to the Constitution, declaring the abolition of slavery, had been accepted by Congress.

74. **The final campaign consisted of two divisions**—parts of the same plan, and working together to the same end. These were the operations in Virginia and those in the Carolinas.

DESTRUCTION OF RAILROADS IN VIRGINIA.

75. **Lee lay during the winter in his long lines** before Petersburg and Richmond. He had less than forty thousand men confronting the Union army of nearly two hundred thousand. The railroads by which his troops were supplied were nearly all taken before the winter had fairly ended. Sheridan hurried up the Valley, routed and scattered Early's small and
2 March. worn-out command at **Waynesboro,** crossed the Blue Ridge, destroyed the railroads round Charlottesville, broke the James River Canal, and was prevented from taking Lynchburg only by high waters. In the Southwest, General Stoneman cut the railroad at Wytheville and Christiansburg. The lead mines near the former place, and the salt works on the Holston, were rendered unserviceable at the same time.*

EVACUATION OF RICHMOND AND PETERSBURG.

76. **Grant continued to threaten Lee's right flank,** and the railroads on the south side of James River, by which the Confederates now received their chief supplies of food. Grant's forward movements were vigorously arrested at Hatch-

* From the Wythe Lead Mines the Confederates obtained all their lead; from the Holston Salt Works nearly all the salt used east of the Mississippi.

er's Run, at Fort Steadman, and at **Five Forks.** Sheridan returned the day after the last repulse, and crushed the extreme right of the Confederates. Next morning Lee's thin lines were broken in three places. During the ensuing night Richmond and Petersburg were abandoned, and a rapid retreat towards Danville was begun.

31 March. 1 April.

THE SURRENDER AT APPOMATTOX.

77. The Confederates were hotly pursued. Lee's lines had been held at last by only twenty-five thousand men. Of these many dropped by the wayside, or straggled off on the retreat. They were hopeless, broken down, famishing. Horses gave out, long trains of wagons were captured, guns were abandoned, muskets were thrown away. The pursuit was breathless, and never flagged. Several attacks were repelled, but a serious disaster was experienced at Sailor's Creek. There was no time for rest, for sleep, or for food. There was no food. Those who still kept with the standards often sustained life by snatching an ear of corn from the corn-cribs, the horses, or the fields, where the shocks had been left standing all winter. At **Appomattox Court-House** Sheridan appeared in front of Lee. A hope was entertained of cutting a way through this opposition, but infantry had come up. Stoneman, too, was approaching Lynchburg. The road to Danville was effectually closed. The main army of the enemy was at hand on flank and rear. General Lee was reduced to the necessity of surrendering. He had only eight thousand muskets in his ranks. Honorable terms were accorded by Grant.* General Lee bade farewell to the army of Northern Virginia in a touching address, and retired to Richmond

9 April.

* The story, long current, that General Grant had returned General Lee's sword to him, has been contradicted by both those officers.

General Lee remarked: "He had no opportunity of doing so; I was determined that the side-arms of officers should be exempt by the terms of surrender."

on parole. The war was over in Virginia, and the surrender at Appomattox insured its termination everywhere.

BURNING OF RICHMOND.

78. The public property at Richmond was committed to the flames by the Confederate authorities when the city was evacuated. The fire spread widely, and a large part of the city was burnt. In the midst of the conflagration, the Federal troops entered, and occupied the capital of Virginia, and of the Southern Confederacy.

END OF THE CONFEDERACY.

79. The officers of the Confederate and State Governments had escaped. Mr. Davis and most of his Cabinet proceeded first to Danville, then to Greensboro, in North Carolina, and thence to Charlotte, where the Confederate Government was dissolved.

23 April.

SHERMAN'S MARCH THROUGH THE CAROLINAS.

80. Sherman had been ordered to join Grant by sea, but was permitted to bring up his army by land, in consequence of the difficulties of maritime transportation. Starting from the south-west corner of South Carolina, he directed his course towards Goldsboro, N. C., where supplies were sent to meet him. Burning, ravaging, destroying, he pushed on, almost without interruption. Columbia, the beautiful capital of South Carolina, was burnt.* Charleston was evacuated on the capture of Columbia. A stubborn action with General Hardee took place at **Averysboro,** N. C. Sherman was encountered with steady resolution for three successive days,

17 Feb.

16 March.

19 March.

* There is not one line in Sherman's military correspondence, in the Supplement to the Conduct of the War, relative to the occupation and burning of Columbia. There is a gap from 16th February to 21st February.

On the preceding New-Year's Eve, he had written to Admiral Dahlgren: "I propose to march my whole army through South Carolina, tearing up railroads and smashing things generally."

at **Bentonville,** by General Joe Johnston, who had been again placed in command, when utter hopelessness prevailed. Sherman's march was scarcely delayed. He was joined by General Schofield, from Newbern, and General Terry, from Wilmington. By his own account, ninety-five thousand men were around him at Goldsboro, his new base of supplies. Johnston had barely a quarter of that number.

JOHNSTON'S SURRENDER.

81. Sherman moved against Johnston after having rested and refreshed his weary troops. He received, near Raleigh, propositions for a surrender, after Lee's surrender was known. The terms were arranged by the opposing generals, in a personal conference, at **Durham's Station.** They were rejected by the Federal Government, for Lincoln had been assassinated. Hostilities were resumed. Grant was ordered to assume the command of the army in North Carolina. He accepted the surrender of Johnston, and all troops under his command, on the same terms as those accorded to Lee.

18 April.

26 April.

ASSASSINATION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

82. President Lincoln had been assassinated in a theatre at Washington.* It was on Good Friday that

* The assassination of President Lincoln took place at Ford's Theatre, in Washington. He occupied a private box immediately adjoining the stage. A conspiracy had been formed to murder the President, the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, and General Grant. Mr. Seward was sick at home. General Grant did not attend the theatre that evening. In prosecution of the plan, Wilkes Booth, an actor of note, and of diseased temperament, entered the private box and shot Mr. Lincoln from behind. He then leaped on the stage, exclaiming: "*Sic semper tyrannis*," the motto of the State of Virginia. In the leap his foot became entangled in the folds of the United States flag, which hung over the President's box. He fell and broke his leg. He contrived, however, to slip behind the scenes, mounted a horse kept in readiness, and made his escape in the confusion. Mr. Lincoln never spoke after receiving the fatal wound. He died the next morning.

Powell, another of the conspirators, forced his way into the chamber where Mr. Seward lay seriously sick, and attempted to cut his throat. In the struggle the sick Secretary was frightfully mangled, and his son severely injured. The house was roused by the disturbance, and Powell fled.

this atrocious crime was committed; the very day on which
14 April. Sherman had received Johnston's first proposals contemplating a surrender; only one day over four years after the surrender of Fort Sumter. The murder of Mr. Lincoln naturally excited the wildest indignation throughout the Northern States, and provoked unfounded charges against the high officials of the Confederate Government. The grievous crime was condemned by right-feeling men throughout the South.

OVERTHROW OF THE SOUTHERN CONFEDERACY.

83. Some of the Confederate officials escaped, but several were taken. President Davis was captured near Irwins-
10 May. ville, in Georgia, and was imprisoned in Fortress Monroe. Alabama and Georgia were overrun by the cavalry of General Wilson. In the beginning of May, the Confederate troops east of the Mississippi surrendered to General Canby. The surrender of the forces west of that river took place at the end of the same month. All the Confederate armies were thus disbanded and sent to their homes. They had fought a desperate and losing fight, and had earned from their adversaries the highest admiration. There was no stain on "the Confederate banner." One who had commanded the army of the Potomac, said, many years after the close of the war: "Search the world over, and you will not find the like of them. I had the opportunity of seeing some of the armies of Europe since then—the French, Prussian, Russian, and Austrian—and I tell you, it will be down-hill work to fight them, compared with our late foes." *

---

* Major-General Joseph Hooker.

The total number of engagements is said to have been two hundred and fifty-two. Of these, eighty-nine took place in Virginia, thirty-seven in Tennessee, twenty-five in Missouri, twelve in Georgia, ten in South Carolina, eleven in North Carolina, seven in Alabama, five in Florida, fourteen in Kentucky, and one in the Indian country;—seventeen of them were naval.

In the Federal armies nearly two million seven hundred thousand men had been enlisted. The Federal debt at the close of the war was $2,773,000,000. The total cost of the war was estimated by Secretary Sherman, in 1880, at nearly $9,000,000,000.

OTHER IMPORTANT TRANSACTIONS.

84. Before Mr. Lincoln's murder, the **Reciprocity Treaty** with Great Britain, permitting free trade between the United States and the British Provinces in North America, was abrogated. A Bureau for the protection and support of the Freedmen was established. A demand was made upon the British Government to redress the injuries inflicted on American commerce by Confederate cruisers, bought, built, or equipped in British ports. During the war, the French Emperor, Louis Napoleon, had conquered Mexico, and placed Maximilian, an Austrian prince, upon the throne as Emperor. The fall of the Confederacy was fatal to the Empire and the Emperor.

3 March.

RECONSTRUCTION.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JOHNSON.—1865-1869.

85. Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, the Vice-President, assumed the office of President on the lamentable death of Mr. Lincoln.

ANDREW JOHNSON.

An old Greek philosopher observed, that a "civil war was ruinous to both contending parties, and equally corrupting to the conquerors and the conquered." The War of Secession has been no exception to the rule.

To avoid misrepresentation and controversy, it has been

necessary to treat in a brief and bare manner the events of the war between the States. It is more needful, for the like reasons, to treat even more briefly and barely the story of more recent years.

THE PUNISHMENT OF THE CONSPIRATORS.

86. The first task of President Johnson's Administration was to seize and bring to justice the murderer of President Lincoln, and those who had attempted at the same time to murder Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State. J. Wilkes Booth, a fanatical actor, was the assassin of Mr. Lincoln. He was pursued, tracked, and overtaken near Port Royal, in Virginia. He refused to surrender, and was shot down. Powell, Atzerott, the innocent Mrs. Surratt, and others, were tried by a Military Court, condemned, and hanged.

1865. 26 April.

TREATMENT OF THE CONFEDERATES.

87. President Davis, as has been mentioned, was taken and imprisoned. Two years afterwards, he was released on bail, and has not been further prosecuted. Indictments were proposed against Generals Lee and Johnston. They were quashed by the intervention of General Grant. **A Proclamation of Amnesty** was issued, but fourteen classes of Confederates were excluded from its benefits. No general Amnesty has yet been granted. The suppression of the Rebellion was proclaimed a year after the fall of Richmond.

2 April. 1866.

ATTEMPTS AT RECONSTRUCTION.

88. The Reconstruction of the Seceding States, and their readmission into the Union, presented questions of manifest difficulty. They occasioned violent contention between the President and the extreme Republicans,* who had a large

* Henry Winter Davis, of Maryland, and Thaddeus Stevens, of Pennsylvania, were their leaders.

majority in Congress. The President recognized the Government of F. H. Pierpont in Virginia, and established Provisional Governments in other Southern States. He was deprived of all power in these matters, and his policy was annulled by the appointment of a **Joint Committee of Congress.** The views of the Congressional majority were displayed by the continuance and enlargement of the Freedmen's Bureau; by the passage of a Civil Rights Bill; of bills conferring on colored persons the right to vote in the District of Columbia and in the Territories; and, at a later period, of a Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, declaring them citizens of the United States, and making other important regulations.

1866. 9 April.

1868. 21 July.

A bill for the admission of Colorado was passed, but was vetoed by the President. The vote of the Senate failed to overrule the veto, and Colorado was not received till ten years later. Nebraska was, however, admitted, notwithstanding the veto of the bill.

1867. 29 Feb.

RECONSTRUCTION MEASURES.

89. **The frequent vetoes increased the bitterness** with which the President was regarded by the majority in Congress. The ill-feeling was augmented by his violent and intemperate denunciation of the action of that body. His power was, in consequence, crippled by the **Tenure of Office Act,** which required the consent of the Senate to the removal of Government officers; and by placing the Southern States under military government. This is considered to be the beginning of the Reconstruction Measures.

1867. 10 Jan.

IMPEACHMENT OF PRESIDENT JOHNSON.

90. **The hostility in Congress to President Johnson** was inflamed by his public denunciation of the majority which had annulled his policy and restrained his action. It was determined to impeach him. The first effort to do so did not

succeed. It was done about two months later, when he attempted to remove Mr. Stanton * from the office of Secretary of War. The preparations for the impeachment and the trial occupied three months. The Senate acquitted Johnson by a majority of only one vote.

1868. 26 May.

THE TRANSATLANTIC CABLE.

91. **An Electric Cable,** between Ireland and Newfoundland, was successfully laid, after four previous attempts had failed.† In the same summer the broken cable of the previous year was recovered and repaired.

1866. 27 July.

EXECUTION OF THE EMPEROR MAXIMILIAN.

92. **The invasion of Mexico by the French,** and the establishment of an Imperial Government, were regarded as a violation of the Monroe Doctrine. Louis Napoleon was induced to withdraw his armies, and invited the new Emperor to accompany them. Maximilian hesitated, and remained. He was deprived of the necessary military support. Mexico was speedily recovered by President Juarez (*hwah'rez*). The Emperor was besieged in Queretaro (*kā-rā-tah'ro*), betrayed, and shot with several of his chief officers.

1867. 19 June.

ALASKA, ST. THOMAS, AND SAMANA.

93. **Russian America was purchased,** under Johnson's administration, for more than $7,000,000, and was named

* Edwin McMasters Stanton (1814–1869) was appointed Attorney-General by President Buchanan in 1860, and Secretary of War by President Lincoln in 1862. He was suspended from office by President Johnson in 1867, and removed in 1868. He was nominated by President Grant Judge of the Supreme Court in 1869, and ended his life a very few days thereafter.

† The first message was from Cyrus Field to President Johnson, and said: "I hope that it will prove a blessing to England and the United States, and increase the intercourse between our country and the eastern hemisphere."

Alaska. A treaty with Denmark, for the purchase of the islands of **St. Thomas** and St. John, in the West Indies, was rejected by the Senate. An offer made by the Government of San Domingo to lease the bay of Samana to the United States, was, in like manner, refused.

TREATIES WITH CHINA AND GREAT BRITAIN.

94. **A Treaty of Commerce with China** was negotiated by Mr. Anson Burlingame, who had been appointed by that strange empire a strange ambassador to the United States and to the European courts. A treaty was also made with Great Britain, for the settlement of the "Alabama Claims." It was called the Clarendon-Johnson Treaty,* from the names of its negotiators. Through the exertions and influence of Senator Sumner† it was rejected by the Senate, with only one dissenting voice, in the second month of the next administration.

1868. 4 July.

1869. 14. Jan.

ELECTION OF GENERAL GRANT.

95. **A Presidential Election** followed the impeachment of President Johnson. The Democrats nominated as their candidates Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Francis P. Blair, of Missouri. The Republican nominees were elected. They were General Ulysses S. Grant, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana. No election was held in Virginia, Texas, and Mississippi; and Georgia's vote was left in dispute.

THE FIFTEENTH AMENDMENT.

96. **A Fifteenth Amendment** to the Constitution was

---

* The Clarendon-Johnson Treaty was negotiated in London by the Earl of Clarendon and the Hon. Reverdy Johnson, special ambassador to Great Britain.

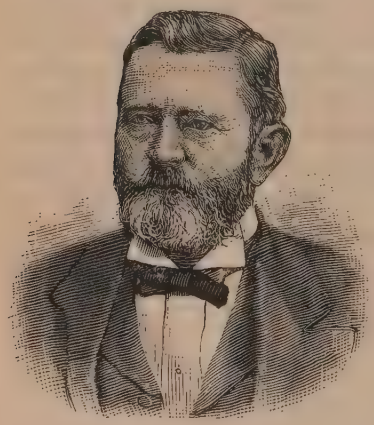
† Charles Sumner (1811–1874), of Massachusetts, was elected in 1841 successor to Daniel Webster in the United States Senate. He was struck down in his seat by Preston S. Brooks, of South Carolina, in 1856, and did not resume his place till four years after.

adopted by Congress, ten days before the end of Johnson's Administration. It was afterwards accepted as an addition to the Constitution. It extended the right of voting to all citizens, without regard to "race, color, or previous condition of servitude." Other amendments have since been proposed, but have not met with favor.

1869. 23 Feb.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF GENERAL GRANT.—1869–1873.

97. The two successive administrations of President Grant were occupied with the process of **Reconstruction.** They were marked by frequent disturbances in the Southern States. These were aggravated by the endeavor to suppress them by special legislation, by Federal interference, and by military rule. As is usual in the heat of political controversy, and as is habitual after civil wars, embezzlements and corruptions of all kinds were believed to be frequent.



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

THE PACIFIC RAILROAD.

98. The completion of the Pacific Railroad, which crossed the Continent from the Missouri to San Francisco, rendered notable the first months of Grant's presidency. The first charter for its construction had been accorded nearly seven years before,* during the War of Secession.

1869. 10 May.

* The original charter for the Pacific Railroad was granted 1st July, 1862. The last spike, completing the road, was driven 10th May, 1869. The first project of a trans-

FINANCIAL PANIC.

1869. 23 Sept. **99. Great financial distress,** though mainly confined to brokers and speculators, was occasioned by the sudden rise, and still more sudden fall, in New York, of the premium on gold. The day of the greatest fluctuation and panic was called **Black Friday.**

DEATH OF GEORGE PEABODY.

100. The death of the wealthy and beneficent George Peabody,* an American banker in London, deserves to be noted, on account of the extent of his liberalities, the judgment with which they were bestowed, and the national honors accorded to his remains. Besides numerous other benefactions of large amount, he gave three millions and a half for the education of the poorer classes in the Southern States, without distinction of color.

RESTORATION OF ALL THE STATES.

101. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas were restored to their position as States of the Union in 1870; but Georgia was excluded for some time longer. The Fifteenth Amendment was adopted by the end of March, being made a condition for the readmission of the Southern States. With the readmission of Georgia, the process of Reconstruction was nominally complete. The discords excited by it still continue.

---

continental railroad was broached by Asa Whitney, in the beginning of 1845. He presented his scheme to Congress, with a petition for a grant of lands along the right of way.

* George Peabody (1795–1869), of Massachusetts, was a poor boy. In 1837 he established himself in London as a banker, and resided there till his death. He gave $250,000 to the Peabody Institute and Library of his native town, Danvers, and $1,400,000 to the Peabody Library at Baltimore. In 1862 and subsequent years he bestowed, in London, $2,500,000, for the erection of model lodging-houses for workpeople. In acknowledgment of this benevolence, Queen Victoria offered him a baronetcy, or the Grand Cross of the Order of the Bath. The offer was declined. To Harvard College he gave $150,000, and the same sum to Yale. His gifts to public objects amounted to eight millions and a half of dollars, while his bequests to his relatives reached five millions. His remains were conveyed across the Atlantic by vessels of the British and the American navies.

FOREIGN INTERESTS.

102. Attention was attracted to Foreign Affairs by the Fenian* invasion of Canada, and by the endeavor of the Administration to secure the annexation of the Republic of San Domingo. The treaty for the latter purpose was rejected by the Senate.

1870. 25 May.

THE CENSUS.—THE DEBT.

103. The Census of 1870 reported the population of the United States to be thirty-eight million five hundred and fifty-eight thousand three hundred and seventy-one. The country was prosperous, and was recovering from the effects of the late war. The national debt was reduced about two hundred millions of dollars, and the currency had risen in value till it was only ten per cent. below par.

THE HIGH JOINT COMMISSION.

104. The relations with England continued to be very unsatisfactory. The "Alabama Claims" remained unsettled in consequence of the repudiation of the Clarendon-Johnson Treaty. To restore tranquillity and friendship, a **High Joint Commission**† of United States and British Plenipotentiaries assembled in Washington, and, after a discussion of more than two months, negotiated a treaty, by which the various matters in dispute were referred to an International Board of Arbitration. The treaty was earnestly debated in the Senate, but was accepted.

1871. 27 Feb.

---

* The Fenian Brotherhood was a secret organization of Irishmen in the United States, in Ireland, and elsewhere, to overthrow the British rule in Ireland. Its origin is traced from the "Emmet Monument Association" of 1857. The society was reorganized in 1865, and received numbers and energy from the Irish soldiers of the Federal armies in the war

† The Joint High Commission met 27th February, 1871. The treaty of Washington was signed 8th May, and ratified by the Senate 24th May. The Geneva Tribunal assembled 15th December, and adjourned to 15th July, 1872 It broke up, 14th September. The American claims amounted to $45,500,000, even after the withdrawal of indirect damages.

THE GENEVA TRIBUNAL.

105. The Tribunal was appointed to meet at Geneva, in Switzerland.* It met, but adjourned in consequence of extravagant demands put forward by the United States. These demands were withdrawn. When the Tribunal reassembled, it awarded $15,500,000 to the United States, for damages inflicted by the *Alabama* and other Confederate cruisers. This heavy indemnity was promptly paid by Great Britain.

THE HALIFAX FISHERY COMMISSION.

106. The Treaty of Washington provided for another Commission,† to determine the amount to be paid to the British Provinces of North America for the use of the fisheries along their coasts. This Commission met some years later at Halifax, in Nova Scotia, and fixed the sum at $5,500,000. This award was reluctantly paid under the Presidency of Mr. Hayes, and was accompanied with a protest. The same treaty referred to the Emperor of Germany the disputed boundary line of Oregon, through the Straits of Fuca. His decision sustained the claim of the United States.‡

COREA AND JAPAN.

107. Hostile operations were undertaken against a rude population on the north-east coast of Asia. Five strongholds of **Corea** were stormed by detachments from United States vessels in the Pacific. A large and splendid embassy arrived from **Japan,** and succeeded in establishing very cordial relations with the United States. It was the first Japanese embassy sent to any civilized power.

1871. 2 March.

---

* The arbitrators composing the Geneva Tribunal were: Sir Alexander Cockburn for Great Britain, Charles Francis Adams for the United States, Count Sclopis for Italy, Ex-President Staempfli for Switzerland, and Baron Itajuba for Brazil.

† The Halifax Fishery Commission met and made its award in 1877.

‡ The decision, rendered in 1872, gave the island of San Juan to the United States.

GREAT FIRES.

108. The great and prosperous city of Chicago was ravaged by a fearful conflagration.* The flames desolated five square miles in the heart of the town. Nearly twenty thousand buildings were destroyed. Two hundred and fifty persons perished. One hundred thousand were left destitute. The destruction of property was estimated at two hundred millions of dollars. In the same month of October, consuming fires swept over wide tracts in Wisconsin, Michigan, Minnesota, and Iowa. High winds increased the extent and the fury of the flames, which spread over three thousand square miles, and cost two thousand lives. The magnitude of these calamities excited large generosity. Great contributions for the relief of the sufferers poured in from the East, from Europe, and from other quarters of the globe. In the very next year, Boston was visited with a similar affliction, and property worth nearly one hundred millions of dollars was destroyed.

1871. 7-10 Oct.

THE KU-KLUX KLAN.

109. A strange, secret, and undiscoverable body, called the **Ku-Klux Klan,**† excited much alarm among the freedmen of the more Southern States, and provoked rigorous proceedings on the part of the majority in Congress. The Military Enforcement Act was the most stringent of these measures.

THE FRAUDS IN THE CITY OF NEW YORK.

110. The period of Reconstruction was marked throughout by disgraceful frauds, corruptions, and plunder, in high and low positions; by embezzlements of all sorts in connection with public, corporate, and private enterprises.

* There was a second fire of Chicago, 17th September, 1873. The great fire of Boston raged 6th to 11th November, 1872.

† The first official mention of the Ku-Klux Klan is believed to have been made in Alabama, by Judge Busteed, in 1871.

The most startling of these peculations occurred in the city government of New York. The debt was increased to nearly $100,000,000, and vast sums were divided among a few officials. The enormity of the offences at last provoked resistance. The chief criminals escaped without due restitution, or due punishment.*

POLITICAL VIOLENCES.

111. Serious troubles and violences attended the election for Governor in the States of Arkansas and Louisiana. 1872-3. The disturbances were repressed for a time by the intervention of the United States troops. In Louisiana, there were two rival Governors, two rival sets of State officials, two rival Legislatures. Fighting took place in the streets of New Orleans. The difficulties lasted for two years. The Federal authorities, the army, and Congress sustained the Republican claimants, and, at length, the Democratic State Government submitted to Federal coercion.

THE GRANGERS.

112. The agricultural community of the West instituted an organized opposition to railroad charges, the alleged oppression of corporations and capitalists, and the profits of middlemen, or intermediate traders. The association assumed the name of **Patrons of Husbandry,** but was commonly termed the **Grangers.**† It spread rapidly from the West to other parts of the Union. It soon became connected with the **Greenback Party,** which desired an increase of the paper currency of the Government, and its substitution for gold and silver, in public and private transactions.

---

* Resistance to the "Tweed Ring Frauds" was inaugurated 4th September, 1871.

† The "Grangers" were a secret society of farmers and others, devised and organized in 1867-8, by Wm. Saunders, a Scotchman, Superintendent of the Gardens of the Agricultural Department at Washington. The first National Grange Convention was held 11th April, 1874.

REËLECTION OF GENERAL GRANT.

113. General Grant was reëlected President, with Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, as Vice-President. They had been opposed by Horace Greeley, of New York, and B. Gratz Brown, of Missouri, both Liberal Republicans, who had been accepted by the Democrats, from their disposition to support "anything to beat Grant." The opposition proved as unsatisfactory and futile as it was devoid of political principle. Grant received two hundred and eighty-six electoral votes out of the three hundred and forty-nine counted. Greeley died in less than a month after the election.*

THE SECOND TERM OF GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.—1873-1877.

114. Grant's second administration continued and aggravated the tendencies of the first, and left them less under restraint than before.

THE SALARY GRAB.

115. As the First Term was drawing to a close, **the salary of the President was increased to $50,000 a year,** and the pay of Members of Congress to $7,000. This measure was called the **Salary Grab.** Several members refused to profit by the increase. So much indignation was excited by it, that the Act was speedily repealed, except with respect to the President's salary.

THE COLLAPSE OF BUSINESS.

116. A disastrous financial crash occurred in the first au-

* Horace Greeley (1811-1872) was remarkable for earnestness, simplicity, sincerity, and personal integrity. He was brought up in the utmost indigence. After editing many papers, he established the daily *Tribune*, 10th April, 1841. With it his name, his fortunes, and his influence, were ever after identified. Mr. Greeley became, at his own request, one of the securities on the bail bond of President Davis, May, 1867, and by that magnanimous conduct sacrificed the prospect of election as United States Senator from New York.

tumn. The decline in the price of gold, with the rise in the value of the Government paper, the excessive development of speculative enterprises, the accumulation of debt, and the general fall of prices, occasioned a ruinous crisis in all business transactions. The financial distress spread over the whole country, and extended to Europe. The decay of manufactures, the arrest of railroad construction, and stagnation in all forms of industry followed, and continued for six years.

1873. 18 Sept.

THE MODOC WAR.

117. **The Modoc Indians** had stirred up a troublesome little war on the northern border of California, and in Southern Oregon. They acquired sudden notoriety by the **murder of General Canby,** and some of his companions, at a conference.* They were with difficulty dislodged from their camp in the lava-beds. Captain Jack and three others were hanged. The rest were sent east of the Rocky Mountains, and scattered among the Dakotahs.

THE VIRGINIUS.

118. An American steam-vessel, the **Virginius,** conveying volunteers and munitions of war to the insurgents in Cuba,† was captured by the Spanish man-of-war, *Tornado.* Capt. Fry and many of the officers and passengers of the prize were hastily tried by court-martial and shot. The United States assumed a warlike attitude, received an extraordinary grant of $4,000,000 for the navy, and assembled a fleet on the coast of Florida. Spain conceded nearly all demands. The *Virginius* was surrendered, and lost on the homeward voyage.

1873. 31 Oct.

---

* General Canby was murdered 11th April, 1873. Captain Jack was hanged 3d October.

† An extensive insurrection, or attempt at revolution, had broken out in Cuba soon after the Spanish Revolution of 1868. It is not yet entirely suppressed (1882).

FINANCIAL CONDITION.

119. The receipts of the general Government, in the year of the crash, were more than $35,000,000 below its expenditures. Yet neither public nor private calamity arrested extravagance. During a single year of "the hard times," cigars of the value of $20,000,000, and liquors estimated at $500,000,000, were consumed.

The Currency Question presented itself in many forms. It inspired new parties, and deranged old ones, for years. When the great fall in the value of silver with relation to gold began, it became **the Silver Question.** It was then proposed to enforce by legislation the acceptance of silver, at the old, or a new, fixed value, in the settlement of all debts. An Act of 1877, requiring a large and continued coinage of silver, has only filled the vaults of the Treasury with "the Dollar of the Fathers," which no one prefers to bank-notes. The question of the commercial relations of the precious metals remains still undetermined.

RESUMPTION OF SPECIE PAYMENTS.

120. More important than these monetary controversies was the passage of a Bill for the **Resumption of Specie Payments** on the New-Year's Day of 1879. The measure was effectually accomplished. It caused multitudinous business failures as the time approached.

1875. 14 Jan.

CENTENNIAL CELEBRATIONS.

121. The anniversary of the meeting of the first Revolutionary Congress began the long series of **Centennial Celebrations** of Revolutionary events, which will scarcely be allowed to close with the inauguration of Washington. The Centennial Celebration of the Declaration of Independence was associated with an International Exhibition at Phil-

adelphia. It was conducted with great energy and success. The Exposition was opened by President Grant, in the presence of the Emperor and Empress of Brazil, the first reigning sovereigns ever in the United States.

THE BELKNAP IMPEACHMENT.

122. The Centennial spring witnessed **the Impeachment of Belknap,** the Secretary of War—one of the President's personal friends. He was charged with corruption in office, and appeared from his own admissions to have received large sums of money on account of appointments made by him. He resigned his seat in the Cabinet. He was acquitted, as more than one-third of the Senators declared him "not guilty," chiefly on the ground that he was not liable to impeachment after having become a private citizen by the resignation of his office.

1876. 2 March.

THE WHISKEY RINGS.

123. **General Babcock,** another of Grant's favorites, had been tried in the close of the preceding year for his supposed connection with extensive frauds practised by the "**Whiskey Rings.**" Several other persons, many of them of considerable wealth, and of political or social influence, were brought to trial for these frauds upon the revenue. Some were condemned to the penitentiary; some compounded for their misdemeanors by heavy payments. Babcock was acquitted.

A THIRD TERM.

124. **These exposures damaged Grant's prospects** of election for a third term as President. The design seems to have been long contemplated by his most earnest supporters. There was nothing in the Constitution or the laws which forbade indefinite reëlection. The practice of restricting the office to two terms rested upon the example of Washington and Jefferson. There was strong repugnance to the violation of long custom, even within the Republican ranks. A resolution

prohibiting a third term was approved by a majority in the lower House of Congress.*

SIOUX WAR.

125. A war with the Sioux (*see*) arrested attention by the bloody disaster which befell a body of United States troops. **General Custer,** with five companies of cavalry, rashly attacked a superior force of Indians, in Montana Territory. He was cut off, with his whole immediate command. The dashing general had neglected ordinary precautions.

1876. 25 June.

THE PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION.

126. The Presidential Election towards the close of Grant's second term will always be memorable for its violent contentions, its intrigues, corruptions, frauds, its extraordinary procedures, and its issue. The Democratic nominees were Tilden, of New York, and Hendricks, of Indiana. The Republican candidates were Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, and Wm. A. Wheeler, of New York. The controversy and struggle between the rival claims occupied the remainder of Grant's administration.

GRANT'S LAST ANNUAL MESSAGE.

127. Grant's last Annual Message opened with a rapid biographical sketch of himself, and with the confession of his want of political knowledge. It then stated the reduction of $300,000,000 in the taxes during his administration, and of $450,000,000 in the national debt. In the same period, a saving of $30,000,000 annually had been effected in the interest on the debt. A favorable change, to the extent of $250,000,000 in the year, had been reached in the course of foreign trade. The admission of **Colorado,** "the Centennial

* John Q. Adams was apprehensive of a third term for General Jackson. John Tyler spoke of the possibility of three terms for himself. It may have been in jest. He did not regard as a term that to which he succeeded as Vice-President after Harrison's death.

State," was recorded, and previous recommendations of the annexation of San Domingo were repeated.

The message called the attention of Congress, also, " to the necessity of throwing some greater safeguard over the method of choosing and declaring the election of a President.

128. There was urgent necessity for the prompt action of Congress, to avert unseemly collisions and the hazard of a new civil war. The electoral votes of four States were in dispute: South Carolina, Florida, Louisiana, and Oregon. Double returns had been received from them; one set announcing Democratic, the other, Republican electors. If the Democratic return was accepted, Tilden was elected by thirty-seven votes; if the Republican, Hayes was elected by one vote.

129. The Republicans were in power, and held all the offices of Government. The Vice-President *pro tem.*, the presiding officer of the Senate, was a Republican. He was sustained by his party in claiming the right to decide between the lists of the State Electors. This would assure the election of Hayes. The Democrats, who had a majority on joint ballot in Congress, denied the claim of the acting Vice-President, and insisted that the determination rested with the joint assembly of the two Houses of Congress. This would give the Presidency to Tilden. The view of the Vice-President was upheld by the President and his Cabinet. A large body of troops was collected in Washington and its neighborhood, to be ready for any contingency.

THE JOINT ELECTORAL COMMISSION.

130. Congress appointed an Extraordinary Commission to decide the contested issues of the recent election. This afforded a peaceful escape from the grave perils in prospect.*

The Joint Electoral Commission was instituted after

* The members of the Joint Electoral Commission were: Edmunds, Morton, Frelinghuysen, Thurman, Bayard, of the Senate; Payne, Hunton, Abbott, Hoar, and Garfield, of the House; and five Associate Justices of the Supreme Court: Clifford, Miller, Fields, Strong, and Bradley—the last selected by his fellow-judges.

long debates, and tedious investigations into the functions of the Vice-President. The electoral votes of Florida, Louisiana, South Carolina, and Oregon were accorded to the Republican candidates. The decision was accepted as better than the continuance of hazardous discords. Hayes and Wheeler were declared President and Vice-President by the majority of one electoral vote.

1877. 31 Jan. 27 Feb.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF RUTHERFORD B. HAYES. —1877–1881.

131. The administration of Mr. Hayes was not distinguished by "moving incidents by flood and field." It had its full share of important events, but they were not such as to excite general or permanent interest. The Government pursued "the even tenor of its way," maintaining order and domestic peace. It merited respect, rather than won admiration.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

RETURN OF PROSPERITY.

132. The action of the new administration was paralyzed, to a great extent, by the difficulties of its position. It could attempt little in the midst of continued political discords. It afforded, however, repose to the country, allowed attention to be directed to material interests, and was cheered by the return of enterprise, prosperity, and the increase of good-will. The abundant harvests of the United States, the deficient crops of

Europe, the war between Russia and Turkey, and other favoring circumstances, promoted healthy progress. The administration of Mr. Hayes began in gloom, depression, and distrust. It closed with a large increase of public wealth and welfare, and with the successful accomplishment of one of the most arduous financial operations of our times.

133. The principal topics which claim attention during these four years are :

The withdrawal of the military from the Southern States.

The labor riots in Pennsylvania, Maryland, and elsewhere.

The recoinage of silver dollars.

The yellow-fever epidemic, and the National Sanitary Commission.

The resumption of specie payments.

The conflict between the President and the majority in Congress over the appropriation bills.

The refunding of the national debt at a reduced rate of interest.

The Presidential election, towards the close of the term ; and

The vast increase of the population.

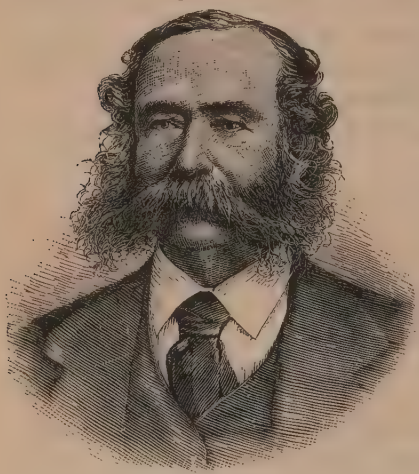
THE WITHDRAWAL OF THE TROOPS FROM THE SOUTHERN STATES.

134. **President Hayes withdrew the United States troops** from South Carolina and Louisiana in the second month of his administration. In both States there were rival Legislatures and contending claimants for the Governorship and other State offices. There had been, for some months, danger of violent collisions in both. These had been avoided by the moderation and discretion of the Democratic chiefs, and by the orders given to the commanders of the United States forces. General Grant had shown a disposition to remove the troops. He left this duty to be executed by his successor. As soon as it was done, the Democratic Governors,—General Wade Hampton in South Carolina, and General Nicholls in Louisiana—were inaugurated. General Hampton

had borne himself with singular prudence, self-restraint, and courage throughout the perilous contest.

TRAMPS AND LABOR RIOTS.

135. The panic of 1873, and the long depression of industry consequent upon it, had thrown multitudes out of employment, reduced the wages of the operatives still employed, and caused extensive and enduring distress. Active laborers could find nothing for willing hands to do. Families hungered, and thirsted, and shivered; children perished from want and misery. Men wandered from place to place, and from State to State, seeking occupation and subsistence. There was no work for them. Idlers and vagrants of all sorts—a growing horde of "sturdy beggars"—used the pretext of this distress, swarmed through the country, and resorted to threats, to violence, and to crime. The designation of "**Tramps**" was given indiscriminately to the honest and the vicious, who roved through the land seeking work or asking charity.



WADE HAMPTON.

136. The grievous stagnation of industry engendered a bitter feeling between employers and employed, which was especially virulent against wealthy capitalists and large corporations. The feeling broke out into alarming violence, and occasioned much destruction of property during the first summer of the Hayes administration. Railroad riots, occurring almost simultaneously, and apparently by concert, produced sudden con-

sternation in the Northern and Western States. They were most formidable in Pennsylvania, Maryland, and New York. The trains were stopped, the railroads were torn up, the rolling stock overturned or demolished. The strike, and the interruption of travel and transportation, stretched from New England to the Mississippi. The disturbances did not prevail south of the Potomac. The wildest lawlessness and the most serious mischief occurred at Pittsburg, where railroad property to the amount of eight or ten millions of dollars was destroyed. The militia was called out, and detachments from the regular army were sent to their support. Quiet was not restored for some weeks.

1877. 19-22 July.

RECOINAGE OF SILVER DOLLARS.

137. The enormous increase of silver from the Comstock Lode in Nevada, and from other mines in the Rocky Mountains, concurrent with the diminution of the gold returns from California and Australia, and with other causes, deranged the familiar relations of value between the two precious metals. A dollar in silver became worth little more than eighty-five cents in gold. This decline aggravated the difficulties of all debtors, whether communities or individuals, and increased the embarrassments of the period of depression. Various measures of relief, by tampering with the currency, were eagerly welcomed. Each became the watchword of a party or a faction. The last delusion was to raise silver to the value of gold by legislation. The popular current in favor of "the Dollar of the Fathers" became so strong, especially in the Western States, that the Bland Silver Bill was passed, over the President's veto, directing the recoinage of the cumbrous silver dollar in large amounts, and making it a legal tender.*

1878. 28 Feb.

THE YELLOW FEVER.

138. The yellow-fever epidemic, during the summer

* The silver legislation continues to be a matter of controversy (October, 1885).

of 1878, will long be remembered for its wide-spread ravages and for the generous liberality and heroic devotion displayed. The mortality was, perhaps, not as great as it had been in some localities on former occasions, but its fury extended over a wider region than ever before, and attention was more closely directed to its progress. The stoppage of business, the arrest of industry, and the consequent destitution of families, inflicted scarcely less suffering than the plague itself. The overwhelming affliction was solaced by a beautiful manifestation of benevolence. Physicians and nurses flocked into the sorely stricken cities from all parts of the country. The contributions of money, medicines, and supplies filled the mails and blocked the railroads.

THE NATIONAL SANITARY COMMISSION.

139. This fearful pestilence attracted the attention of physicians and other intelligent men to the search for means of preventing its recurrence or arresting its spread. On the recommendation of medical associations, and other public bodies, Congress was induced to appoint a **National Sanitary Commission** for the purpose of making investigations, collecting intelligence, giving timely warning of danger, and directing such precautionary measures as might be found expedient. Three summers passed without the return of yellow fever in an epidemic form.

1879. 3 March.

RESUMPTION OF SPECIE PAYMENT.

140. The payment of specie in exchange for notes was resumed on the day appointed four years before. The return to gold and silver coin, after the suspension of their use for eighteen years, was accomplished without disturbance, and almost without observation. Preparations had been diligently made for the event. The operation had been begun by the free issue of silver dollars in the close of the preceding year.

1879. 1 Jan.

REFUNDING OF THE NATIONAL DEBT.

141. The hope of diminishing the volume, and of lowering the interest of the national debt, was encouraged by the successful resumption of specie payments. The debt still amounted to about twenty-three hundred millions of dollars. Five hundred millions had been paid since the summer of 1869. A large part of the bonds at a higher rate of interest had been converted into four-per-cent. bonds. The process was continued during this administration. In the beginning of the next, a vast amount of indebtedness was exchanged for bonds bearing only three and a half per cent. interest.

THE PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION.

142. The effort made in the Chicago convention **to secure the renomination of General Grant** for the Presidency, as the Republican candidate, was the only other event of note under Hayes' administration. The obstinate struggle was begun with the confidence of success. It ended in disappointment. The third term project was again defeated. The Republicans selected General James A. Garfield,* of Ohio, as their nominee. Chester A. Arthur, of New York, was accepted as the candidate for the Vice-Presidency. They were fortunately elected by a majority which left no room for dispute. The Democratic nominees were General Winfield S. Hancock, of the United States Army, and William O. English, of Indiana.

---

* General James Abram Garfield (1831–1881) was born in a log cabin, in Orange Cayuga County, Ohio, fifteen miles from Mentor. His parents were poor, laboring people, of the class of small farmers. He began his school life at three years of age. He went to Hiram College in 1851. In 1856, having been graduated with honor at Williams College, he returned to Hiram as instructor, and, in 1857, became its President. In 1859 he was elected State Senator, and began his law studies.

In August, 1861, he was commissioned Lieutenant-Colonel of the Forty-second Ohio Volunteers. He was present at the battle of Chickamauga. His military career ended shortly afterwards by his election as a member of Congress.

In 1877 he was a member of the Electoral Commission. He was elected to succeed Thurman, as Senator from Ohio, but never took his seat, having been nominated and elected as the Republican candidate for the Presidency.

THE TENTH CENSUS.

143. The census of 1880 showed that the population had risen to fifty million one hundred and fifty-five thousand seven hundred and seventy-three, an increase in ten years of nearly twelve millions, or almost thirty-three per cent. The continuance of the like rate of progress would give the United States about ninety millions of inhabitants by the close of the century. Such an increase can scarcely be expected, as the census of 1870 was confessedly erroneous, thus enlarging the numbers apparently added during the last decade

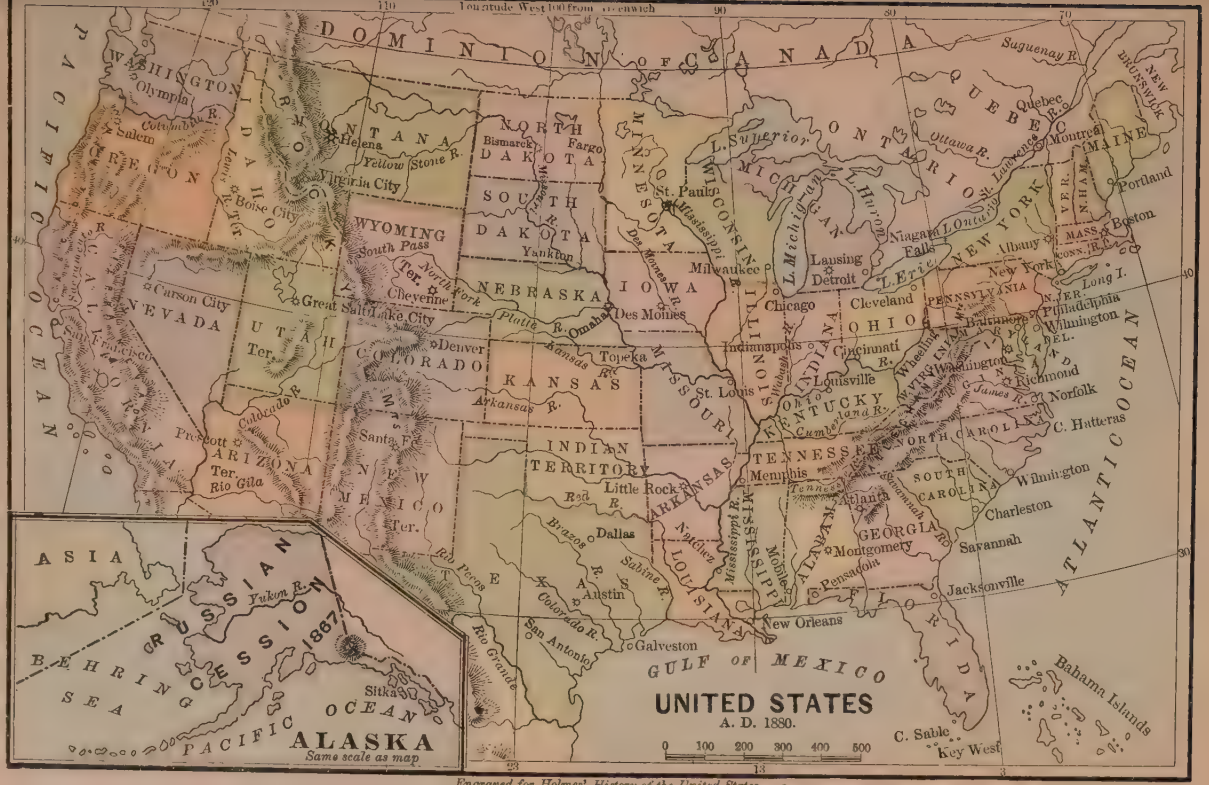
THE ADMINISTRATION OF GENERAL JAMES A. GARFIELD.—1881.

144. The administration of General Garfield lasted not much over half a year, and during more than a third of the time he was slowly dying. The shortness of the period has left little to be recorded, except his mournful and violent death. He was welcomed as President with general good-will, and hopes were entertained of a beneficent administration, and of the extinction of political asperities. Hopes crushed in the bud provoke deep regrets, and sanguine convictions of the blessings that might have been.

JAMES A. GARFIELD.

DEFEAT OF THE REFUNDING BILL.

145. A bill to refund the bonds of the Government at the reduced interest of three per cent. was defeated by the



Engraved for Holmes' History of the United States.

concerted hostility of the banks, and of the executive authorities. Mr. Windom, the new Secretary of the Treasury, boldly and successfully accomplished the conversion of a large amount of the debt into bonds bearing only three and a half per cent. interest.

THE WAR BETWEEN CHILI AND PERU.

146. An angry war in South America resulted in the complete overthrow and occupation of Peru by the Chilian army. The Peruvian President was driven into remote and inaccessible parts of the republic. The Government was broken up. Lima (*lee'ma*), the capital, was held by the victors. Mr. Blaine, the Secretary of State, endeavored to interpose for the restoration of peace. He contemplated a more resolute policy than had hitherto prevailed in regard to the republics of the Southern Continent and to the Isthmus of Panama.

ASSASSINATION OF PRESIDENT GARFIELD.

147. President Garfield was shot and fatally wounded in a railroad depot in Washington.* He lingered for ten weeks. The indignation, distress, and sympathy excited by the crime were manifest from the inquiries and messages made by the sovereigns and princes, the cabinets and public bodies of all parts of the world.

The murder had been committed by Guiteau (*ghee-to'*),† a disappointed office-seeker, a man of weak and distempered mind, of unregulated life, and of violent passions. He was found guilty, after a long trial, and was sentenced to be hanged.

---

* President Garfield was shot in the Baltimore and Potomac Depot, 2d July, 1881. He died 19th September, after great suffering.

A subscription, exceeding $300,000, was raised for Mrs. Garfield; and another, for a monument to the murdered President, of $250,000.

† Charles J. Guiteau was a lawyer of Chicago, of French descent, but American birth. His execution took place 30th June, 1882.

THE CENTENNIAL CELEBRATION AT YORKTOWN.

148. **The hundredth anniversary of the surrender** of Cornwallis was commemorated in the autumn of this year by a national celebration at Yorktown. It was conducted under the auspices of a Congressional Committee. Delegates from the Republic of France, and the descendants, or representatives, of Lafayette, Rochambeau, and Steuben, were present as the guests of the Government. A handsome monument was erected by order of Congress.

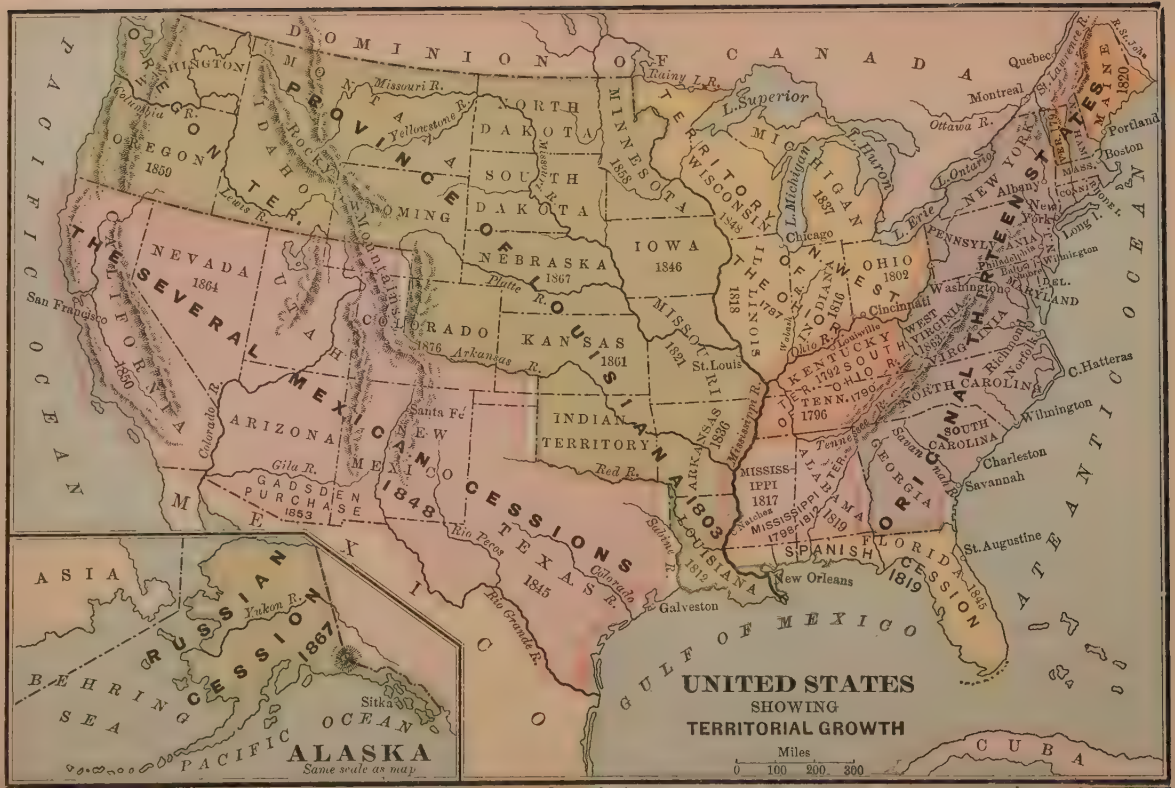
1881. 19 Oct.

A CENTURY OF INDEPENDENCE, 1781–1881.

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION.

149. The Yorktown celebration marked the completion of a **century of independence**, and suggests a retrospect of the progress made during this period.

Less than three hundred years ago, a few scattered settlements had been the beginning of English colonization. The colonies grew strong in hardship, peril, and neglect. They learnt self-reliance, and gained independence after a stubborn and doubtful warfare. The new nationality increased in numbers, influence, and wealth.


DOMINION OF CANADA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
CUBA
MEXICO
OREGON TERRITORY
PROVINCE OF NEW CALEDONIA
OREGON 1859
WASHINGTON
IDAHO
MONTANA
WYOMING
NEVADA 1864
UTAH
COLORADO 1876
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
THE SEVERAL MEXICAN CESSIONS 1848
GADSDEN PURCHASE 1853
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
NEBRASKA 1867
KANSAS 1861
INDIAN TERRITORY
TEXAS 1845
TERRITORY OF MINNESOTA 1858
IOWA 1846
MISSOURI 1821
ARKANSAS 1836
LOUISIANA 1812
TERRITORY OF WISCONSIN 1848
TERRITORY OF ILLINOIS 1818
MICHIGAN 1837
INDIANA 1816
OHIO 1802
KENTUCKY 1792
TENN. 1796
MISSISSIPPI 1817
ALABAMA 1819
GEORGIA
FLORIDA 1845
SPANISH CESSION 1819
NEW YORK
PENNSYLVANIA
MAINE 1820
VERMONT
NEW HAMPSHIRE
MASS.
CONN.
R.I.
DEL.
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
WEST VIRGINIA 1863
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
CANADA
RUSSIAN CESSION 1867
ASIA
BEHRING SEA
PACIFIC OCEAN
ALASKA
Same scale as map
Sitka
Yukon R.
Missouri R.
Columbia R.
Yellowstone R.
Rocky Mts.
Lewis R.
Platte R.
Arkansas R.
Colorado R.
Gila R.
Red R.
Rio Pecos
Rio Grande R.
Rainy L.R.
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario
St. Lawrence R.
Ottawa R.
Wabash R.
Ohio R.
Tennessee R.
Savannah R.
Mississippi R.
Natchez
Shreveport
Galveston
New Orleans
St. Louis
Chicago
Cincinnati
Louisville
Washington
Baltimore
Philadelphia
New York
Albany
Boston
Portland
Montreal
Quebec
Long I.
Wilmington
Charleston
Savannah
St. Augustine
C. Hatteras
Norfolk
Richmond
Pittsburg
Wheeling
Lexington
Nashville
Memphis
Vicksburg
Mobile
Pensacola
Santa Fé
San Francisco
UNITED STATES
SHOWING
TERRITORIAL GROWTH
Miles
0 100 200 300

TERRITORY AND POPULATION.

150. A narrow strip of land along the Atlantic shore, from Nova Scotia to Florida, sparsely inhabited, and dotted here and there by a few small cities, has been expanded till it fills the breadth of the continent, and reaches from the enduring snow and ice of Alaska and the wintry plains of Dakotah to the almost tropical realm of Florida and Southern California. A territory, largely estimated at the close of the Revolution as embracing eight hundred thousand square miles, most of it still in the occupation of the Indians, has more than quadrupled in size (three million six hundred and three thousand eight hundred and forty-four).* A population, still more liberally estimated at three millions, has grown with such rapidity that it now exceeds fifty millions.† There are now thirty-five cities numbering over fifty thousand inhabitants, ten of them containing more than two hundred thousand, while New York, with its coronet of surrounding cities, has nearly reached two millions.

WEALTH.

151. The wealth of the country has increased even more surprisingly.‡ A national debt of $54,000,000, at the close of the Revolution, produced consternation, and threatened ruin to the new Republic. A debt of $2,700,000,000 was borne with little grumbling at the end of the War of Secession. In sixteen years this debt has been reduced to half its cost, and less than three-quarters of its volume. There was no coinage till after the Revolution. The amount of money coined in 1879, 1880, and 1881 exceeded $250,000,000. The

---

* The settled area in 1790 was 239,935 square miles. It is now 1,569,570. The population was 3,929,214. It has increased to 50,155,783. The average density of inhabitants was at the former period 16.4 to the square mile; on the present larger area it is 32.

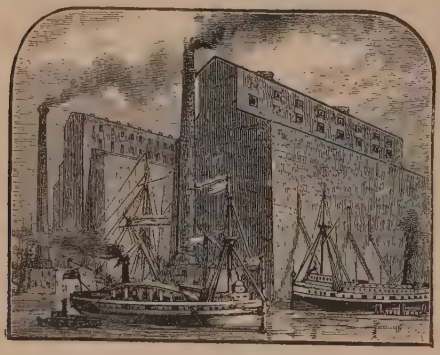
† This vast increase of population is largely due to the arrival in the United States of more than eleven millions of foreign immigrants between 1789 and 1880.

‡ The wealth of the United States is supposed to exceed that of any other nation. It has been estimated at $45,955,800,000, while that of Great Britain has been put at $42,204,800,000. Such calculations are conjectural and uncertain.

paper money in circulation was over $700,000,000 in the last of those years.

INDUSTRY AND TRADE.

152. The volume of the circulation in paper and specie is evidence of the magnitude and activity of business operations. Agriculture, manufactures, and the exchange of commodities, by domestic and foreign trade, have assumed vast proportions. They have called new arts into existence, and so improved older arts and processes as to give them the character of novel inventions.



GRAIN ELEVATORS.

The production of Indian corn in 1880 approached two thousand millions of bushels, while that of wheat was nearly five hundred millions of bushels.* In 1789 the imports were valued at $23,000,000, and the exports of domestic products at nearly $20,000,000. In 1881 the imports were almost $730,000,000, and the domestic exports not far from $850,000,000.

STEAM AND ELECTRICITY.

153. All transactions have been quickened by the net-work of telegraphic lines and of railroads, linking together the remotest parts of the country.† The manifold applications of

* Among the modern appliances for handling such immense quantities of grain, are the ELEVATORS, which are huge buildings containing facilities for storage and for the transferring of the grain to or from boats or cars.

† In 1881 the telegraph lines of the United States attained the length of one hundred and twenty thousand miles, in addition to railway, government, and private lines. The lines of railroad amounted to ninety-three thousand six hundred and sixty-nine

steam and electricity to the service of daily life have all been subsequent to the Treaty of Paris. Now fields are ploughed and harvests are threshed by steam, and every industrial process avails itself, directly or indirectly, of its gigantic powers. The land and the water, continents, oceans, lakes, and rivers are traversed by its agency, and it is employed as the motive power of complex machinery in crushing rocks and in sawing fire-wood.

The almost instantaneous conveyance of intelligence by the electric telegraph—in a large measure an American invention—is not older than the living generation. Still more recently, electricity has given us the telephone, and that most marvellous of instruments, the phonograph,* both of them fruits of American ingenuity.

INVENTIONS.

154. **The progress and the welfare of the people** have been greatly promoted by the genius displayed in adapting scientific discoveries to practical purposes. The multiplicity, the variety, and the value of American inventions are equally surprising. A glance at the Patent-Office reports exhibits the wonderful activity and sagacity employed in this direction. The means of dispensing with bodily service, or of diminishing it, have been discovered in almost every process of toil, from digging and washing potatoes to making fire-arms, cultivating and gathering crops, and assuaging pain.

155. **So numerous are these inventions** that they cannot be enumerated. Among the most notable, originated, or much improved by American talent, since the surrender of Yorktown, are: steam navigation on river and sea; weather charts and forecasts; charts of ocean depths and currents,

---

and one-half miles. All the railroads of Europe reach only one hundred thousand nine hundred and twenty miles.

* The telephone is a contrivance for conveying sounds and words to a distance by means of electricity. Edison's phonograph is an instrument for recording and preserving sounds, notes, and words, and for reproducing them at any distance of time.

with the deep-sea sounding line; the reaping and mowing machine, and multitudes of other agricultural implements; the magnetic telegraph, the telephone and the phonograph; the sewing and the knitting machine; bank-note engraving; the repeating rifle and pistol; the Ericsson hot-air engine; the sand blast, and sulphuric ether. To these may be added

MODERN REAPING-MACHINE.

wooden clocks, machine-made watches, and the machinery for making them; with the wonderful variety of India-rubber and gutta-percha applications.

EDUCATION.

156. The wide diffusion of education among the people may, in part, explain this aptitude for invention, and for improvement upon the inventions of others. From an early period, education, of the higher and the lower grades, attracted the attention of the colonists, especially in New England. There were not more than half a dozen colleges previous to the Revolution. There are now three hundred and sixty-four. Common schools are now established throughout the country. They provide every one, without regard to

color, sex, or condition, opportunities of freely pursuing the royal road to learning. In the ample provision for general instruction, the United States, or many of them, long anticipated Prussia, France, and the best educated countries of Europe.

NEWSPAPERS AND PERIODICALS.

157. The means of acquiring knowledge are not only furnished to all, but the current of knowledge flows freely within the reach of every one. The number of newspapers and periodicals is not more remarkable than their cheapness, the wide scope of their intelligence, and the multitude of copies issued from the principal presses. The desire of knowledge is thus both indicated and fed. There is scarcely a village without its newspaper. Everywhere are found the issues from the capital of the State, and from New York, Philadelphia, Washington, and the other principal cities. Never before has there been witnessed such a copious shower of daily, weekly, monthly, and quarterly publications.*

PUBLIC LIBRARIES.

158. The more solid and permanent repositories of learning have not been neglected, as the country has expanded and grown in wealth and comfort and refinement. The publication and republication of books flood the country. Of the making of books there seems to be no end. Many may be worthless, or of only transitory value. Many, however, merit high commendation, and have added to the permanent treasures of the world.

The interest excited by the home productions, and by those of other countries and other times, is shown by the rapid increase of public and private collections. It is supposed that there were no more than twenty-nine public libraries in the

* The number of newspapers and periodicals was in 1880, 12,314; in 1884, 13,402, with a total annual circulation of 1,064,319,152. The number of papers in 1775 was 37, with a circulation of 1,200,000.

colonies, containing only forty-five thousand six hundred and twenty-three volumes, when the Declaration of Independence was signed. In the centennial year the public libraries numbered three thousand six hundred and eighty-two, and they possessed twelve million two hundred and seventy-six thousand nine hundred and sixty-four volumes, besides uncounted pamphlets.

LITERATURE.

159. The domestic production of literature has been overwhelming in quantity. The promiscuous mass, most of which will, and should, speedily perish, is enriched by the works of several illustrious authors, who have secured for

A HISTORIC HOUSE, CAMBRIDGE, MASS.: WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS. 1775–6—HOME OF LONGFELLOW.

their names a high place in the temple of fame. Bryant and Poe and Longfellow; Cooper and Hawthorne; Irving and

Ticknor; Prescott and Motley, are the most eminent on the long roll.

SCIENCE.

160. American science has been directed more to practical results than to abstract speculation. Yet much has been accomplished in late years. The Smithsonian Institution * is founded on a foreigner's liberality. But richly endowed observatories and technological institutes are multiplied by the munificence of native benefactors. Already American science can boast of conspicuous triumphs in the coast survey, the geodetical, topographical, and geological explorations of the country, the physical geography of the oceans, and the system of meteorological observations.

It can point with pride to many distinguished names. Agassiz was a Swiss, and Draper an Englishman, but their chief labors sprang on American soil. Hall's discovery of the Twins of Mars was exclusively American. With Hall may be appropriately conjoined Pierce and Henry, Maury and Morton, Schoolcraft and Bancroft.

THE FINE ARTS.

161. The cultivation of the arts which add elegance or splendor to life has not been disregarded. With the rapid increase of wealth, and of the ease and leisure which attend wealth, there has been a sudden development of those expensive displays which minister to refinement or to ostentation. Little judgment and less taste may be usually exhibited by those who foster the demand for such works, and reward its gratification. But architecture, sculpture, painting, and music have been recently cherished and stimulated, and have achieved memorable successes. The government buildings at

---

* Mr. James Smithson, an Englishman, son of the Duke of Northumberland, dying in 1829, at Genoa, bequeathed his entire fortune to the Government of the United States, for the foundation at Washington of an institution "for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men." The SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION was organized in 1846.

Washington, and public edifices, ecclesiastical and civil, in other cities, indicate that talent is abundant, and not merely that expenditure is lavish. The works of engineering architecture, in bridges, tunnels, aqueducts, etc., are often as graceful or as imposing in appearance as they are bold in design and execution.

Powers and Story and Rogers have taken high rank as sculptors; Allston and Healy and Leutze, Bierstadt and Church, have merited their eminence as painters. The bright skies and the pellucid atmosphere of the country, and the gorgeous hues of American forests have created a distinct and admirable school of landscape. It should be added, that the delicacy, precision, and effect of American wood engraving have never been equalled in any other country.

The advance in art belongs almost exclusively to the century just closed, and mainly to very recent years. The times before the Revolution could claim only two or three painters as representatives of art.

162. The Progress of the United States during a single century of independence may be estimated by comparing this startling picture of varied prosperity with the survey of the condition of the colonies at the beginning of the Revolutionary period. (See pp. 81–87.)

This short narrative of the marvellous development of the United States which has changed the face of the continent, justifies dreams of the future brighter than the achievements of the past. The dangers are as great as the hopes. The story at this point (1881) awaits future continuation, with the trust that the American people may render

"That which they have done but earnest of the things that they shall do."

THE ADMINISTRATION OF CHESTER A. ARTHUR.—1881–1885.

163. General Arthur,* the Vice-President, became President on the death of President Garfield. He avoided notoriety in assuming his high office, and continued to observe abstinence from display. His administration was cautious, and was chiefly occupied with the internal transactions of the country. It opened with the Centennial Celebration at Yorktown (p. 288), and closed with the inauguration of the Washington Monument.†

23 Sept.

CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

164. Many noteworthy events marked the Presidency of General Arthur. Such were the increased prosperity of the Southern States of the Union; the diminution of animosity between the North and the South; the reapportionment of representatives in Congress;‡ the reduction of the National Debt; the demand for Revenue Reform; the passage of the

---

* General Chester Allen Arthur (1830–1886), of New York City, was one of the founders of the Republican Party. He was nominated for the Vice-Presidency at the Chicago Convention of 1880, to conciliate the disappointed advocates of a Third Term for General Grant.

† The monument is a slender, unadorned obelisk, a few inches more than 555 feet high. The cost was $1,187,710.31; the weight is 81,120 tons.

‡ The number of Representatives was placed at 325, which, under the census of 1880, would give one Representative to each aggregate of 154,325 persons.

Civil Service Act;* the regulation of succession to the Presidency;† the Anti-Mormon Legislation; the exclusion of Chinese immigrants; the Blair Education Bill;‡ the improper appropriation of the Indian Territory, and of the Public Domain; the unfortunate results attending Arctic Exploration,§ and the Centennial Cotton Exhibition at New Orleans.

165. **Floods, droughts, conflagrations, earthquakes and tornadoes** desolated many parts of the country.‖ Distress was extended and increased by the shrinkage of the values of railroad and other stocks; by the great decline of prices; by the severities of winter; and by the multitude of failures, frauds, and embezzlements.¶ These circumstances

---

* The scramble for office attending a change of administration is injurious to the public welfare. An attempt at reform was made by Senator Pendleton's Civil Service Bill, 16th January, 1883.

† The hazards of a doubtful or disputed succession to the Presidency occasioned much uneasiness during the fatal sickness of President Garfield. An act was passed by Congress, 9th January, 1883, guarding against some of the dangers.

‡ So called from its mover, Senator Blair, 7th April, 1884. It is not yet—October, 1885—enacted. Its principal provisions are the appropriation of $105,000,000 during ten years. The money was to be distributed in proportion to the illiteracy of the several States—$15,000,000 the first year; the amount to be diminished $1,000,000 annually for each of the succeeding nine years.

§ Mr. Bennett, of the New York *Herald*, sent out the *Jeannette*, under Lieutenant De Long, on a voyage of exploration, 1879. It was crushed in the ice, north-east of the mouth of the Lena. Of the officers and crew, not a third escaped alive. The commander perished.

Lieutenant Greely was sent by the Government to settle a Post north of Baffin's Bay, 1879. Two unsuccessful attempts were made to relieve him. The third, April, 1884, was more fortunate. Only eight members of the colonizing party were found alive. Horrible stories of cannibalism were reported.

‖ The summer of 1881 was hot and dry. The corn crop was withered up. The streams ceased to run, the mills stopped grinding, the wells were without water. With the following spring came disastrous floods. The valley of the Mississippi was inundated from St. Louis to the Gulf. The river was in places from fifty to one hundred and fifty miles wide.

Next year the Ohio valley was desolated in like manner. At Cincinnati the river rose more than 66 feet—two feet higher than in 1832.

Droughts and floods occurred in other years. The long and late drought of 1884 diminished wheat culture by preventing the preparation of the ground.

In 1881 everything was rendered inflammable by the protracted heat. Forest fires devastated a wide tract in Michigan, also in Pennsylvania.

¶ The firm of Grant and Ward failed in New York, 5th May, 1884, for $17,000,000. Other firms and banks were involved in the disaster. The failures of 1883 were twice as large as in any of the six years preceding.

stimulated agitation on the subject of Labor, of Land Appropriation, and of Monopolies.

166. Changes of great prospective importance were effected during the incumbency of Mr. Arthur. Such were the adoption of what has been designated "Standard Time;"* the acceptance of the meridian of Greenwich as the Prime Meridian in the reckoning of Longitude;† the endeavor, ultimately successful, to convert the Falls of Niagara, with the surrounding country, into a public pleasure ground; and the recognition of the African Association of the Congo.‡

LABOR REFORM.

167. The laboring population had been for years disquieted by the reduction of wages and employment, consequent upon the financial disasters of 1873. Restlessness had been encouraged by the labor movement in Europe.§ Strikes became frequent and serious.

1884. 28 Jan. A "Labor Bureau" was established as a part of the Federal Administration.‖

---

* "Standard," or Uniform, Time was designed to prevent the confusion and hazard occasioned by the differences of local time. Dividing the country into four great time belts, each 15° wide, the local time of the central meridian of each belt is made the Standard Time for the entire belt. These central meridians are the 75th, 90th, 105th, 120th, and the time belts are known as the Eastern, Central, Mountain, and Pacific. Thus the difference of time in the several belts is in exact hours. The change went into operation 18th November, 1883.

† It was adopted at an International Conference at Washington (October, 1884). France proposed that the First Meridian should pass through Behring's Strait.

‡ The establishment of the Free State of the Congo, with an area of 1,000,000 square miles, is amongst the most memorable events of the age. The Association sprang from Stanley's discovery and exploration of the Upper and Middle Congo. The authority of the Association was earliest recognized by the United States, 10th April, 1884; and the independent State was constituted by the Berlin Conference, 15th November, 1884.

§ An organization called the "Knights of Labor" counted 140,000 members in 1882. Labor Conventions were held at Albany, at Saratoga, and in New York City. Much dissatisfaction with the existing order of industry prevailed.

‖ A similar provision had been made five years before by the State of Missouri.

REVENUE AND TARIFF REFORM.

168. The extraordinary taxes, which were still in great measure continued, brought vast sums into the Treasury, and favored extravagant expenditure. The propriety of reducing the surplus, which had reached $100,000,000, and of diminishing taxation, became apparent. There was no agreement in regard to the mode of attaining this result. A Tariff Commission was, however, appointed, and made a report on this subject. In accordance with this report, an Act of Congress was passed modifying the tariff in a slight degree.

1883. 3 March.

In the last Congress of President Arthur's Administration, Mr. Morrison introduced a Bill into the House of Representatives, for the reduction of the tariff, by reducing the duties one-fifth on most of the articles protected,* and by exempting from duty many employed for consumption or for manufacturing. The bill was rejected.

THE CHINESE AND THE MORMONS.

169. Chinese laborers competed with the settled population of the United States. This occasioned local discontent and disturbances. An Act of Congress suspended Chinese immigration for ten years.

1882. 6 May.

Mormon polygamy was another cause of offence. Measures for its suppression were proposed by the "Edmunds Law." A more stringent act was subsequently passed, in consonance with the report of a Government Commission.

1884. 18 June.

THE WASHINGTON MONUMENT.

170. A monument to perpetuate the memory of General Washington's services had been decreed by Congress at the

* This was designated "Horizontal Reduction."

close of the Revolution. Nothing was done till liberal individuals * assumed the public duty. The corner stone was laid 4 July, 1848, and an address was delivered by Mr. Winthrop, of Massachusetts. The task was too heavy for private munificence. It was undertaken by Congress, and was completed nearly forty years after its commencement.

1885. 26 Feb. It was inaugurated, with appropriate ceremonies, in the presence of an immense assemblage. The address was by Mr. Winthrop, who had been the spokesman at its foundation.

THE PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION.

171. The long continuance of Republican rule had provoked much opposition. Bitter animosities were exhibited in the contentions of the canvass. The Democrats nominated Grover Cleveland,* of New York, for the Presidency, and Thomas A. Hendricks,† of Indiana, for the Vice-Presidency. The Republicans designated James G. Blaine, of Maine, and General John A. Logan, of Illinois, for those offices. The electoral vote was in favor of the Democrats. For them it was 219 ; for the Republicans, 182.

RESTORATION OF GENERAL GRANT TO THE ARMY.

172. The last official duty discharged by President Arthur was the signing of the act which enabled General Grant to be restored to the army, and nominating him to be a general on the retired list. The veteran was sick "nigh unto death." He had surrendered his estate for the benefit of the creditors of the firm in which he was a partner, and was broken in fortune as in health.

---

* Grover Cleveland (1837–), born in New Jersey, of New England descent ; Sheriff of Erie County, New York, 1870; Mayor of Buffalo, 1882 ; Governor of New York, 1884.

† Thomas A. Hendricks (1819-1885) died before Congress assembled.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF GROVER CLEVELAND.—1885–1889.

173. Grover Cleveland was Governor of New York at the time of his election to the Presidency. He had won public favor by approved character, not by brilliant talents.

GROVER CLEVELAND.

FIRST ACTS.

174. The new Cabinet embraced three members from the States classed as Southern. The early months of the administration were mainly occupied with the reorganization of the Government, and with the investigation of alleged abuses.

THE DEATH OF GENERAL GRANT.*

175. General Grant died in the midsummer of Cleveland's first year. He had lingered for many months in much suffering, which he had borne with quiet fortitude.

1885. 23 July.

The intelligence of his death made a profound impression. It was felt that the most notable citizen of the Republic had been removed. The Southern States were not less prompt than the Northern in showing respect to his memory. The asperities of conflict were silenced at the grave.

* He died at Mt. McGregor, near Saratoga. His remains were brought to New York City, and deposited in Riverside Park. The funeral was conducted by the Government. It was rendered more impressive by the official presence of the Confederate Generals, Joseph E. Johnston, Buckner, Hampton, Fitz Hugh Lee, and Gordon.

CHARACTER OF THE PERIOD.

176. The four years of this Administration were, in the main, years of tranquil prosperity, though attended with severe atmospheric and other disturbances in several localities. The progress of industry was great, especially in the Southern States.* Towards the close of the period, foreign relations were unsettled, but scarcely menacing. Some important affairs were transmitted from the former administration, considered in this, and bequeathed to the next. Hence, it is inexpedient to observe chronological arrangement in a brief notice.

THE SEASONS AND PHYSICAL DISASTERS.

177. Atmospheric and terrestrial disturbances were as frequent as in the preceding years. Storms, floods, heats, droughts, forest-fires, tornadoes, etc., inflicted serious damage. Blizzards (or blinding sheets of snow driven by fierce hurricanes) swooped from the North-western prairies to the Atlantic coasts.† Earthquakes were numerous. The most calamitous of them was the Charleston earthquake.‡ Much of the city was suddenly reduced to a heap of unsightly ruins.

1886. 31 Aug.

IMPROVEMENT AND REFORM.

178. Grievous abuses had been alleged to prevail. Efforts were made to meet the demand for their correction. Many measures were adopted or proposed: the Foreign Contract Labor Act, the Chinese Exclusion Act, the Forfeited Land Grants Act, the Presidential Succession Act,

* Between 1880 and 1888 the gross wealth of Southern States increased 50 per cent.; capital, nearly 150 per cent.; and mineral products, about eightfold.

† The severest was the New York blizzard, which suspended the mail for upwards of 48 hours, and caused the death of Roscoe Conkling (30 October, 1829—18 April, 1888).

1888. 10-13 March.

‡ It occurred in the early night. The vibrations extended from Toronto to Jacksonville, and from Dubuque to New Haven. Many lives were lost. The damage to buildings was estimated at $5,000,000. Shocks occurred subsequently, and had not ceased three years later.

the Utah Bigamy Bill, the Electoral Count Bill, and the Blair Bill * for bestowing national aid to primary education.

ENCOURAGEMENT OF AGRICULTURE, ETC.

179. The distress of the farmers induced hopeful legislation. In the spring of the last year of Mr. Cleveland's presidency the Department of Labor was thoroughly organized, and in the beginning of the next year the Commissionership of Agriculture was made a cabinet office.

Illegal enclosures of public lands, to the extent of nearly 7,000,000 of acres, demanded the interposition of the central authority.

The buffaloes on the great Western prairies had been almost exterminated. Measures were adopted to prevent their extinction.

LABOR AGITATION.

180. The laboring classes continued to be restless and discontented. The immigration of foreigners imbued with revolutionary passions diffused a spirit of lawless violence. The increasing numbers of the Knights of Labor and of the associations of like character demonstrated the extent of the disquietude. Divisions of such societies were active in stimulating and sustaining frequent strikes.† Anarchists and Socialists took advantage of the unsettlement of industrial conditions. Boycotting ‡ was employed to repel competition, or to enforce the prescriptions of labor organizations. Dynamite bombs were used to avenge supposed injury or injustice. The most violent outburst of this destructive temper was displayed in the dynamite outrage of Chicago. The leaders were arrested, tried, convicted, and executed.

1886. 4 May.

* See p. 298, § 164, Note ‡.

† The strikes were obstinate, extensive, and disastrous. The most ruinous were on the Texas Railroad, the Jay Gould system in Missouri, the Chicago and Quincy Railroad, the Reading Railroad, the New York and Brooklyn Street Railroads.

‡ Boycotting is a term, introduced from Ireland, to signify the prevention of all dealings with a person offensive to the boycotters.

MONOPOLIES, TRUSTS, ETC.

181. Monopolies, or the concentration of vast capital in private or corporate hands, which was loosely denominated monopoly, had long provoked bitter hostility. Such aggregations increased in number, variety, and magnitude. The antagonism was intensified by efforts, under the name of Trusts,* to maintain or enhance the price of necessary articles.

THE SURPLUS.

182. The excess of the receipts over the necessary expenditures of the Government left a fluctuating surplus, of about $100,000,000, in the Federal Treasury, and encouraged schemes of wild extravagance. The retention in the Government vaults of immense sums withheld millions of idle money from the channels of industry and trade, distempered the minds and the morals of the people, and endangered the community.

PENSIONS.

183. The continued enlargement of the Pension List checked the growth of the surplus. The appropriations under this head nearly doubled in the course of five years,† notwithstanding the veto of the Dependents' Pension Bill, and the frequent vetoes of bills in favor of individuals.

YELLOW FEVER.

184. An epidemic of yellow fever at Jacksonville, Fla., occasioned long and wide-spread consternation. Happily its chief ravages were confined to Jacksonville. It never became general in the State, and was of rare occurrence beyond it. Neverthe-

1888. 8 Aug.–8 Dec.

* Trusts, a new term, designates the consolidation of the producers of an article, with the regulation and direction of its production, in the hands of a body of supervisors, or trustees.

† Pensions were somewhat over $56,000,000 in June, 1885, and were conjectured to be more than $90,000,000 in 1889.

less, a panic prevailed. Those who were able to get away hurriedly sought a refuge from the pestilence.

FOREIGN AFFAIRS.

185. Grave international questions attracted attention. Ministers nominated to foreign courts were rejected by the Senate, or by the courts to which they were appointed to be sent. Serious dissensions in regard to the fisheries of the Dominion of Canada were removed by treaty. The treaty was repudiated by the Senate. A dispute with respect to seal-hunting in the North Pacific, and the capture and condemnation of British vessels in these waters, descended to the succeeding Administration. An unfortunate incident, occasioned by partisan trickery, produced coolness between the Governments of the United States and Great Britain. Lord Sackville, the British ambassador, was summarily dismissed. His successor was not sent for several months.

Greater hazard was apprehended from differences with Germany, in regard to the Samoan Islands, where a civil war had been fomented and participated in by the German authorities on the spot.*

REVENUE REFORM AND THE TARIFF.

186. The magnitude of the surplus, and the recklessness of pension and other appropriations, engaged attention throughout Cleveland's Administration. It seemed an imperative duty to arrest the growth of the receipts, and to restrict the revenues to the requirements of an economical administration of the Government. President Cleveland repeatedly called attention to the subject, and most earnestly in his last annual message, which urged reduction of the import duties.

---

* The differences were not settled till the succeeding Administration.

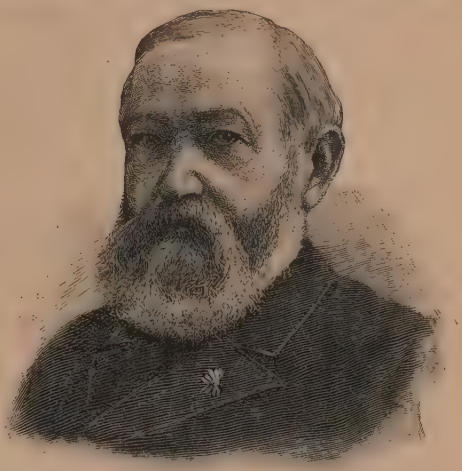
A great disaster occurred during these transactions. Four American and four German war vessels were wrecked in the Samoan port of Apia, by a furious typhoon. Many lives were lost. The storm, the conference at Berlin, and the treaty of arrangement occurred under President Harrison.

1889 15 March.

THE PRESIDENTIAL ELECTION.

187. The presidential campaign was a struggle between the proposed reform of the tariff, and the maintenance of high duties on imports. Other influences were potent in the canvass.* The

1888. 5 June. Democratic Convention, at St. Louis, nominated Grover Cleveland for re-election to the Presidency, and Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio, for Vice-President. The Republican Convention, at Chicago,



BENJAMIN HARRISON.

1888. 19 June. presented to the people Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, for President, and Levi P. Morton, of New York, for Vice-President. Other candidates were proposed by smaller political organizations. The Republican nominees were successful, receiving 233 electoral votes, to 168 cast for the Democratic.

CENTENNIAL CELEBRATIONS.

188. The centennial celebration of Washington's Inauguration as first President of the United States was held in the city of New York, during

1889. 30 Apl.–2 May. the early months of the succeeding President. It was an enthusiastic homage to the man who is justly styled the Father of his Country.

* The pension vetoes were turned to Cleveland's disadvantage. Bribery and corruption was so flagrant and extensive, that several States considered bills, soon after the election, to protect the ballot from frauds.

SUMMARY OF TOPICS.—PART VI.

WAR OF SECESSION.—RECONSTRUCTION AND GROWTH, 1861–1881.

Lincoln's Administration. First Year of the War. 1. The history of the war and of the subsequent time impracticable; what is attempted. 2. Remote causes of the conflict; their increasing gravity. 3. Capture of Fort Sumter; Lincoln calls for troops. 4. Virginia secedes; capture of Harper's Ferry and Navy Yard; the *Merrimac*. 5. Other States secede; Kentucky, Maryland, and Missouri; attack in Baltimore. 6. Richmond made the Southern capital; Alexandria seized. 7. First hostile movements; Big Bethel; Rich Mountain; the Kanawha Valley; Carnifex Ferry; West Virginia secured by the Federals. 8. First battle of Manassas; Stonewall Jackson. 9. Effect of Manassas; increase of Federal forces; McClellan. 10. Missouri obtained by the Federals; Booneville; battle of Oak Hill. 11. Missouri Convention. 12. Kentucky; Columbus, and Belmont. 13. Naval operations; Hatteras; Port Royal; Fort Pickens. 14. Confederate Navy; the *Sumter;* the *Nashville*. 15. Mason and Slidell. 16. Results of the year; paper money; confiscation.

Second Year of the War. 17 Confederate disasters; Mill Springs; Elk Horn; Fort Henry; Fort Donelson; Kentucky abandoned; Nashville; Columbus; Roanoke Island; Valverde. 18. Inauguration of President Davis. 19. Character of the campaign. 20. the *Virginia* and the *Monitor*. 21. McClellan's change of the scene of war; Yorktown; Norfolk; Williamsburg. 22. Battle of Seven Pines; Johnston wounded; succeeded by Lee. 23. Jackson in the valley; McDowell; Winchester; Port Republic. 24. Seven days' battle; Gaines's Mill; Cold Harbor; Malvern Hill. 25. New levy; McClellan removed. 26. Cedar Mountain; second battle of Manassas. 27. Maryland invaded; Harper's Ferry; Sharpsburg; Antietam. 28. Battle of Fredericksburg. 29. Battle of Shiloh; Memphis; Vicksburg. 30. New Orleans taken. 31. Battle of Perryville. 32. Battles of Murfreesboro. 33. Operations at sea. 34. Emancipation proclaimed. 35. Proposed mediation. 36. Condition of the belligerents.

Third Year of the War. 37. Effect of the war on foreign countries; recognition; campaign of the year. 38. Battle of Chancellorsville; Jackson's death. 39. After Jackson's wound. 40. Pennsylvania invaded;

Fleetwood. 41. Battle of Gettysburg. 42. Lee's retreat. 43. Siege of Vicksburg; Baker's Creek. 44. Surrender of Vicksburg. 45. Streight's raid. 46. Morgan's raid. 47. Battle of Chickamauga. 48. Battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge; Knoxville. 49. Fort Sumter and Charleston. 50. The *Alabama;* "The Alabama Claims." 51. West Virginia. 52. Results of the campaign; Confederate currency; national banks and national currency; Pacific territory; Nevada; conscription.

Fourth Year of the War. 53. The respective forces; lines of operation. 54. Florida invaded; Olustee; Sherman's raid; Okalona; Fort Pillow. 55. Battle of Mansfield; Pleasant Hill; Newbern. 56. Kilpatrick's raid; Dahlgren's design; his death. 57. Grant in command; his army; Lee's army; General Butler. 58. Battles of the Wilderness. 59. Stuart's death. 60. Butler "bottled up." 61. Battle of Newmarket; Dublin; Lexington; Lynchburg; Hunter's disaster. 62. Second battle of Cold Harbor. 63. Siege of Petersburg; Grant's endeavor; the Crater; Dutch Gap. 64. Early's advance on Washington; Monocacy; Chambersburg burnt. 65. Sheridan; battle of Winchester; Cedar Creek. 66. Sherman's advance; Kenesaw Mountain; Johnston removed. 67. Battles round Atlanta; Hood's attempt; Franklin; Nashville. 68. Sherman's "march to the sea;" Fort McAllister; Savannah occupied; effect of this march. 69. Naval affairs; the *Alabama;* the *Florida;* Fort Fisher. 70. Lincoln reëlected; Nevada admitted. 71. Federal and Confederate finances.

Fifth Year of the War. 72. The main operations; forces opposed; prisoners not exchanged. 73. Negotiations; Thirteenth Amendment. 74. The final campaign. 75. Destruction of railroads; Waynesboro. 76. Battle of Five Forks; Richmond and Petersburg evacuated. 77. The pursuit; the surrender of Lee. 78. Burning of Richmond. 79. End of the Confederacy. 80. Sherman's march through the Carolinas; Columbia burnt; Averysboro; Bentonville; Sherman's army. 81. Convention at Durham Station; Johnston's surrender. 82. Assassination of President Lincoln. 83. Overthrow of the Southern Confederacy; President Davis captured and imprisoned; Alabama and Georgia; surrender of the remaining armies; Hooker's tribute to the conquered. 84. Reciprocity Treaty abrogated; Freedmen's Bureau; demand on Britain; the Emperor Maximilian.

Andrew Johnson's Administration. 85. Character of the subsequent history; effect on its treatment. 86. Punishment of the conspirators. 87. Release of President Davis; amnesty proclaimed. 88. Reconstruction; President Johnson's procedure; Joint Committee of Congress; Civil Rights Bill; Fourteenth Amendment; Colorado; Nebraska admitted.

89. Opposition to the President; Tenure of Office Act; military governments in the South. 90. President Johnson impeached. 91. Transatlantic cable. 92. Emperor Maximilian executed. 93. Alaska bought; St. Thomas; the Bay of Samana refused. 94. Treaty with China; "Clarendon-Johnson Treaty" rejected. 95. Grant elected President; States excluded. 96. Fifteenth Amendment.

Grant's Administration. 97. Reconstruction continued; character of the period. 98. Pacific Railroad. 99. "Black Friday." 100. George Peabody's death; his munificence. 101. All the States restored; the Fifteenth Amendment adopted. 102. Fenian invasion of Canada; proposed annexation of San Domingo. 103. The population; the national debt; the currency. 104. "The Joint High Commission;" the "Treaty of Washington." 105. The Geneva Tribunal; the award. 106. "The Fishery Commission;" its award; the Oregon boundary line. 107. Hostilities in Corea; Japanese Embassy. 108. The Chicago fire; forest fires. 109. The "Ku-Klux Klan;" Military Enforcement Act. 110. New York frauds. 111. Political disturbances in the South. 112. "The Grangers;" "The Greenback Party." 113. Reëlection of General Grant. 114. Character of his second administration. 115. "The salary grab." 116. Financial crash. 117. Modoc war; General Canby murdered. 118. The *Virginius;* conduct of the United States 119. Financial condition; the currency question; the silver question. 120. Resumption of specie payments. 121. Centennial celebration; Centennial Exhibition; Emperor and Empress of Brazil. 122. Belknap impeachment. .23. Whiskey rings and trials. 124. The third term. 125. Sioux war; Custer's massacre. 126. Presidential election. 127. Grant's last message; Colorado admitted. 128. Hazards of the Presidential election. 129. Opposing elements. 130. The "Joint Electoral Commission;" Hayes declared President.

Hayes's Administration. 131. Character of the administration. 132. Prosperous times. 133. The principal topics. 134. Troops withdrawn from the South. 135. Tramps. 136. Labor riots; Pittsburg riot. 137. Recoinage of silver dollars. 138. The yellow fever. 139. National Sanitary Commission. 140. Resumption of specie payment. 141. refunding the national debt. 142. Presidential election; Garfield elected. 143. Census of 1880.

Garfield's Administration. 144. Its brief duration; hopes entertained. 145. Refunding Bill. 146. Peruvian war; Blaine's policy. 147. Garfield's assassination. 148. Centennial celebration at Yorktown.

A Century of Independence. 149. A retrospect desirable. 150. Territory and population. 151. Wealth. 152. Industry and trade. 153. Steam and electricity. 154. Inventions. 155. The most noted inven-

tions. 156. Education. 157. Newspapers and periodicals. 158. Public libraries. 159. Literature. 160. Science. 161. The fine arts. 162. Progress since the Revolution.

Arthur's Administration. 163. His entrance upon office. 164. Noteworthy events. 165. Floods, droughts, etc. 166. Important changes; adoption of standard time, etc. 167. Labor reform. 168. Revenue and tariff reform. 169. The Chinese and the Mormons. 170. The Washington Monument. 171. Presidential election; Cleveland elected. 172. Restoration of General Grant to the army.

Cleveland's Administration. 173. Grover Cleveland. 174. First acts. 175. Death of General Grant. 176. The character of the period. 177. Physical disasters. 178. Measures of reform. 179. Agricultural encouragement, and 180. Labor disturbances. 181. Trusts, etc. 182. The surplus and, 183. Pension appropriations. 184. Jacksonville epidemic. 185. Foreign affairs. 186. The tariff. 187. Presidential election. 188. Centennial celebrations.

SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

NO.	STATES.	SETTLED.			ADMITTED.
		WHEN.	WHERE.	BY WHOM.	
1.	Virginia.	1607.	Jamestown.	English.	1776.
2.	New York.	1614.	New York.	Dutch.	"
3.	Massachusetts.	1620.	Plymouth.	English.	"
4.	New Hampshire.	1623.	Little Harbor.	"	"
5.	Connecticut.	1633.	Windsor.	"	"
6.	Maryland.	1634.	St. Mary's.	"	"
7.	Rhode Island.	1636.	Providence.	"	"
8.	Delaware.	1638.	Wilmington.	Swedes.	"
9.	North Carolina.	1650.	Chowan River.	English.	"
10.	New Jersey.	1664.	Elizabeth.	Dutch.	"
11.	South Carolina.	1670.	Ashley River.	English.	"
12.	Pennsylvania.	1682.	Philadelphia.	"	"
13.	Georgia.	1733.	Savannah.	"	"
14.	Vermont.	1724.	Fort Dummer.	"	1791.
15.	Kentucky.	1775.	Boonsboro.	"	1792.
16.	Tennessee.	1757.	Fort Loudoun.	"	1796.
17.	Ohio.	1788.	Marietta.	"	1802.
18.	Louisiana.	1699.	Iberville.	French.	1812.
19.	Indiana.	1703.	Vincennes.	"	1816.
20.	Mississippi.	1716.	Natchez.	"	1817.
21.	Illinois.	1720.	Kaskaskia.	"	1818.
22.	Alabama.	1711.	Mobile.	"	1819.
23.	Maine.	1625.	Bristol.	"	1820.
24.	Missouri.	1764.	St. Louis.	"	1821.
25.	Arkansas.	1764.	Arkansas Post.	"	1836.
26.	Michigan.	1685.	Detroit.	"	1837.
27.	Florida.	1565.	St. Augustine.	Spaniards.	1845.
28.	Texas.	1692.	San Antonio.	"	1845.
29.	Iowa.	1833.	Burlington.	Americans.	1846.
30.	Wisconsin.	1669.	Green Bay.	French.	1848.
31.	California.	1769.	San Diego.	Spaniards.	1850.
32.	Minnesota.	1846.	St. Paul.	Americans.	1858.
33.	Oregon.	1811.	Astoria.	"	1859.
34.	Kansas.			"	1861.
35.	West Virginia.			English.	1863.
36.	Nevada.			Americans.	1864.
37.	Nebraska.			"	1867.
38.	Colorado.			"	1876.
39.	Washington.			"	Preparing for Admission, July, 1889.
40.	Montana.			"	
41.	North Dakota.			"	
42.	South Dakota.			"	

TERRITORIES OF THE UNITED STATES.

NO.	TERRITORIES.	WHENCE TAKEN.	WHEN ORGANIZED.
1.	New Mexico.	Mexico.	1850.
2.	Utah.	"	"
3.	Arizona.	"	1863.
4.	Idaho.	Oregon Territory.	"
5.	Wyoming.	Louisiana Territory.	1868.
6.	Alaska.	Russian America.	Unorganized.
7.	Indian Territory.	Louisiana Territory.	"
	District of Columbia.	Maryland [and Virginia].	

PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

NO.	PRESIDENTS.	FROM WHAT STATE.	INAUGURATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.
1.	George Washington.	Virginia.	April 30, 1789.	John Adams.
2.	John Adams.	Massachusetts.	March 4, 1797.	Thomas Jefferson.
3.	Thomas Jefferson.	Virginia.	" 1801.	Aaron Burr. George Clinton.
4.	James Madison.	"	" 1809.	George Clinton. Elbridge Gerry.
5.	James Monroe.	"	" 1817.	Daniel D. Tompkins.
6.	John Quincy Adams.	Massachusetts.	" 1825.	John C. Calhoun.
7.	Andrew Jackson.	Tennessee.	" 1829.	John C. Calhoun. Martin Van Buren.
8.	Martin Van Buren.	New York.	" 1837.	Richard M. Johnson.
9.	William H. Harrison.	Ohio.	" 1841.	John Tyler.
10.	John Tyler.	Virginia.	April 6, 1841.	
11.	James K. Polk.	Tennessee.	March 4, 1845.	George M. Dallas.
12.	Zachary Taylor.	Louisiana.	" 5, 1849.	Millard Fillmore.
13.	Millard Fillmore.	New York.	July 9, 1850.	
14	Franklin Pierce.	New Hampshire.	March 4, 1853.	William R. King.
15.	James Buchanan.	Pennsylvania.	" 1857.	John C. Breckinridge.
16.	Abraham Lincoln.	Illinois.	" 1861.	Hannibal Hamlin. Andrew Johnson.
17.	Andrew Johnson.	Tennessee.	April 15, 1865.	
18.	Ulysses S. Grant.	Illinois.	March 4, 1869.	Schuyler Colfax. Henry Wilson.
19.	Rutherford B. Hayes.	Ohio.	" 5, 1877.	William A. Wheeler.
20.	James A. Garfield.	"	" 4, 1881.	Chester A. Arthur.
21.	Chester A. Arthur.	New York.	Sept. 20, 1881.	
22.	Grover Cleveland.	"	March 4, 1885.	Thomas A. Hendricks.
23.	Benjamin Harrison.	Indiana.	" 1889.	Levi P. Morton.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE,

ADOPTED BY CONGRESS JULY 4, 1776.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these, are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his Governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined, with others, to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally, the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction, of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren.

We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in GENERAL CONGRESS assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name, and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *free and independent States*; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain, is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which INDEPENDENT STATES may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other, our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

[The foregoing Declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed and signed by the following members:]

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,
James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas McKean.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, jr.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, jr.,
Thomas Lynch, jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.

Copies of the foregoing Declaration were, by a resolution of Congress, sent to the several assemblies, conventions, and committees, or councils of safety, and to the several commanding officers of the continental troops; and it was also proclaimed in each of the United States, and at the head of the army.

THE

CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.*

[PREAMBLE.]

We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect Union, establish Justice, insure domestic Tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general Welfare, and secure the Blessings of Liberty to ourselves and our Posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

[THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.]

Section 1. All legislative Powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

Section 2. [1] The House of Representatives shall be composed of Members chosen every second Year by the People of the several States, and the Electors in each State shall have the Qualifications requisite for Electors of the most numerous Branch of the State Legislature.

[2] No Person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the Age

* This is an exact copy of the original in punctuation, spelling, capitals, etc.,—in all respects except the words and figures which are inclosed in brackets, and the reference marks.

Preamble.—For what purposes was the Constitution formed? What three departments of government are established under the Constitution? *Ans.* The legislative, the judicial, and the executive: the legislative to enact the laws; the executive to enforce the laws, and the judicial to interpret them.

Article 1. *Sec.* 1.—In whom is the legislative power vested, and of what does it consist?

Sec. 2. [1] By whom are the representatives chosen, and how often? What is an elector? *Ans.* A person who has the right to vote in choosing an officer.

[2] What are the qualifications for representatives?

of twenty-five Years, and been seven Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

[3] Representatives and direct Taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective Numbers,* which shall be determined by adding to the whole Number of free Persons, including those bound to Service for a Term of Years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other Persons.† The actual Enumeration shall be made within three Years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent Term of ten Years, in such Manner as they shall by Law direct. The Number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty Thousand, but each State shall have at Least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to chuse three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

[4] When vacancies happen in the Representation from any State, the Executive Authority thereof shall issue Writs of Election to fill such Vacancies.

[5] The House of Representatives shall chuse their Speaker and other officers;‡ and shall have the sole power of Impeachment.

SECTION 3. [1] The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six Years; and each Senator shall have one Vote.

[2] Immediately after they shall be assembled in Consequence of the first Election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three Classes. The Seats of the Senators of the first Class shall be vacated at the Expiration of the second Year, of the second Class at the Expiration of the fourth Year, and of the third class at the Expiration of the sixth Year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year;

---

* Under the census of 1880 one representative is allowed for every 154,325 persons.

† "Other persons" refers to slaves. See Amendments, Art. XIV., Sections 1 and 2.

‡ The principal of these are the clerk, sergeant-at-arms, door-keeper, and postmaster.

---

[3] How were representatives and direct taxes apportioned? When and how often was the census to be taken?

[4] How were vacancies in the representation from any State to be filled?

[5] What powers are delegated to the House of Representatives?

Sec. 3. [1] Who compose the Senate of the United States? By whom chosen? For what period of time? and to how many votes is each senator entitled? How does a senator differ from a representative? *Ans.* A senator is chosen by the legislature of his own State, for six years,—a representative is chosen by the people, for two years.

[2] Into how many classes were they at first divided, and for what purpose? What provision is made for vacancies?

and if Vacancies happen by Resignation, or otherwise, during the Recess of the Legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary Appointments until the next Meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such Vacancies

[3] No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty Years, and been nine Years a Citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an Inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

[4] The Vice President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no Vote, unless they be equally divided.

[5] The Senate shall chuse their other Officers, and also a President, pro tempore, in the Absence of the Vice President, or when he shall exercise the Office of President of the United States.

[6] The Senate shall have the sole Power to try all Impeachments. When sitting for that Purpose, they shall be on Oath or Affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside: And no Person shall be convicted without the Concurrence of two-thirds of the Members present.

[7] Judgment in Cases of Impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from Office, and Disqualification to hold and enjoy any Office of Honour, Trust or Profit under the United States: but the Party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to Indictment, Trial, Judgment and Punishment, according to Law.

SECTION 4. [1] The Times, Places and Manner of holding Elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by Law make or alter such Regulations, except as to the places of chusing Senators.

[2] The Congress shall assemble at least once in every Year, and such Meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by Law appoint a different Day.

SECTION 5. [1] Each House shall be the Judge of the Elections, Returns and Qualifications of its own Members, and a Majority of each shall constitute a Quorum to do Business; but a smaller Number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the Attendance of absent Members, in such Manner, and under such Penalties as each House may provide.

[2] Each House may determine the Rules of its Proceedings, punish its Members for disorderly Behaviour, and, with the Concurrence of two-thirds, expel a Member

---

[3] What are the necessary qualifications for a senator?
[4] What two offices does the vice-president fill?
[5] What officers can the Senate choose?
[6] What further power has this body?
[7] In cases of impeachment, how far may judgment extend?
Sec. 4. [1] For what does the legislature of each State prescribe?
[2] How often, and when, does Congress assemble?
Sec. 5. [1] Of what is each House the judge?
[2] What other powers does each House possess?

[3] Each House shall keep a Journal of its Proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such Parts as may in their Judgment require Secrecy; and the Yeas and Nays of the Members of either House on any question shall, at the Desire of one-fifth of those Present, be entered on the Journal.

[4] Neither House, during the Session of Congress, shall, without the Consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other Place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6. [1] The Senators and Representatives shall receive a Compensation* for their Services, to be ascertained by Law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall in all Cases, except Treason, Felony and Breach of the Peace, be privileged from Arrest during their Attendance at the Session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any Speech or Debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other Place.

[2] No Senator or Representative shall, during the Time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil Office under the Authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the Emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no Person holding any Office under the United States, shall be a Member of either House during his Continuance in Office.

SECTION 7. [1] All Bills for raising Revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with Amendments as on other Bills.

[2] Every Bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a Law, be presented to the President of the United States; If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his Objections to the House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the Objections at large on their Journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such Reconsideration two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the Bill, it shall be sent, together with the Objections to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House it shall become a Law. But in all such Cases the Votes of Both Houses shall be determined by Yeas and Nays, and the Names of the Persons voting for and against the Bill shall be entered on the Journal of each

---

* The present compensation is $5,000 a year, and an allowance of 20 cents for every mile of travel to and from the national capital.

---

[3] What is each House required to keep?

[4] What restrictions are placed upon this body?

Sec. 6. [1] What do they receive for their services, and from what are they exempt?

[2] Can a senator or representative hold a civil office?

Sec. 7. [1] In which branch of the government do revenue bills originate?

[2] To whom are all bills presented, after they have passed the House? If the president disapproves of the bill, what becomes of it? How long can the president retain a bill, unsigned, before it becomes a law?

House respectively. If any Bill shall not be returned by the President within ten Days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the Same shall be a law, in like Manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their Adjournment prevent its Return, in which Case it shall not be a Law.

[3] Every Order, Resolution, or Vote to which the Concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of Adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take Effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the Rules and Limitations prescribed in the Case of a Bill.

SECTION 8. The Congress shall have Power.

[1] To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

[2] To borrow Money on the credit of the United States;

[3] To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes;

[4] To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization,* and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States;

[5] To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures;

[6] To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States;

[7] To establish Post Offices and post Roads;

[8] To promote the progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right† to their respective Writings and Discoveries;

---

* The Naturalization laws require a foreigner to be in the country five years before he is entitled to citizenship.

† An Author obtains a copyright by application to the Librarian of Congress, and it is secured for twenty-eight years.

An Inventor secures a patent from the Patent Office, at Washington, for a certain number of years, prescribed by the Commissioner of Patents.

---

[2] What power is delegated to the president in clause 3?

Sec. 8. [1] What power has Congress in regard to taxes, duties, etc.?

[2] How can money be borrowed?

[3] What can Congress regulate?

[4] What rule and laws can it establish?

[5] What power has it in regard to money?

[6] What jurisdiction over counterfeiting?

[7] What can it establish?

[8] How does it promote the progress of science and useful arts?

[9] To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court;

[10] To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations;

[11] To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water;

[12] To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer Term than two Years;

[13] To provide and maintain a Navy;

[14] To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces;

[15] To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions;

[16] To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress;

[17] To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the Same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, Dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings;—And

[18] To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

SECTION 9. [1] The Migration or Importation of such Persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress,

---

[9] What tribunals can it constitute?

[10] What does it punish? What is meant by high seas? *Ans.* The water of the ocean beyond the limits of low-water mark.

[11] What authority is delegated in this clause? What are meant by letters of marque and reprisal? *Ans.* Commissions granted to individuals, authorizing them to capture vessels, etc., of any other nation at war with the United States government.

[12] What power is given in regard to armies, and with what restriction?

[13] What, in regard to a navy?

[14] What rules can it make?

[15] For what purposes can the militia be called out?

[16] What is the law respecting the militia? What right is reserved to the States?

[17] Over what is exclusive legislation permitted? What does the State legislature grant to Congress?

[18] What general powers are vested in this body?

Sec. 9. [1] What was the law of migration or importation of persons? When was this importation prohibited? *Ans.* Jan. 1, 1808.

prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a Tax or Duty may be imposed on such Importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each Person.

[2] The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

[3] No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

[4] No Capitation, or other direct Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

[5] No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

[6] No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another: nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

[7] No Money shall be drawn from the Treasury, but in Consequence of Appropriations made by Law; and a regular Statement and Account of the Receipts and Expeditures of all public Money shall be published from time to time.

[8] No Title of Nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no Person holding any Office of Profit or Trust under them, shall, without the Consent of the Congress, accept of any present, Emolument, Office, or Title, of any kind whatever, from any King, Prince, or foreign State.

SECTION 10. [1] No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation; grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal; coin Money; emit Bills of Credit; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

[2] No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws: and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

---

[2] When can the writ of habeas corpus be suspended? What is meant by a writ of habeas corpus? *Ans.* A written order from a magistrate directing that a certain person shall be brought before him.

[3] What is embraced in this clause? What is meant by bill of attainder? *Ans.* An act of the legislature by which a person guilty of high crime may be put to death without other trial. What is an *ex post facto* law? *Ans.* A law which makes an act punishable, which was not so at the time of its commission.

[4] How are taxes apportioned?

[5] Can articles carried from one State to another be taxed?

[6] What is the law regulating revenue and commerce?

[7] What is the regulation imposed respecting public moneys?

[8] Can any titles be granted by the government, or any gifts be received by its officials?

Sec. 10. [1] What restrictions are imposed upon the States?

[2] What prohibitions are the States under, regarding imposts, etc.?

[3] No State shall without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of Delay.

ARTICLE II.

[THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.]

SECTION 1. [1] The executive Power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his Office during the Term of four Years, and, together with the Vice President, chosen for the same Term, be elected, as follows:

[2] Each State shall appoint, in such Manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a Number of Electors, equal to the whole Number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no Senator or Representative, or Person holding an Office of Trust or Profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

* [3] The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by Ballot for two Persons, of whom one at least shall not be an Inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a List of all the Persons voted for, and of the Number of Votes for each; which List they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the Seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the Presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the Certificates, and the Votes shall then be counted. The Person having the greatest Number of Votes shall be the President, if such Number be a Majority of the whole Number of Electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such Majority and have an equal Number of Votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately chuse by Ballot one of them for President; and if no Person have a Majority, then from the five highest on the List the said House shall in like Manner chuse the President. But in chusing the President, the Votes shall be taken by States, the Representation from each State having one Vote; a Quorum for this Purpose shall consist of a Member or Members from two-thirds of the States, and a Majority of all the States shall be necessary to a

* This clause has been superseded by the 12th Amendment.

[3] What restrictions are imposed under this clause?

ART. II. *Sec.* 1. [1] In whom is the executive power vested? How long does he hold office? Can he remain in office after the term expires? *Ans.* He may be re-elected any number of times.

[2] How are electors appointed?

[3] How were the electors to perform their duties? In choosing the president, how were the votes taken? How was the vice-president chosen?

Choice. In every Case, after the Choice of the President, the Person having the greatest Number of Votes of the Electors shall be the Vice President. But if there should remain two or more who have equal Votes, the Senate shall chuse from them by Ballot the Vice President.

[4] The Congress may determine the Time of chusing the Electors, and the Day on which they shall give their Votes; which Day shall be the same throughout the United States.

[5] No Person except a natural born Citizen, or a Citizen of the United States, at the time of the Adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the Office of President; neither shall any Person be eligible to that Office who shall not have attained to the Age of thirty-five Years, and been fourteen Years a Resident within the United States.

[6] In Case of the Removal of the President from Office, or of his Death, Resignation, or Inability to discharge the Powers and Duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice President, and the Congress may by Law provide for the Case of Removal, Death, Resignation, or Inability, both of the President and Vice President, declaring what Officer shall then act as President, and such Officer shall act accordingly, until the Disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

[7] The President shall, at stated Times, receive for his Services, a Compensation, which shall neither be encreased nor diminished during the Period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that Period any other Emolument from the United States, or any of them.

[8] Before he enter on the Execution of his Office, he shall take the following Oath or Affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the Office of Presi-"dent of the United States, and will to the best of my Ability, preserve, protect and "defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2. [1] The President shall be Commander in Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States, and of the Militia of the several States, when called into the actual Service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal Officer in each of the executive Departments, upon any Subject relating to the Duties of their respective Offices, and he shall have Power to grant Reprieves and Pardons for Offences against the United States, except in Cases of Impeachment.

[2] He shall have Power, by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, to

---

[4] Who determines the time of choosing electors?

[5] What qualifications are necessary for the presidency?

[6] When does the office devolve upon the vice-president?

[7] How is the president compensated for his services? (The salary of the president is $50,000 per annum, and that of the vice-president is $8,000.)

[8] What is the prescribed oath of office?

Sec. 2. [1] What powers are delegated to the president?

[2] What are his powers in regard to foreign relations?

make Treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the Advice and Consent of the Senate, shall appoint Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the supreme Court, and all other Officers of the United States, whose Appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by Law: but the Congress may by Law vest the Appointment of such inferior Officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of Law, or in the Heads of Departments.

[3] The President shall have Power to fill up all Vacancies that may happen during the Recess of the Senate, by granting Commissions which shall expire at the End of their next Session.

SECTION 3. He shall from time to time give to the Congress Information of the Stat of the Union, and recommend to their Consideration such Measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary Occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in Case of Disagreement between them, with Respect to the time of Adjournment, he may adjourn them to such Time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take Care that the Laws be faithfully executed, and shall Commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4. The President, Vice President and all civil Officers of the United States, shall be removed from Office on Impeachment for, and Conviction of, Treason, Bribery, or other high Crimes and Misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

[THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.]

SECTION 1. The Judicial Power of the United States, shall be vested in one supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their Offices during good behaviour, and shall, at stated times, receive for their Services, a Compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in Office.

SECTION 2. [1] The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority;—to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls;—to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Juris-

---

[3] What can he do with vacant offices?

Sec. 3. With what is he expected to furnish Congress? What other duties is he expected to perform?

Sec. 4. On what grounds can the government officers be removed?

ART. III. *Sec.* 1. In whom is the judicial power of the United States vested, and for how long a period?

Sec. 2. [1] To what cases does this judicial power extend?

diction;—to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party;—to Controversies between two or more States;—between a State and Citizens of another State;—between Citizens of different States,—between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

[2] In all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be Party, the supreme Court shall have original Jurisdiction. In all the other Cases before mentioned, the supreme Court shall have appellate Jurisdiction, both as to Law and Fact, with such Exceptions, and under such Regulations as the Congress shall make.

[3] The Trial of all Crimes, except in Cases of Impeachment, shall be by Jury; and such Trial shall be held in the State where the said Crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the Trial shall be at such Place or Places as the Congress may by Law have directed.

SECTION 3. [1] Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

[2] The Congress shall have Power to declare the Punishment of Treason, but no Attainder of Treason shall work Corruption of Blood, or Forfeiture except during the Life of the Person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

[MISCELLANEOUS.]

SECTION 1. Full Faith and Credit shall be given in each State to the public Acts, Records, and judicial Proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general Laws prescribe the Manner in which such Acts, Records and Proceedings shall be proved, and the Effect thereof.

SECTION 2. [1] The Citizens of each State shall be entitled to all Privileges and Immunities of Citizens in the several States.

[2] A Person charged in any State with Treason, Felony, or other Crime, who shall flee from Justice, and be found in another State, shall on Demand of the exec-

---

[2] In what cases has it original jurisdiction? What is meant by appellate jurisdiction? *Ans.* Jurisdiction over cases appealed from a lower court.

[3] How are crimes tried, and where?

Sec. 3. [1] In what does treason consist?

[2] Who declares the punishment?

ART. IV. *Sec.* 1. What provisions are contained in this section?

Sec. 2. [1] To what privileges are the citizens of each State entitled?

[2] What provision is made for criminals who have fled from one State to another?

utive Authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having Jurisdiction of the Crime.

[3] No Person held to Service or Labour in one State, under the Laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in Consequence of any Law or Regulation therein, be discharged from such Service or Labour, but shall be delivered up on Claim of the Party to whom such Service or Labour may be due.

SECTION 3. [1] New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the Jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the Junction of two or more States, or Parts of States, without the Consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

[2] The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful Rules and Regulations respecting the Territory or other Property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to Prejudice any Claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION 4. The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a Republican Form of Government, and shall protect each of them against Invasion, and on Application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened) against domestic Violence.

ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the Application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a Convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either Case, shall be valid to all Intents and Purposes, as Part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by Conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other Mode of Ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the Year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any Manner affect the first and fourth Clauses in the Ninth Section of the first Article; and that no State, without its Consent, shall be deprived of its equal Suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

[1] All Debts contracted and Engagements entered into, before the Adoption of

---

[3] What regulation is made for the protection of employees?

Sec. 3. [1] How may new States be admitted?

[2] What body has power to dispose of and regulate property belonging to the United States?

Sec. 4. What is guaranteed to every State?

ART. V. In what way are amendments to the Constitution proposed and made?

ART. VI. [1] What debts does the Constitution recognize?

this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

[2] This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States shall be the Supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

[3] The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the Members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial Officers, both of the United States, and of the several States, shall be bound by Oath or Affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious Test shall ever be required as a qualification to any Office or public Trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of Nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the Seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and Eighty-seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth. **In Witness** whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names,

G° WASHINGTON—

Presidt and deputy from Virginia

NEW HAMPSHIRE.
John Langdon
Nicholas Gilman

NEW YORK.
Alexander Hamilton

NEW JERSEY.
Wil Livingston
Wm Paterson
David Brearley
Jona Dayton

PENNSYLVANIA.
B Franklin
Robt Morris
Tho Fitzsimons
James Wilson
Thomas Mifflin
Geo Clymer
Jared Ingersoll

MASSACHUSETTS.
Nathaniel Gorham
Rufus King
Gouv Morris

DELAWARE.
Geo Read
John Dickinson
Jaco Broom
Gunning Bedford, Jun'r
Richard Bassett

MARYLAND.
James M'Henry
Danl Carrol
Dan of St Thos Jenifer

VIRGINIA.
John Blair

CONNECTICUT.
Wm Saml Johnson
Roger Sherman
James Madison, Jr

NORTH CAROLINA.
Wm Blount
Hu Williamson
Richard Dobbs Spaight,

SOUTH CAROLINA.
J Rutledge
Charles Pinckney
Charles Cotesworth Pinckney
Pierce Butler

GEORGIA.
William Few
Abr Baldwin

Attest:

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

---

[2] What is the supreme law of the land?

[3] Who are bound by oath to support the Constitution?

ART. VII. How many States were requisite for the ratification of the Constitution?

The Constitution having been reported to Congress on the 17th September, 1787, was "submitted to a Convention of Delegates chosen in each State by the people thereof," and was ratified by the Conventions of the several States as follows:

By Delaware,	on the 7th December,	1787.
Pennsylvania,	on the 12th December,	1787.
New Jersey,	on the 18th December,	1787.
Georgia,	on the 2d January,	1788.
Connecticut,	on the 9th January,	1788.
Massachusetts,	on the 6th February,	1788.
Maryland,	on the 28th April,	1788.
South Carolina,	on the 23d May,	1788.
New Hampshire,	on the 21st June,	1788.
Virginia,	on the 26th June,	1788.
New York,	on the 26th July,	1788.
North Carolina,	on the 21st November,	1789.
Rhode Island,	on the 29th May,	1790.

ARTICLES

IN ADDITION TO, AND AMENDMENT OF,

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

Proposed by Congress, and ratified by the Legislatures of the several States, pursuant to the fifth article of the original Constitution.

(ARTICLE I.)

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for a redress of grievances.

(ARTICLE II.)

A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed.

(ARTICLE III.)

No Soldier shall, in time of peace be quartered in any house, without the consent of the Owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

(ARTICLE IV.)

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no Warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by Oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

AMENDMENTS.—ART. I.—What privileges are allowed the people in this article?
ART. II.—What is the law regarding the militia?
ART. III.—What is the law for the quartering of soldiers?
ART. IV.—What rights are secured in this article?

(ARTICLE V.)

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a Grand Jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the Militia, when in actual service in time of War or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any Criminal Case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

(ARTICLE VI.)

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have Compulsory process for obtaining Witnesses in his favour, and to have the Assistance of Counsel for his defence.

(ARTICLE VII.)

In Suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

(ARTICLE VIII.)

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

(ARTICLE IX.)

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

(ARTICLE X.)*

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

---

* The first ten amendments were proposed at the first session of the first Congress (1789), and declared adopted in 1791.

ART. V.—What protection is given to life and property?
ART. VI.—What is the law respecting criminal prosecutions?
ART. VII.—What provision is contained in this article?
ART. VIII.—What protection to persons and property is given in Article VIII.?
ART. IX.—Does the Constitution interfere with private rights?
ART. X.—What powers are delegated to the States and people?

(ARTICLE XI.)*

The Judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by Citizens of another State, or by Citizens or Subjects of any Foreign State.

(ARTICLE XII.)†

The Electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice President, one of whom at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transfer sealed to the seat of the government of the United States directed to the President of the Senate;—The President of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates and the votes shall then be counted;—The person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.—The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice President, shall be the Vice President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice President of the United States.

* The eleventh amendment was proposed at the first session of the third Congress (1794), and declared adopted in 1798.

† This article is substituted for Clause 3, Sec. I., Art. II., page 317, and annuls it. It was declared adopted in 1804.

ART. XI.—What limit is prescribed to the judicial power?

ART. XII.—Give the mode of electing president and vice-president.

(ARTICLE XIII.)*

SECTION I.—Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II.—Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

(ARTICLE XIV.)†

SECTION I.—All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SEC. II.—Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being 21 years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SEC. III.—No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

---

* The thirteenth amendment was proposed at the second session of the thirty-eighth Congress (1865), and declared adopted in 1865.

† The fourteenth amendment was first proposed at the first session of the thirty-ninth Congress, 1866, and declared adopted in 1868.

ART. XIII., *Sec.* 1.—What provision is made against slavery?

Sec. 2.—By what means can this law be enforced?

ART. XIV. *Sec.* 1.—Who are citizens of the United States?

Sec. 2.—How are representatives apportioned?

Sec. 3.—What are some of the disqualifications for office?

SEC. IV.—The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V.—The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

(ARTICLE XV.)*

SECTION I.—The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II.—The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

* The fifteenth amendment was proposed at the second session of the fortieth Congress, in 1869, and declared adopted in 1870.

Sec. 4.—What is said of the public debt?
Sec. 5.—Who has power to enforce these provisions?
ART. XV. *Sec.* 1.—What is said of the right of suffrage?
Sec. 2.—By whom may this article be enforced?

INDEX.

Abercrombie, Gen., p. 77; 78
Abolition of Slavery, p. 164; 242–3; 258; 331.
Abraham, Plains of, p. 78–9.
Acadia, p. 46; 60; 62; 63; 74.
Adams, John, p. 98 and note; 104; 154, note; 158; 168–171; 175; 198; 309.
Adams, John Quincey, p. 193 and note; 198–9; 309.
Adams, Samuel, p. 94, note; 94–5.
Agassiz, Louis, p. 295.
Alabama, p. 21; 194; 262; 272, note; 308.
Alabama (Confederate Cruiser), p. 248 and note; 256 and note.
Alabama Claims, p. 267; 270; 271.
Alamance River, and battle, p. 99.
Alamo, Fort, p. 207.
Alaska, p. 266–7; 289; 309.
Albany, p. 25; 65.
Albemarle Settlements, N. C., p. 69; 71.
Alexander, Sir William, p. 44.
Alexandria, Seizure of, p. 231.
Algiers, p. 167; 190.
Algonquins, p. 14.
Alien Law, p. 169.
Allen, Ethan, p. 105 and note.
Amendments to the Constitution, p. 171 and note; 258; 265; 267–8; 328–32.
America, Discovery of, p. 15–24.
American Debt, p. 155; 156; 163; 198; 202; 278.
Amerigo Vespucci, p. 20.
Amnesty Proclamation, p. 264.
Anderson, Major, p. 224; 230.
André, Major, p. 145 and note.
Andros, Gov., p. 50; 60; 64.
Anne, Queen, *see* Queen Anne's War.
Annapolis, p. 62.
Antietam, battle, *see* Sharpsburg.
Anti-Mormon Legislation, p. 298; 300.
Antislavery Society, p. 204.
Apaches, p. 14.
Appomattox Court House, p. 259; 260.
Arctic Exploration, p. 298 and note.
Arizona Territory, p. 273; 309.
Arkansas, p. 200; 202; 231; 273; 308.
Arlington Heights, p. 231.
Armada, the Invincible, p. 30 and note.
Armed Neutrality, p. 146 and note.
Army at Boston, p. 107–8.
Army of the Potomac, p. 244.
Arnold, Benedict, p. 105 and note; 124; 144–5; 148; 152.
Arthur, Chester A., p. 285; 297 and note; 297–302.
Articles of Confederation, p. 127; 157.
Ashburton Treaty, p. 205 and note.
Assassination of Garfield, p. 287 and note.
Assassination of Lincoln, p. 261 and note; p. 261–2.
Astoria, p. 191, note.
Atlanta, p. 249; 254; 255; 256.
Atlantic Cable, p. 266 and note.
Averill, Gen., p. 252.
Averysboro, p. 260.

Babcock, Gen., tried for fraud, 277.
Bacon, Francis, p. 55 and note.
Bacon's Rebellion, p. 54–6 and notes.
Baker's Creek, battle, p. 246.
Balboa, p. 21.
Baltimore, p. 117; 187; 231; 253.
Baltimore, Lord, p. 39; 51 and note.
Bank, National, *see* National Bank, United States Bank.
Banks, Gen., p. 238; 239; 250.
Baptists, p. 46; 87.
Barataria, Island, p. 188 and note.
Barbary States, War, p. 190.
Barrancas, Fort, p. 193.
Barré, Col., p. 95, note.
Barron, Commodore, p. 173 and note.
'Battle of the Clouds,' p. 247 and note.
Battles in the War of Secession, p. 262, note.
Beauregard, Gen., p. 212; 225; 241 and note; 252.
Belknap Impeachment, p. 277.
Belligerents, p. 243.
Belmont, battle, p. 234.
Bemis's Heights, battle, p. 124.
Bennington, battle, p. 123.
Bentonville, battle, p. 261.
Berkeley, Bishop, p. 62.
Berkeley, Sir William, p. 40; 41; 54–6 and notes; 69.
Berlin and Milan Decrees, p. 174 and note; 178, note.
Big Bethel, battle, p. 232.
Black Beard (Theach.), p. 58.
Black Friday, p. 269.
Black Hawk War, p. 199.
Bladensburg, p. 186.
Blaine, J. G., p. 287; 301–2.
Blair, Gen. F. P., p. 233 and note; 267
Blair Education Bill, p. 298 and note.
Bland Silver Bill, p. 283.
'Bleeding Kansas,' p. 219.
Blockade, p. 242; 243.
Blue Lodges, p. 218.
Blue Ridge, crossed, p. 57.
Board of Trade, p. 67.

'Body of Liberties,' p. 46.
Bon Homme Richard, p. 137.
Boone, Daniel, p. 99-100.
Booneville, battle, p. 233.
Booth, John Wilkes, p. 261, note; 264.
Boston, p. 96; 104; 105; 106; 272 and note.
Boston Legend, p. 111, note.
'Boston Massacre,' p. 98.
Boston Port Bill, p. 101.
Boston regained, p. 111-2; 111, note.
'Boston Tea Party,' p. 100-1.
Bouquet, Gen., p. 81.
Bounties, p. 119 and note.
Braddock's Defeat, p. 76 and note.
Bragg, Gen., p. 211, note; 242; 247; 248.
Brandywine, battle, p. 126.
Brant, p. 179.
Brazil, p. 20; 256; 277.
Breckinridge, Gen. John C., p. 219 and note; 222; 252; 253; 309.
Breed's Hill, p. 107.
British Orders in Council, p. 174 and note; 178.
Brock, Gen., p. 179.
Brown, Gratz, p. 274.
Brown, John, p. 218-9; 222.
Brown University, p. 86, note.
Buchanan, James, p. 219 and note; 220-6; 309.
Buell, Gen., p. 241.
Buena Vista, p. 211 and note.
Bull Run, p. 232 and note; *see* Manassas, First.
Bunker Hill, 107.
Burgoyne, Gen., p. 123 and note; 123-5.
Burke, Edmund, p. 92 and note; 96, note; 101, note; 123, note.
Burlingame, Anson, p. 267.
Burnside, Gen., p. 236; 240.
Burr, Aaron, p. 108 and note; 171; 173; 309.
Butler, Gen. B. F., p. 231; 232; 241; 251; 252; 253; 256 and note; 302.
Butler, Col. John, p. 132.

Cabot, Sebastian, p. 20.
Cabots, p. 20; 28.
Calhoun, John C., p. 198 and note; 201.
California, p. 209 and note; 209-10; 214; 215-6; 308.
California Gold, p. 214 and note.
Calvert, Leonard, p. 51.
Camden, S. C., battle, p. 140-1.
Campbell, Gen. William, p. 143 and note.
Canada, p. 22; 24; 78; 80; 105; 108; 112; 119; 137; 179; 180; 182; 183; 185; 186.
Canadian Rebellion, p. 203.
Canby, Gen., p. 262; 275 and note.
Canonchet, p. 59-60.
Canonicus, p. 43; 47.
Cape Fear River, p. 69; 112; 256.
Carleton, Sir Guy, p. 119; 123.
Carnifex Ferry, skirmish, p. 232.
Carolina, p. 69; 151.
Carolina, Fort, p. 22; 23; 24.
Carolina, North, p. 22; 68-71; 98-9; 105; 110; 149; 150; 260; 261; 308.
Carolina, South, p. 70; 110; 146; 176, note; 200; 223; 224; 260; 280; 281; 308.
Carolinas, p. 70; 71; 72; 110; 151; 260.
Carpenters' Hall, p. 102.
Carrick's Ford, Va., battle, p. 232.
Carthagena, South America, p. 58.
Cartier, Jacques, p. 22.
Carver, Gov., p. 42-3.
Catawbas, p. 14.
Catharine of Russia, p. 146.
Cedar Creek, battle, p. 254.
Cedar Mountain, battle, p. 239.
Centennial Celebrations, p. 276-7; 288; 297; 298.
Cerro Gordo, battle, p. 211-2.
Chambersburg, burnt, p. 253.
Champe, Sergeant, p. 145, note.
Champion Hills, battle, *see* Baker's Creek.
Champlain, Lake, battles, *see* Plattsburg.
Champlain, Samuel, p. 24.
Chancellorsville, battle, p. 244.
Chapultepec, battle, p. 213.
Charles I., p. 40; 45; 52.
Charles II., p. 41 and note; 50; 53; 56; 70.
Charles V., p. 28.
Charles IX. of France, p. 22-3.
Charleston, S. C., p. 70; 84; 105; 112-3; 139; 201; 242 and note; 248; 260.
Charlestown, Mass., p. 44; 107.
Charlottesville, Va., p. 152; 174, note; 252; 258.
'Charter Oak,' p. 51 and note.
'Charter of Liberties,' p. 64.
Charters of New England, p. 60.
Chase, Salmon P., p. 249.
Chatham, Earl of, *see* Pitt, William.
Chattanooga, p. 247.
Cherokees, p. 14; 71; 80; 199-200.
Cherry Valley, p. 133.
Chesapeake and Leopard, p. 174-5; 178.
Chesapeake and Shannon, p. 182-3.
Chicago Fire, p. 272 and note.
Chickahominy, p. 33; 239.
Chickamauga, battle, p. 247 and note.
Civil Service Reform, p. 297-8; 298, note.
Claims against England, p. 167; 263; 267; 270; 271.
Clarendon, Lord, p. 68; 69.
Clarke, Gen. Geo. Rodgers, p. 100; 133 and note.
Clarke, William, p. 174 and note.
Clay, Henry, p. 198 and note; 200; 215.
"Clay's Compromise Bill," p. 216.
Clayborne's Rebellions, p. 39; 52.
Cleveland, Grover, p. 301 and note; 309.
Clinton, Gen. Henry, p. 106; 112; 113; 116; 118; 125; 130 and note; 131; 137; 140; 144; 145; 152; 153; 154.
Clinton, George, p. 158; 173; 177; 180; 309.
Cockburn, Adm., p. 186.
Cold Harbor Battles, p. 239; 252.
Colepepper, Lord, *see* Culpeper.
Colfax, Schuyler, p. 267; 309.
Coligny, Adm., p. 22.
Collapse of 1873, p. 274-5.
Colonial Habits, p. 82-3.

Colonies, English, p. 28-87.
Colorado, p. 278-9 ; 308.
Columbia College, p. 86, note.
Columbia, District of, p. 164-5.
Columbia River, p. 174 ; 191, note ; 197.
Columbia, So. Ca., p. 260 and note.
Columbus (surrendered), p. 236.
Columbus, Christopher, p. 16-20.
Comanches, p. 14.
Commerce, p. 85 and note ; 136; 290.
Compromise, Clay's, *see* Clay's Compromise Bill.
Compromise, Crittenden, *see* Crittenden Compromise.
Compromise, Missouri, *see* Missouri Compromise.
Concord, p. 105.
Confederacy, Southern, *see* Southern Confederacy.
Confederate Army, p. 249 ; 262.
Confederate Capitals, p. 224 ; 231.
Confederate Commissioners, p. 235 ; 258.
Confederate Congress, p. 224.
Confederate Currency, p. 243 and note ; 257 and note.
Confederation, Articles of, p. 127; 148; 157.
Confiscation Acts, p. 235.
Congo, Free State of the, p. 299 and note.
Congress, at Albany, p. 65.
Congress (man-of-war), burnt, p. 237.
Congress, First Continental, p. 101-2.
Connecticut, p. 47 ; 48, note ; 50 ; 60 ; 120 ; 132 ; 308.
Connecticut River, p. 47 ; 64.
Conscription, p. 119 ; 249.
Conspiracy of Pontiac, *see* Pontiac's War.
Constitution and Guerrière, p. 180.
Constitution and Java, p. 180.
Constitution of 1787, p. 157-8.
Constitution of the United States, p. 157-8 ; 314-332.
Continental Army, p. 107-8 ; 126 and note ; 148 ; 156.
Continental Congress, *see* Congress, First Continental.
Continental Currency, p. 146-8.
Contrabands, p. 243 note.
Contrera, battle, p. 213.
Convention, Hartford, p. 189-90 ; 190, note.
Convention, Peace, *see* Peace Conference.
Cordilleras, p. 212 and note.
Corea, p. 271.
Corinth, Miss, p. 241.
Cornbury, Lord, p. 64.
Cornstalk, p. 103, note.
Cornwallis, Earl, p. 112 and note ; 117 ; 120 ; 140 ; 142-3 ; 148-50 ; 153-4.
Coronado, p. 21.
Cortez, p. 21 ; 34, note.
Cory, Giles, p. 61, note.
Cotton, p. 71 ; 72, note ; 85 ; 176, note.
Cotton Crop of 1860, p. 225.
Cotton Gin, p. 176 and note.
Covenanters, p. 66 and note.
Cowpens, battle, p. 149 and note.
'Crater, The,' p. 253.
Creek Indians, p. 71 ; 178 ; 183-5 ; 188 ; 193 ; 199 ; 202.
Crisis of 1837, p. 203 ; of 1857, p. 225 ; of 1873, p. 274-5.
'Crittenden Compromise,' p. 224 and note.
Crittenden, J. J., p 224, note.
Cromwell, Oliver, p. 41 ; 45.
Crown Point, p. 76 and note ; 77 ; 78 ; 105.
Cuba, p. 18 ; 217 ; 275 and note.
Culpeper, Lord, p. 53 ; 56.
Cumberland (man-of-war), sunk, p. 237.
Currency Question, p. 276.
Custer, Gen., p. 278.
Czar of Russia, p. 243.

Dahlgren Raid, p. 250.
Dakotah Territory, p. 289 ; 309.
Dakotas, p. 14.
Dallas, George M., p. 309.
Dare, Virginia, p. 30.
Davis, Jefferson, p. 224 ; 224-5, note ; 236 ; 260 ; 262 ; 264.
Dearborn, Fort (Chicago), p. 179.
Dearborn, Gen., p. 180 ; 181.
Decatur, Commodore, p. 172-3 and note ; 180.
Declaration of Independence, p. 113-5 ; 115, note.
Declaration of Rights, p. 96.
DeGourgues, p. 24.
DeGrasse, p. 153 and note.
Deerfield, p. 61-2.
Deerhound, yacht, p. 256 note.
DeKalb, Baron, p. 121 and note ; 140 ; 141.
Delaware, p. 66 ; 68 ; 308.
Delaware, Lord, p. 34 ; 35-6 ; 36, note.
Delawares, p. 81.
DeLeon, Ponce, *see* Ponce de Leon.
Democrats, p. 204 ; 219 ; 222 ; 267 ; 274 ; 279 ; 301 ; 302.
DeSoto, Hernando, p. 21.
D'Estaing, p. 131 ; 138-9.
Detroit, surrendered, p. 179 and note.
Dieskau, p. 77.
Disputes with Great Britain, p. 167.
Distribution of Treasury Surplus, p. 202.
District of Columbia, *see* Columbia, District of.
Dom Pedro II., Emperor of Brazil, p. 277.
Donelson, Fort, p. 236 ; 241.
Dorchester Heights, p. 111.
Dorr's Rebellion, p. 206.
Douglas, Stephen A., p. 218 and note; 222.
Draft Riot in New York, p. 249.
Drake, Sir Francis, p. 30.
Dred Scott Case, p. 220 and note.
Durham's Station Convention, p. 261.
Dunmore, Lord, p. 102 ; 103 ; 109 ; 110.
Dutch Settlements, p. 24-5 ; 26 ; 63-4.
Dutch East India Company, p. 25.
Dutch West India Company, p. 25.

Early, Gen., p. 232; 252; 253; 258.
East India Company, p. 98; 101.
Eccanachaca, p. 184.
'Edmunds Law,' p. 300.
Education, p. 292–3.
Edward, Fort, p. 123.
Edwards, Jonathan, p. 86.
Electric Cable, p. 266.
Electric Telegraph, *see* Telegraph.
Elevators, p. 290, note.
Eliot, Rev. John, p. 46 and note.
Elizabeth, Queen, p. 28 and note; 29.
Elk Horn, battle, p. 236.
Emancipation Proclamation, p. 242–3.
Embargo, p. 167 and note; 175.
'Emigrant Aid Societies,' p. 218.
Emperor Maximilian, p. 263; 266.
Endicott, John, p. 44.
English Commonwealth, p. 53.
English Revolution, p. 60.
Erie, Fort, p. 185; 186.
Erie, Lake, *see* Lake Erie.
Essex (frigate), p. 189.
Essex and Alert, p. 180.
Esquimaux, p. 14.
Eutaw Springs, battle, p. 151–2 and note.
Explorations, p. 204; 219, note.
Exports, p. 58, note; 85 and note; 290.

Failures, p. 203; 298 and note.
Fair Oaks, battle, *see* Seven Pines.
Faneuil Hall, p. 97, note.
Farragut, Adm., p. 241; 256.
Federal Armies, p. 257; 262, note.
Federal Blockade, p. 242.
Federal Currency, p. 249; 257.
Federalist, p. 158.
Federalists, p. 165–6.
Fenians, p. 270 and note.
Field, Cyrus W., p. 266, note.
Fifteenth Amendment, p. 267–8; 332.
Fillmore, Millard, p. 215 and note; 216–7; 219.
Financial Panic, 1873, p. 275.
Fires, p. 272 and note; 298 and note.
First American Book, p. 86, note; College, 38; Confederation, 46; Congress, 65; Continental Congress, 102; Cotton-Gin, 176, note; Election for President, 158; English Settlement, 29; French, 22; Iron Furnace, 57–8; Legislature, 37; Newspaper, 86, note; Steam Vessel (Ocean), 194; (River), 176, and note; Telegraph, 203 and note; Written Constitution, 46.
Fisher, Fort, *see* Fort Fisher.
Fisheries Commission, *see* Halifax Fishery Commission.
Five Forks, battle, p. 259.
Flag of the United States, p. 120 and note.
Fleetwood, battle, p. 245.
Floods, p. 298 and note.
Florida, p. 21; 23; 71; 167; 193; 201; 208; 250; 279; 280; 308.
Florida, Confederate Cruiser, p. 256.
Floyd, Gen., of Georgia, p. 184.
Floyd, Gen., Va., p. 197.
Floyd, Gen. J. B., Va., p. 232.
Foote, Commodore, p. 236.
Foreign Aid to the United States, p. 125; 128; 143–4; 145–6.
Fort Fisher, p. 256 and note.
Fort Moultrie, p. 112–3; 201; 224; 262.
Fort Pickens, p. 230; 234.
Fort William Henry, p. 77 and note.
Fortress Monroe, p. 230, note; 232; 258.
Forest Fires, p. 272; 298, note.
'Fountain of Youth,' p. 21 and note.
Fourteenth Amendment, p. 265; 331–2.
France, Difficulties with, p. 168–9.
Frankland, p. 159.
Franklin, Benjamin, p. 87; 101, note; 114 and note; 120–1; 159–60.
Franklin, Sir John, p. 217.
Fraser, Gen., p. 124 and note.
Frauds in New York, p. 272–3; 273, note.
Fredericksburg, battle, p. 240.
Free-Soil Convention, p. 219.
Free-Soilers, p. 215 and note; 222.
Fremont, Gen. John C., p. 206; 209; 219 and note; 238.
French and Indian War, p. 74–81.
French Discoveries, p. 22–4; 74–5.
French Forts, p. 75.
French Interference, p. 166.
Friday, Black, p. 269.
Friends, *see* Quakers.
Frobisher, Martin, p. 28.
Frolic and Wasp, p. 180.
Frontenac, Fort, p. 76 and note.
Fugitive Slave Law, p. 216.
Fulton, Robert, p. 176 and note.

'Gadsden Treaty,' p. 217–8.
Gage, Gen., p. 101: 102–3; 104; 106–7; 111.
Gaines Mill, battle, p. 239.
Galveston, p. 192.
Garfield, Gen., p. 247, note; 285 and note; 286; 287 and note; 297; 309.
Gaspée, The, p. 98, note.
Gates, Gen., p. 124 and note; 127; 140–41.
Genest, p. 166.
Geneva Tribunal, p. 271 and note.
Genoa, p. 15–16 and note.
George III., p. 154 and note.
Georgia, p. 21; 71–3; 105; 134: 135; 146; 176, note; 200; 242; 262, note; 267; 269; 308.
Germanna, p. 57–8.
Germantown, battle, p. 126.
Gettysburg, battle, p. 245 and note.
Ghent, Treaty of, p. 190.
Gibraltar, Siege of, p. 146.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, p. 29; 31, note.
Goffe, p. 58.
Gold Discovered, p. 214 and note.
Goliad, battle, p. 207.
Gorges, Sir Fernandino, p. 44.
Gosnold, Captain, p. 31, note; 41.
'Grand Model,' p. 69; 70.
Grangers, The, p. 273 and note.
Grant, Gen. Ulysses S., p. 234 and note; 236; 241; 246; 247; 250–3; 254; 257, note; 258–9; 261; 264; 267; 268–77; 278–

9; 281; 285; 298, note; 302–3; 303, note; 309.
Great Meadows, p. 76 and note.
Greeley, Horace, p. 274 and note.
Greely, Lieut., p. 298, note.
Greenback Party, p. 273; 302.
Greene, Gen. Nathaniel, p. 131 and note; 141; 143; 149; 150; 151.
Grenville, Sir Richard, p. 28, note; 29; 30.
Grievances, Colonial, p. 93.
Guadalupe Hidalgo, Treaty of, p. 214.
Guess, George (Seguoyah), p. 14.
Guilford Court House, p. 150.
Guiteau, p. 287 and note.
Gustavus Adolphus, p. 25.

Habits of Colonial Times, *see* Colonial Habits.
Halifax Fishery Commission, p. 271.
'Hall of Apollo,' p. 102.
Halleck, Gen., p. 239; 241.
Hamilton, Alexander, p. 153, note; 158 and note; 164; 166; 173.
Hamlin, Hannibal, p. 309.
Hancock, John, p. 104–5; 115, note.
Hancock, Gen. Winfield S., p. 285.
Harper's Ferry, p. 222; 240.
Harrison, Gen. W. H., p. 180 and note; 181; 204; 309.
Hartford Convention, *see* Convention, Hartford.
Hartford College, p. 45; 86, note.
Hatteras Inlet, p. 234.
Hayes, Gen. Rutherford B., p. 271; 278; 279; 280–6; 309.
Hayne, Col. Isaac, p. 151 and note.
Hayne, Robert Y., p. 200.
Henry, Fort, p. 236.
Henry, Patrick, p. 93 and note; 93–4; 95–6; 104; 158.
Henry IV. (of France), p. 24.
Henry VII. (of England), p. 17.
Henry VIII. (of England), p. 28.
Herkimer, Gen. p. 124.
Hessians, p. 111; 115, note; 118.
High Joint Commission, p. 270 and note.
Hobkirk's Hill, battle, p. 150.
Holland, p. 26; 63; 145.
Hood, Gen., p. 254–5.
Hooker, Gen., p. 240; 244; 245; 247 and note; 262 and note.
Hooker, Rev. Thomas, p. 48 and note.
Hornet and Peacock, p. 182–3; 182, note.
Horse Shoe Bend (Tohopeka), battle, p. 185.
Houston, Gen. Sam., p. 207 and note.
Howe, Admiral (Lord), p. 115; 116; 131.
Howe, Gen. (Sir William), p. 106; 115–16; 117; 125–6; 130.
Howe, Lord, p. 77; 78.
Hudson, Henry, p. 25.
Huguenots, p. 22; 24; 57 and note; 70.
Hull, Gen. p. 179 and note.
Hunter, Gen., p. 252.
Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne, p. 47.

Idaho Territory, p. 309.
Illinois, p. 133; 194; 308.
Impeachment of Belknap, *see* Belknap Impeachment.
Impeachment of Pres. Johnson, p. 265–6.
Impressment of Seamen, p. 167; 174.
Independence, Declaration of, *see* Declaration of Independence.
Indian Territory, p. 309.
India Rubber, p. 292.
Indiana, p. 191; 308.
Indians, p. 8–15 and notes.
Industry and Trade of the United States, p. 290.
Inventions (American), p. 291–2, note; 291, note.
Iowa, p. 208; 215; 308.
Irish Famine, p. 215.
Iroquois, p. 14; 65.
Isabella, Queen, p. 17.
Island No. 10, p. 236.

Jackson, Gen. (Andrew), p. 184 and note; 185; 188 and note; 189, note; 193; 199–202; 202, note; 309.
Jackson, Gen Stonewall, p. 233 and note; 238; 239; 244; 252.
James I., p. 31; 61, note.
James II., p. 50; 57, note; 60; 64.
James River, p. 32; 54; 250; 253.
Jamestown, p. 32; 33; 34; 55.
Japanese Embassy, p. 271.
Japanese Treaty (Ken-a-ga-wa), p. 218.
Jasper, Sergeant, p. 113; 139.
Jay, John, p. 158; 167.
Jayhawkers, p. 218.
Jay's Treaty, p. 167.
Jefferson, Thomas, p. 114 and note; 152; 163; 165; 168; 170; 171–6; 198; 309.
Jesuits, p. 24; 74.
Johnson Andrew, p. 256 and note; 263–8; 309.
Johnston, Gen. A. S., p. 221 and note; 241.
Johnston, Gen. Joseph S., p. 232 and note; 237–8; 246; 254; 261; 264.
Joint Committee of Congress, p. 265.
Joint Electoral Commission, p. 279–80; p. 279, note.
Joint High Commission, *see* High Joint Commission.
Jones, John Paul, p. 137 and note.

Kane, Dr., p. 217.
Kansas, p. 218–19; 220; 308.
Kansas-Nebraska Bill, p. 218.
Kaskaskia, p. 133.
Kearsarge, p. 256 and note.
Kenagawa, *see* Japanese Treaty.
Kentucky, p. 99 and note; 159 and note; 165; 168; 231; 234; 308.
Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions, p 170.
Key, Francis S., p. 187, note.
Kidd, Capt., p. 64.
Kilpatrick's Raid, p. 250.
King George's War, p. 62–3.
King Philip's War, p. 59–60.

King William's War, p. 60–1.
King's Mountain, battle, p. 142–3; 143, note.
Knights of the Golden Horse Shoe, p. 57 and note.
Knights of Labor, p. 299, note.
'Know-Nothings,' p. 219 and note.
Knox, Gen., p. 163.
Knoxville, battle, p. 248.
Kosciusko, p. 122 and note.
Ku-Klux-Klan, p. 272 and note.

Labor Bureau, p. 299 and note.
Labor Reform, p. 299.
Labor Riots, p. 281; 282–3.
La Fayette, Gen., p. 121 and note; 130; 131; 143; 149; 153, note; 198; 288.
Lake Champlain, p. 76; 76–77, note; 119; 170; 186.
Lake Erie, p. 181.
Lake George, p. 76, note.
La Salle, p. 74–5.
Laud, Archbishop, p. 45.
Laudonnière, p. 23.
Laurens, John, p. 125.
Lecompton Constitution, p. 220.
Lee, Fort, p. 117.
Lee, Gen. Charles, p. 112 and note; 117; 130–1; 131, note.
Lee, Gen. Henry, p. 138 and note; 150; 166; 168.
Lee, Richard Henry, p. 113–4.
Lee, Gen. R. E., p. 212; 222; 238 and note; 239–40; 244; 245 and note; 251 and note; 253; 258; 259–60; 264; 303, note.
Lee's Sword, p. 259, note.
Leisler, p. 64.
Leopard and Chesapeake, *see* Chesapeake and Leopard.
Lewis, Gen. Andrew, p. 103; 110 and note.
Lewis and Clarke's Expedition, p. 173–4; 174, note.
Lewis, Meriwether, p. 174 and note.
Lexington, Mass., battle, p. 105.
Lexington, Va., p. 252.
Liberty Bell, p. 115, note.
Lightning Rod, p. 86 and note; 87.
Lincoln, Abraham, p. 223 and note; 225; 229–63; 261, note; 264; 309.
Lincoln, Gen., p. 124; 136 and note; 139; 154.
Literature in the United States, p. 86; 294–5.
Locke, John, p. 69 and note.
Logan, p. 103; 103–4, note.
London Company, p. 31.
Long Island, battle, p. 116.
Long Parliament, p. 52 and note; 54.
Longstreet, Gen., p. 251.
Look Out Mountain, battle, p. 247 and note.
Louis XIV., p. 24; 74.
Louis Napoleon, p. 263.
Louis Napoleon's Mediation, p. 243.
Louisburg, p. 63; 77.
Louisiana, p. 24; 63; 74; 75 and note; 80; 159; 167; 171–2; 173; 223; 250; 273; 279; 280; 281; 308.
Lopez, Gen., p. 217.
Lundy's Lane, battle, p. 185–6; p. 185, note.

McAllister, Fort, p. 255.
McClellan, Gen., p. 232 and note; 233; 237; 238; 240; 257.
McComb, Gen., p. 186.
McCrea, Jenny, p. 123 and note.
McCullough, Gen., p. 233; 236.
McDonough, Commodore, p. 186.
McDowell, p. 238.
McDowell, Gen., p. 238.
McHenry, Fort, p. 187, note.
Macedonian and United States, *see* United States and Macedonian.
Madison, James, p. 158; 170; 177, note; 177–191; 309.
McGruder, Gen., p. 237.
Magnetic Telegraph, p. 203–4; 203, note.
Maine, p. 44 and note; 46; 60; 61; 194; 205; 308.
Malvern Hill, p. 239
Manassas, battle, First, p. 232–3; Second, p. 239–40.
Manhattan Island, p. 25.
Mansfield, battle, p. 250.
Manufactures, p. 83; 290.
Maps, between pp. 14–15; 92–3; 178–9; 194–5; 228–9; 286–7; 288–9.
March to the Sea, *see* Sherman's March to the Sea.
Marcy, Gov., p. 202, note.
Mariana, p. 44.
Marion, Gen. Francis, p. 141; 142 and note.
Marquette, p. 74.
Marshall, John, p. 168–169 and note; 173.
Maryland, p. 52–3; 82; 87; 231; 240; 283; 308.
Mason, Capt. John, p. 49.
Mason and Dixon's Line, p. 67–8; 68, note.
Mason and Slidell, p. 235.
Massachusetts, p. 46; 60; 61; 62; 86; 97; 98; 101; 308.
Massachusetts Bay, p. 44.
Massacre, Great Virginia, *see* Virginia Massacre.
Massacre of Wyoming, *see* Wyoming Massacre.
Massasoit, p. 43; 59.
Matamoras, p. 209.
Maury, p. 295.
Maximilian, Emperor, p. 263; 266.
Mayflower, The, p. 42.
Meade, Gen., p. 245–6.
Mecklenburg, N. C., Declaration, p. 105.
Memphis, p. 241.
Menendez, p. 23–4.
Meridian Raid, p. 250.
Merrimac and Monitor, p. 236–7.
Mexican War, p. 209–14.
Mexico, p. 9; 21; 173; 208; 210; 217; 221; 266.
Mexico, City, p. 21; 212; 213.
Miantonomah, p. 47; 50.

Michigan, p. 179, note; 202; 308.
Milan Decrees, p. 174, note.
Mill Springs, battle, p. 236.
Mimms, Fort, Massacre, p. 184.
Mine Run, battle, p. 246.
Minnesota, p. 225; 308.
Mint, United States, p. 164.
Minute Men, p. 105.
Missionary Ridge, battle, p. 247.
Mississippi, p. 80; 194; 246; 250; 269; 308.
Mississippi River, p. 9; 21; 74; 75; 138; 159; 171; 241; 243; 246; 262.
Mississippi Scheme, p. 75 and note.
Missouri, p. 194; 218; 233; 234; 308.
Missouri Compromise, p. 193–4; 214; 218.
Mobile, p. 188; 256.
Modoc War, p. 275.
Mohawk Valley, p. 123–4.
Mohawks, p. 179.
Mohicans, p. 49; 50.
Molino del Rey, battle, p. 213.
Monmouth Court House, battle, p. 130–1.
Monmouth Rebels, p. 56–7; 57, note.
Monocacy, battle, p. 253.
'Monroe Doctrine,' p. 197 and note.
Monroe, James, p. 167; 172 and note; 191; 191–8; 199; 309.
Montana, Territory, p. 309.
Montcalm, p. 77; 78; 79; 80; 92.
Monterey, p. 210 and note.
Montgomery City, p. 224.
Montgomery, Gen., p. 108 and note; 109.
Morgan, Gen., p. 109 and note; 124; 149–50.
Morgan's Raid, p. 247.
Mormons, p. 220–1; 298; 300.
Morris, Robt., p. 148 and note; 156, note.
Morse, p. 203, note.
Moultrie, Fort, *see* Fort Moultrie.
Moultrie, Col., p. 113; 136.
Mound Builders, p. 9–10.
Murfreesboro, p. 242.
Mutiny, p. 148; 156.

Napoleon III., *see* Louis Napoleon.
Napoleon Bonaparte, p. 111, note; 169; 170, note; 171–2; 174 and note; 190; 232, note.
Narragansetts, p. 47; 49; 50; 59; 60.
Nashville, p. 241; 255.
Nashville Convention, p. 216.
Nashville, Cruiser, p. 284.
Natchez Indians, p. 14.
National Bank, p. 148; 156 and note; 164; 191; 200–1; 204–5; 249.
National Currency, p. 249.
National Debt, p. 155; 156; 164; 198; 202; 257; 270; 278; 289; 297.
National Road, p. 192, note.
Nauvoo, p. 221.
Navigation Acts, p. 85; 93.
Nebraska, p. 218; 265; 308.
Necessity, Fort, p. 76.
Negroes, p. 20; 38.
Nelson, Gov., p. 153, note.
Neosho, p. 234.
Nevada, p. 249; 308.
Newberne, p. 250; 261.
New Amsterdam, p. 25; 26.
New England, p. 42; 58.
New France, p. 24; 74.
New Hampshire, p. 46; 158; 308.
New Haven, p. 46; 48; 58.
New Jersey, p. 26; 65–6; 86; 231; 308.
New Light, p. 62, note.
New Mexico, p. 214; 216; 309.
New Netherlands, p. 25; 26.
New Orleans, p. 75; 187–9 and notes; 241; 273.
New Plymouth, p. 43; 44; 60; 68.
New Style, p. 43, note.
New York, p. 25; 26; 63–5; 84; 86; 116; 124; 125; 134; 139; 144; 153; 192; 249; 308.
Newfoundland, p. 22; 28; 29.
Newmarket, battle, p. 252.
Newport, Capt., p. 31–2; 31, note; 33; 34; 35.
Newspapers, p. 86 and note; 293 and note.
Niagara Falls, p. 185; 299.
Niagara, Fort, p. 78.
Nicaragua, p. 217.
Nicholson, Gov., p. 57.
Non-Importation Agreements, p. 85, note; 96.
Norfolk, p. 84; 110; 136; 148; 183; 204; 231; 237.
North, Lord, p. 102; 154.
North Carolina, p. 68–71; 98–9; 110; 149; 150; 231; 261; 308, *see* Carolina, North.
Northern Neck, Va., p. 53.
Northmen, p. 15 and note.
North-west Passage, p. 28.
North-west Territory, p. 158–9.
Notes of a New Tenor, p. 147.
Nova Scotia, p. 44; 63.
Nullification, p. 200 and note.

Oak Hill, battle (Wilson's Creek), p. 233.
Ocracoke Inlet, p. 29.
Oglethorpe, Gen., p. 72–3; 72, note; 154, note.
Ohio, p. 159; 176; 308.
Ohio Company, p. 75.
Ohio River, p. 75; 82; 103; 158.
Ohio Valley, p. 133.
Okalona, battle, p. 252.
Okeechobee, battle, p. 202.
Old Dominion, p. 41 and note.
Old Point Comfort, p. 35.
Old Style, p. 43, note.
Olustee (Ocean Pond), battle, p. 250.
'Omnibus Bill' (Clay's Compromise Bill), p. 216.
Opechancanough, p. 33–4; 39; 40.
Orange Fort, p. 63.
Orders in Council, British, p. 174 and note.
Ordinance of 1787, p. 159.
Oregon, p. 197, 209, 215, 225; 271 and note; 279; 280; 308.
Oregon Treaty, p. 209.
Oriskany, p. 124.
Orleans, Island of, p. 78.
Oswego, Fort, p. 77 and note.

Pacific Coast, p. 197.
Pacific Ocean, p. 21; 34 and note; 158; 216.
Pacific Railroad, p. 268 and note.
Pakenham, Gen., p. 188.
Palo Alto, battle, p. 209.
Pamlico Sound, p. 58.
Panama Congress, p. 197 and note.
Panics, Financial, p. 200–1; 203; 274–5.
Papal Bulls, p. 20, note.
Paper Money, Confederate and Federal, p. 243 and note; 257; 290.
Paper Money of the Revolution, p. 146–7.
Paris, Treaty of, p. 80; 154 and note.
Parliament, British, p. 96; 98; 128.
Parliament, Long, p. 52; 54.
Parris, p. 61.
Parsons' Case, p. 93–4.
Patrons of Husbandry, p. 273 and note.
Pea Ridge, battle, *see* Elk Horn.
Peabody, George, p. 269 and note.
Peace Commission, p. 115.
Peace Commissioners, p. 258.
Peace Conference, p. 223–4.
Peace-maker, p. 208.
Pemberton, Gen., p. 246.
Penn, William, p. 65; 66; 67; 68 and note.
Pennsylvania, p. 66–8; 81; 86; 132; 166; 245; 283; 308.
Pepperell, Col., p. 63.
Pequod War, p. 48–50.
Perry, Commodore, p. 181 and note.
Perryville, battle, p. 242.
Peru, p. 9; 21; 287.
Petersburg, Va., p. 149; 253; 258; 259.
Philadelphia, p. 67; 84; 125–6; 130.
Phipps, Sir William, p. 60; 61.
Phonograph, p. 291 and note.
Physical Science, p. 86–7; 295.
Pickens, Gen. Andrew, p. 135–6; 135, note.
Pickens, Fort, p. 230; 234.
Pickett, Gen., p. 245 and note.
Picture Writing, p. 14.
Pierce, Gen. Franklin, p. 217–9; 309.
Pilgrims, p. 42; 43, note.
Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, p. 168; 169 and note.
Pine Tree Shilling, p. 146, note.
Pirates, p. 58; 70; 192.
Pitt, William (Earl of Chatham), p. 77 and note; 128–9.
Pittsburg, p. 283.
Pittsburg Landing, *see* Shiloh.
Pizarro, p. 21; 22.
Plains of Abraham, *see* Abraham, Plains of.
Plattsburg, p. 186.
Plymouth Colony, p. 43; 44 and note; 46; 60.
Plymouth Company, p. 31.
Plymouth Rock, p. 43, note.
Pocahontas, p. 34; 37–8; 38, notes.
Point Pleasant, battle, p. 103.
Polk, Bishop, p. 234.
Polk, James K., p. 208–15; 208, note; 309.
Ponce de Leon, p. 21.
Pontiac's War, p. 81.
Pope, Gen., p. 239–40.
Population of the United States, p. 82 and note; 104; 176; 202; 204; 217; 225–6; 226, note; 270; 286; 289.
Port Republic, p. 238.
Port Royal, Nova Scotia, p. 60; 62.
Port Royal, S. C., p. 22; 234.
Porter, Capt., p. 189.
Potomac, Army of, p. 244; 262.
Potomac River, p. 51; 54; 164; 245.
Powhatan, p. 34; 37; 38; 39.
Preble, Commodore, p. 172.
President and Little Belt, p. 177.
Presidential Succession, p. 298 and note.
Price, Gen., p. 233.
Princess Susanna, p. 100 and note.
Princeton, battle, p. 120.
Princeton College, p. 86, note; 117, note.
Privateers, p. 136 and note.
Proctor, Col., p. 181.
Prohibitionists, p. 302.
Progress of the United States, p. 175–6; 296.
Providence, p. 47.
Public Education in the United States, p. 292–3.
Public Improvements, p. 192.
Public Libraries, p. 293–4.
Public Schools, p. 292–3.
Puebla, p. 212.
Pulaski, Gen., p. 121–2; 122, note; 139 and note.
Puritans, p. 40; 44; 45; 54; 69.
Putnam, Gen., p. 107 and note; 111; 116.

Quakers, p. 46; 54; 65; 66; 67; 87.
Quebec, p. 24; 78–80; 108; 109.
Queen Anne's War, p. 61–2.
Queen Elizabeth, p. 28; 29 and note.
Queenstown, battle, p. 179.
Queretaro, p. 266.
Quivara, p. 21.

Railroads, p. 258; 290 and note.
Railroad Riots, p. 282–3.
Raleigh, Sir Walter, p. 29; 30; 31 and note.
Rams, Confederate, p. 231 and note.
Randolph, Edmund, p. 163.
Rawdon, Lord, p. 140 and note.
Reciprocity Treaty, p. 263.
Reconstruction, p. 263–5; 268.
Reconstruction Measures, p. 265.
Refunding Bill, p. 281; 285; 286–7.
Regulators, N. C., p. 98–9.
Religion, Colonial, p. 87.
Religion, Indian, p. 13.
Religious Differences, p. 45; 46; 47; 87.
Religious Intolerance, p. 45.
Representatives, Congressional, p. 297 and note.
Republican or Democratic Party, p. 165; 192.
Republicans, p. 219; 222; 264 and note; 267; 273; 279; 280; 285; 301–2.
Resaca de la Palma, p. 209.

Resolutions, Massachusetts, p. 97.
Resolutions, Mecklenburg, N. C., p. 105
Restoration of the Southern States, p. 269.
Restriction of Colonial Industry, p. 85.
Resumption of Specie Payment, p. 276; 284.
Retreat through the Jerseys, p. 117.
Revenue and Tariff Reform, p. 297; 300.
Revere, Paul, p. 104–5.
Revolution, English, p. 60.
Revolution, French, p. 166.
Rhode Island, p. 46–7; 47, note; 61; 62; 105; 158; 206; 308.
Riall, Gen., p. 185.
Ribault, p. 22–3.
Rice, p. 71; 71–2, note.
Richmond, Va., p. 55; 104; 173; 231; 238; 239; 249; 250; 251; 252; 258; 259; 260.
Right of Search, p. 174–5 and note.
Ring Frauds, p. 272–3; 273, note.
Rio Grande, p. 209.
Riots in New York, p. 249.
River Raisin, Massacre, p. 180–1.
Roanoke Island, p. 29; 30; 236.
Rochambeau, p. 143–4; 153; 288.
Rolfe, John, p. 37–8; 38, note.
Rosecrans, Gen., p. 242; 247.
Ross, Gen., p. 186; 187.
Russian America, p. 266–7. *See* Alaska.

Sachems, p. 13; 13–14, note.
Sacs and Foxes, p. 199.
Sailor's Creek, battle, p. 259.
St. Augustine, p. 23–4; 73.
St. Brandan's Isle, p. 15, note.
St. Clair, Gen., p. 123; 165.
St. Leger, Col., 124.
St. Mary's, p. 51.
St. Thomas, p. 266–7.
'Salary Grab,' p. 274.
Salem, p. 44; 45; 47; 101; 104.
Salem Witchcraft, p. 61 and note.
Salt Lake City. p. 221.
Salt Works, Va., p, 258.
Samana, p. 267.
San Antonio, Mex., p. 213.
San Domingo, p. 18; 19; 267; 270; 279.
San Francisco, p. 210.
San Jacinto, battle, p. 207.
San Salvador, p. 180; 256.
Sandys, p. 86 and note.
Sanitary Commission, National, p. 284.
Santa Anna, p. 206–7 and note; 210; 211; 213.
Saranac, p. 186.
Saratoga, p. 125.
Savannah, p. 72; 134; 138; 167; 194; 255–6.
Savannah, Steamship, p. 194 and note.
Say and Sele, Lord, p. 47.
Saybrook, p. 47.
Scandinavians, p. 15, note.
Schenectady, p. 60.
Schofield, Gen., p. 255; 261.
Schuyler, Gen., p. 124.
Science in the United States, p. 86–7; 295.
Scott, Gen. Winfield, p. 179 and note; 185; 203; 211; 212; 213; 217; 225; 233.
Secession of South Carolina, p. 223.
Secession of Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, Mississippi, South Carolina, Texas, p. 223; Virginia, p. 230–1; Arkansas, North Carolina, Tennessee, p. 231.
Secession, War of, p. 194; 229–262.
Sedition Law, p. 169–70.
Seminole War, p. 201–2.
Seminoles, p. 201; 202 and note.
Semmes, Capt., p. 248; 256, note.
Sequoyah, or George Guess, p. 14.
Serapis and Bon Homme Richard, p. 137.
'Seven Days' Battle,' p. 239 and note.
'Seven Pines' Battle,' p. 237–8.
Seven Years' War, p. 80 and note.
Sevier, Gen., 143 and note.
Seward, Wm. H., p. 235 and note; 261, note; 264.
Sewing Machine, p. 292.
Seymour, Horatio, p. 267.
Shackamaxon, p. 67, note.
Shaftesbury, Lord, p. 69.
Sharpsburg, p. 240.
Shays' Rebellion, p. 157.
Shelby, Gen., p. 143 and note.
Shenandoah Valley, *see* Valley of Virginia.
Sheridan, Gen., p. 251; 252, 253–4; 258; 259.
Sherman, Gen., p. 241; 241–2, note; 250; 254; 255–6; 260–1; 262.
Sherman's March to the Sea, p. 255–6.
Shields, Gen., p. 238.
Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), battle, p. 241.
Sigel, Gen., p. 252.
Silver Bill, p. 283.
Silver Dollars, Recoinage of, p. 283 and note.
Silver Question. p. 276.
Sioux War, p. 278.
Six Nations, p. 14; 63; 65 and note; 71; 138.
Sixth Massachusetts Regiment, p. 231.
Slavery, p. 20; 72; 73; 164; 215; 218; 220 and note; 242–3; 263; 331.
Smith, Capt. John, p. 32–3 and note; 33–4; 35; 38 and note; 41–2.
Smith, Gen. Kirby, p. 242.
Smith, Joseph, p. 221.
Smith, Sir Thomas, p. 36; 37.
Smithson, p. 295. note.
Smithsonian Institution, p. 295 and note.
Sound Dues, Danish, p. 218.
South American States, p. 197, note; 287.
South Carolina, Secession of, *see* Secession of South Carolina.
Southern Confederacy, p. 224; 230; 231; 232; 249; 260; 262.
South Mountain battle, p. 240.
South Pass, p. 206.
Southern States, p. 269.
Spain, p. 17; 20; 21; 71; 80; 138; 145; 146; 192; 193.
Spanish Exploration, p. 21.

Spanish Succession, War of, p. 61.
Specie Resumption, *see* Resumption of Specie Payment.
Speculation, p. 203; 275.
Spinning Wheel, p. 84, note.
Spotswood, Gov., p. 57.
Spottsylvania Court House, p. 251.
Stamp Act, p. 95–6 and notes.
Standard Time, p. 299 and note.
Standish, Capt. Miles, p. 42; 43.
Stanton, Edwin, p. 266 and note.
Star Spangled Banner, p. 187, note.
Stark, Col., p. 123 and note.
Stark, Molly, p. 123, note.
'Starving Time,' p. 35.
Steadman, Fort, p. 259.
Steam in the United States, p. 290–1 and note.
Steam Navigation, p. 176 and note; 291.
Stephens, Alexander H., p. 224–5; 225, note.
Steuben, Baron, p. 122 and note; 149; 288.
Stillwater, Battle, p. 124.
Stony Point, p. 137.
Streight's Raid, p. 246.
Stuart, Gen. J. E. B., p. 239 and note; 252.
Stuart's Raid, p. 239.
Stuyvesant, Gov., p. 26 and note.
Submarine Telegraph, p. 266 and note.
Sullivan, Gen., p. 116; 138.
Summary of First Part, p. 27; Second, p. 88–91; Third, 161–2; Fourth, 195–6; Fifth, 227–8; Sixth, 304–7.
Sumner, Charles, p. 267 and note.
Sumter, Confederate Cruiser, p. 234.
Sumter, Fort, p. 224; 230; 248.
Sumter, Gen., p. 25–6; 67.
Swedish Settlements, pp. 25–6; 141 and note; 142.
Synchronal Charts — I., between pp. 26 and 27; II., pp. 156–7; III., pp. 188–9; IV., pp. 256–7.

Tampa Bay, p. 201.
Taney, Chief Justice, p. 220, note.
Tariff, p. 191 and note; 198, note; 199; 200; 300.
Tarleton, Col., p. 140 and note; 141; 149; 152.
Taxation, Colonial, p. 93; 94; 95; 96; 98.
Taylor, Gen. Zachary, p. 202 and note; 208; 209; 210–11; 215–6; 309.
'Tea Party,' 'Boston,' p. 100–1.
Tea Taxed, p. 96.
Tecumseh, p. 178; 181.
Telegraph, p. 203 and note; 266; 290 and note.
Telephone, p. 291 and note.
Tennessee, p. 80; 82; 168; 231; 236; 242; 255; 308.
Tennessee, Confederate Ram, p. 256.
Tennessee, settled, p. 80; 159.
Tenure of Office Act. p. 265.
Territory of Louisiana, p. 171–2; 176.
Territory of the North-west. See Northwestern Territory.
Territory of the United States, 7–8; 289.
Texas, p. 75; 206–8; 206, note; 223; 269; 308.
Thames, battle, p. 181.
Third Term, p. 277–8; 278, note.
Thirteenth Amendment, p. 258; 331.
Thomas, Gen. Geo. H., p. 247 and note; 255.
Ticonderoga, p. 76, note; 77; 78; 105; 106; 119.
Tilden, Samuel J., p. 278; 279.
Tippecanoe, battle, p. 178.
Tituba, p. 61.
Tohopeka, or Horse Shoe Bend, battle, *see* Horse Shoe Bend.
Toleration, p. 47.
Toleration Act,' p. 52 and note.
Topeka (Kansas), p. 219.
Topeka Convention, p. 219.
Tories, p. 132; 133; 136; 151.
Trade and Plantations, Committee of, *see* Board of Trade.
Tramps, p. 282.
Trent Affair, p. 235.
Trenton, battle, p. 118.
Tripoli, p. 173; 190.
Trist, N. P., p. 212.
Tryon, Gov., p. 99; 120; 138.
Tunis, p. 173; 190.
Tuscaroras, p. 71.
Tyler, John, p. 204–5, note; 204–8; 224; 309.

Uchees, p. 14.
Uncas, p. 50.
United Colonies. p. 65.
United Colonies of North America, p. 106.
United States, p. 7; 115; 214.
United States and Macedonian, p. 180.
United States Bank, p. 200–1.
University of Pennsylvania, p. 86, note.
University of Virginia, p. 114, note.
Utah, p. 220–1; 309.

Valley Forge, p. 126–7.
Valley of Virginia, p. 238; 252; 253–4; 258.
Valverde, battle, p. 236.
Van Buren, Martin, p. 201 and note; 203–4; 309.
Vera Cruz, p. 211.
Vermont, p. 159; 168; 308.
Verazzani, p. 22.
Versailles, Treaty of, p. 154, note.
Vespucci, Amerigo, *see* Amerigo Vespucci.
Vicksburg, p. 241; 246.
Virginia, p. 29; 31; 37; 56; 58 and note; 68; 81; 82; 86; 87; 101; 109; 113–4; 133; 158; 159; 200; 202; 230–1; 265; 269; 308.
'Virginia Council,' p. 31.
Virginia Massacre, p. 39.
Virginia Resolutions, p. 170.
Virginia, West, p. 232; 249; 308.
Virginia and Monitor, *see* Merrimac and Monitor.
Virginius, Steamship, p. 275.
Volunteers, called for, p. 230.

Wagner, Fort, p. 248.
Wakulla Spring, Fla., p. 21, note.
Walker, Gen. Wm., p. 217.
Walpole, Sir Robt., p. 95, note.
Wanderer (Steamship), p. 222, note.
War, Black Hawk, *see* Black Hawk War.
War between French and Spaniards, in Florida, p. 23-4.
Warren, Gen. Samuel, p. 107.
Washington, City, p. 170; 223; 232; 253; 261.
Washington, Fort, p. 117
Washington, Gen., p. 75; 76 and note; 78; 96; 106 and note; 107; 111; 116; 117; 118; 119; 120; 121; 126; 127; 130-1; 137; 139; 141; 144; 148; 153; 154; 155-6; 157; 158; 163-8; 169; 170 and note; 309.
Washington, Col. Wm. A., p. 149 and note.
Washington Monument, p. 170, note; 297 and note; 300-1.
Washington Territory, p. 309.
Waxhaws, p. 140 and note.
Wayne, Gen., p. 138: 165.
Waynesboro, battle, p. 258.
Wealth of the United States, p. 289, note; 289-90.
Weather Charts, p. 291.
Weathersfield, William, p. 184 and note; 185.
Webster, Daniel, p. 200 and note; 205.
Webster and Ashburton Treaty, *see* Ashburton Treaty.
Wesley, John and Charles, p. 73 and note; 87.
West India Company, Dutch, p. 26.
West Virginia, *see* Virginia, West.
Whig Party, p. 204; 208; 215; 217; 219.
Whigs, p. 151.
Whiskey Insurrection, p. 166-7.
Whiskey Rings, p. 277.
White Plains, battle, p. 117.
Whitefield, p. 62, note; 73 and note; 87.
Whitney, Eli, p. 176 and note.
Wilderness, battle, p. 251.
Wilkes, Capt., p. 204; 235.
William and Mary College, p. 57; 86, note.
Williamsburg, Va., p. 57; 153; 237.
William Henry, Fort, *see* Fort William Henry.
Wilmington, N. C., p. 242; 256.
Wilmot Proviso, p. 215.
Wilson's Creek, battle, *see* Oak Hill.
Winchester, battles. p. 238; 254.
Wingfield, p. 32; 33.
Wingina, p. 30.
Winter of 1779, p. 139 and note.
Winthrop, Gov. John, p. 44; 45.
Winthrop, Gov. John, Jr., p. 47.
Winthrop's Address, p. 301.
Wisconsin, p. 215; 308.
Witchcraft, *see* Salem Witchcraft.
Wocoken Island, p. 29.
Wolfe, Gen., p. 78 and note.
Wool, Gen., p. 210.
Worth, Gen., p. 210.
Writs of Assistance, p. 93.
Wyandot Constitution, p. 220.
Wyoming Massacre, p. 132.
Wyoming Valley, 132.
Wythe Lead Mines, Va., p. 258 and note.

Yale College, p. 86, note.
Yellow Fever, p. 283-4.
Yemassees, p. 14; 71.
York, Duke of, p. 63; 64; 65.
Yorktown, p. 152; 152-4; 237.
Yorktown Celebration, p. 288; 297.
Young, Brigham, p. 221 and note.

Zollikoffer, Gen., p. 236.